OKI
PRINTING SOLUTIONS

C9400

User's Guide

Table of Contents

Print Media 25
Printer Driver Media Weight Settings 25
Print Media Sizes 25
English Media 25
Metric Media 25
Envelopes 26
Print Media Specifications 26
Print Media Specifications: Tray 1 26
Paper 26
Transparencies 26
Print Media Specifications: Multi-Purpose Tray 26
Print Media Specifications: Duplex Unit 27
Print Media Specifications: Auxiliary Trays 28
Print Media Specifications: High Capacity Feeder 29
Long Edge versus Short Edge 29
Paper 30
Standard Paper 30
Recommended Standard Paper 30
Letter Size 30
Legal Size 31
Tabloid Size 31
Standard Paper Specifications 31
Weight 31
Sizes 31
Standard Paper Print Path 31
Feed Paths 31
Exit Paths 31
Matte Photo Paper 31
Matte Photo Paper Specifications 32
Weight 32
Sizes 32
Matte Photo Paper Print Path 32
Feed Paths 32
Exit Paths 32
Recycled Paper 32
Recommended (Letter Size) 32
Recycled Paper Specifications 32
Weight 33
Sizes 33
Recycled Paper Print Path 33
Feed Paths 33
Exit Paths 33
Storing Paper 33

Transparencies 34
Recommended Transparencies 34
Transparency Print Path 34
Driver Settings: Individual Print Jobs 34
Menu Settings: Transparencies as the Default 34
To set transparencies as the default for Tray 1: 34
To set transparencies as the default for the Multi-Purpose Tray: 35
Printing Transparencies 35
Printing Transparencies Using the Windows PCL Driver 35
Printing Transparencies Using the Windows PostScript Driver 37
Printing Transparencies Using the Macintosh 39
Labels 41
Label Recommendations 41
Label Print Path 41
Label Specifications 41
Driver Settings: Individual Print Jobs 42
Menu Settings: Labels as the Default for the Multi-Purpose Tray 42
Printing Labels 42
Printing Labels Using the Windows PCL Driver 42
Printing Labels Using the Windows Postscript Driver 44
Printing Labels Using the Macintosh 45
Thick Paper (Index, Cards) 47
Recommended Thick Papers 47
Letter Size 47
Tabloid Size 48
Thick Paper Specifications 48
Weight 48
Sizes 48
Thick Paper Print Path 48
Thick Paper Driver Settings: Individual Print Jobs 48
Menu Settings: Thick Paper as the Default 49
Printing Thick Paper 49
Printing Thick Paper Using the Windows PCL Driver 49
Printing Thick Paper Using the Windows Postscript Driver 51
Printing Thick Paper Using the Macintosh 52
Envelopes 54
Envelope Recommendations 54
Envelope Print Path 55
Envelope Driver Settings: Individual Print Jobs 55
Menu Settings: Envelopes as the Default 55
Printing Envelopes 56
Printing Envelopes Using the Windows PCL Driver 56
Printing Envelopes Using the Windows PostScript Driver 57
Printing Envelopes Using the Macintosh 58
Loading Print Media 60
Loading Print Media in Tray 1, Auxiliary Trays & High Capacity Feeder 60

Loading Print Media in the Multi-Purpose Tray 63
Print Paths 66
Feed Paths 66
Tray 1 68
Tray 1 Usable Media Sizes 68
The Paper Tray Gauge 68
The Paper Tray Media Indicator 69
Multi-Purpose Tray 70
Multi-Purpose Tray Usable Media Sizes 70
Auxiliary Trays (Optional) 71
Auxiliary Tray Usable Media Sizes 71
The Auxiliary Tray Gauge 71
Paper Tray Media Indicator 71
High Capacity Feeder (HCF) 72
HCF Usable Media Sizes 73
The Paper Tray Gauge 73
The Paper Tray Media Indicator 73
Automatic Tray Switching 74
To turn automatic tray switching off: 75
Changing The Default Feed Path 75
Changing the Default Feed Path: Windows 2000 75
PCL Driver 75
PostScript Driver (factory default = Automatically Select) 75
Changing the Default Feed Path: Windows Me 76
PCL Driver 76
PostScript Driver (factory default = AutoSelect) 76
Changing the Default Feed Path: Windows 98 & 95 76
PCL Driver 76
PostScript Driver (factory default = AutoSelect) 76
Changing the Default Feed Path: Windows NT 4.0 77
PCL Driver 77
PostScript Driver 77
Changing the Default Feed Path: Macintosh 77
Changing the Default Feed Path in the Printer Menu 78
Exit Paths 78
Top Exit Path 78
Straight-Through Exit Path 79
Opening the Straight-Through Exit Path 79
Selecting the Straight-Through Exit Path in the Driver 80
Changing the Default Exit Path 81
Using the Printer Menu 81
Using the Driver 81
Changing Media Settings in the Menu 83
Changing Media Settings in the Menu: Tray 1 83
Transparencies 83
Other Print Media (Non-Transparencies) 84

Changing Media Settings in the Menu: Multi-Purpose (MP) Tray 84
Transparencies 84
First, set the Media Size: 84
Next, set the Media Type 84
Exit the Menu 85
Other Print Media (Non-Transparencies) 85
First, set the Media Size: 85
Next, set the Media Weight 85
Exit the Menu 85
Changing Media Weight in the Menu: Auxiliary Trays 85
Changing Media Weight in the Menu: High Capacity Feeder 86
Printable Area 86
Printable Area: PCL 86
Letter 86
Legal 13" 87
Legal 13.5" 87
Legal 14" 87
Tabloid 88
Tabloid Extra 88
Executive 88
A3 89
A3 Nobi 89
A3Wide 89
A4 90
A5 90
A6 91
B4 91
B5 91
Monarch 92
Com-9 92
Com-10 92
DL 93
C4 93
C5 93
Printable Area: PostScript 94
Letter 94
Legal 13" 94
Legal 13.5" 94
Legal 14" 95
Tabloid 95
Tabloid Extra 96
Executive 96
A3 96
A3 Nobi 97
A3Wide 97
A4 97

A5 98
A6 98
B4 98
B5 99
Monarch 99
Com-9 99
Com-10 100
DL 100
C4 100
C5 101
Control Panel Description & Walk-up Functions 102
Description 102
Control Panel Buttons 102
Menu Button 102
ON LINE Button 102
ITEM + Button 103
ITEM - Button 103
VALUE + Button 104
VALUE - Button 104
SELECT Button 105
CANCEL Button 105
Control Panel Lights 105
READY Light 106
ATTENTION Light 106
Walk-up Functions 106
Printing a Demo Page 106
Printing a PCL Font List 107
Printing a PostScript Typeface List 107
Printing Out the MenuMap (List of Current Menu Settings) 108
Printing Confidential (Secure) Documents 108
Printing a Confidential Document 108
Deleting a Confidential Document *before* Printing It 109
Printing the File List 109
Setting the Color Balance 110
Setting Power Save Mode (Time to Print) 111
Setting the Power Save Interval 112
Disabling/Enabling Power Save 112
Setting a Specific Emulation 112
Turning the Duplex Unit On in the Menu 113
Control Panel Display Language 113
Printer Menus 115
How to Use the Menu 115
Resetting the Printer's Menu to the Factory Defaults 115
Printer Menu Entries (in alphabetical sequence) 116
Color Menu 116
Process Mode 117

Disk Maintenance Menu 117
Information Menu 117
Print Menu Map 118
Print File List 118
Print PCL Font 118
Print PS Font 118
Print Demo 118
Print Error Log 118
Maintenance Menu 119
EEPROM Reset 119
Power Save 119
Paper Black Setting 119
Paper Color Setting 119
Transpr Black Setting 120
Transpr Color Setting 120
Media Menu 120
TRAY1 MEDIATYPE 121
TRAY1 MEDIAWEIGHT 121
MP TRAY PAPERSIZE 122
MP TRAY MEDIATYPE 122
MP TRAY MEDIAWEIGHT 122
UNIT OF MEASURE 122
X DIMENSION 122
Y DIMENSION 122
Memory Menu 122
RECEIVE BUFF SIZE 123
RESOURCE SAVE 123
FLASH INITIALIZE 123
PS FLASH RESIZE 123
Network Menu 124
TCP/IP 125
NETWARE 125
ETHERTALK 125
NETBEUI 125
FRAME TYPE 125
DHCP/BOOTP 125
RARP 126
IP ADDRESS 126
SUBNET MASK 126
GATEWAY ADDRESS 126
INITIALIZE 126
PRINT SETTINGS 126
Parallel Menu 126
PARALLEL 127
BI-DIRECTION 127
ECP 127

ACK WIDTH 127
ACK/BUSY TIMING 127
I-PRIME 127
PCL Emulation Menu 127
FONT SOURCE 128
FONT No. 128
FONT PITCH 128
FONT HEIGHT 129
SYMBOL SET 129
A4 PRINT WIDTH 129
WHITE PAGE SKIP 129
CR FUNCTION 129
LF FUNCTION 129
PRINT MARGIN 129
TRUE BLACK 129
Print Menu 130
COPIES 131
DUPLEX 131
BINDING 131
JOB OFFSET 131
PAPER FEED 131
OUTPUT BIN 132
AUTO TRAY SWITCH 132
PAPER SIZE CHECK 132
PRIORITY TRAY 132
RESOLUTION 132
MONO-PRINT SPEED 132
ORIENTATION 132
LINE PER PAGE 133
EDIT SIZE 133
System Adjust Menu 133
X ADJUST 134
Y ADJUST 134
DUPLEX X ADJUST 134
DUPLEX Y ADJUST 135
TRAY1 NOBI PAPER 135
TRAY1 LEGAL 14 PAPER 135
PCL TRAY2 ID# 135
PCL TRAY3 ID# 135
PCL TRAY4 ID# 136
PCL TRAY5 ID# 136
PCL MP TRAY ID# 136
HEX DUMP 136
System Configuration Menu 136
POWER SAVE DELAY TIME 137
PERSONALITY 137

CONTROL-T 137
CLEARABLE WARNING 137
AUTO CONTINUE 137
MANUAL TIMEOUT 137
WAIT TIMEOUT 138
PCL Mode 138
PostScript Mode 138
LOW TONER 138
JAM RECOVERY 138
ERROR REPORT 138
LANGUAGE 138
Usage Menu 138
TOTAL PAGE COUNT 139
TRAY1 PAGE COUNT 139
MP TRAY PAGE COUNT 140
BLACK DRUM USAGE 140
CYAN DRUM USAGE 140
MAGENTA DRUM USAGE 140
YELLOW DRUM USAGE 140
BELT USAGE 140
FUSER USAGE 140
BLACK TONER 140
CYAN TONER 141
MAGENTA TONER 141
YELLOW TONER 141
USB Menu 141
USB 141
SOFT RESET 141
Using Print Features 142
(see also Proof & Print, Secure Documents and Overlays) 142
Macintosh 142
Collating: Macintosh 142
General Information 142
Using Collating: Macintosh 142
Custom Page Sizes: Macintosh 143
General Information 143
Creating & Saving a Custom Page Size: Macintosh 143
Printing Using a Custom Page Size: Macintosh 144
Modifying a Custom Page Size: Macintosh 144
Deleting a Custom Page Size: Macintosh 145
Duplex Printing (Printing on Both Sides): Macintosh 145
General Information 145
Duplex Printing from a Software Application: Macintosh 146
Setting Duplex Printing as the Printer Default: Macintosh 146
N-Up (Multiple Pages on One Sheet): Macintosh 147
General Information 147

N-Up Printing: Macintosh 148
Print Resolution: Macintosh 148
Models C9200, C9200n & C9200dxn 148
Model C9400dxn 148
Setting the Print Resolution: Macintosh 149
Windows 2000 149
Collating: Windows 2000 149
General Information 149
Collating: Windows 2000 PCL Driver 150
Printing using Collating: Windows 2000 PCL 150
Setting Collate as the Default: Windows 2000 PCL 150
Collating: Windows 2000 PostScript Driver 150
Printing using Collating: Windows 2000 PS 150
Setting Collate as the Default: Windows 2000 PS 150
Custom Page Sizes: Windows 2000 151
General Information 151
Custom Page Sizes: Windows 2000 PCL Driver 151
Creating and Storing a Custom Page Size: Windows 2000 PCL 151
Printing Using a Custom Page Size: Windows 2000 PCL 151
Setting a Custom Page Size as the Default: Windows 2000 PCL 152
Modifying a Custom Page Size: Windows 2000 PCL 153
Deleting a Custom Page Size: Windows 2000 PCL 153
Custom Page Sizes: Windows 2000 PostScript Driver 154
Creating the Default Custom Page Size: Windows 2000 PS 154
Printing Using a Custom Page Size: Windows 2000 PS 155
Modifying the Default Custom Page Size: Windows 2000 PS 156
Duplex Printing (Printing on Both Sides): Windows 2000 156
General Information 156
Duplex Printing from a Software Application: Windows 2000 157
Duplex Printing: Windows 2000 PCL Driver 157
Duplex Printing: Windows 2000 PostScript Driver 157
Duplex Printing as the Printer Default: Windows 2000 158
Setting Duplex Printing as the Default: Windows 2000 PCL 158
Setting Duplex Printing as the Default: Windows 2000 PS 158
N-Up: Windows 2000 159
General Information 159
N-Up Printing: Windows 2000 PCL 159
N-Up Printing: Windows 2000 PS 159
Print Resolution: Windows 2000 160
Models C9200, C9200n & C9200dxn: PCL & PostScript Modes 160
Model C9400dxn: PCL Mode 160
Model C9400dxn: PostScript Mode 160
Setting the Default Print Resolution: Windows 2000 PCL Driver 160
Changing the Resolution for a Print Job: Windows 2000 PCL Driver 161
Setting the Default Print Resolution: Windows 2000 PostScript Driver 162
Changing the Resolution for a Print Job: Windows 2000 PostScript Driver 162

Watermarks: Windows 2000 163
General Information 163
Creating & Storing a Watermark: Windows 2000 PCL 163
Printing Using a Watermark: Windows 2000 PCL 164
Modifying a Watermark: Windows 2000 PCL 165
Deleting a Watermark: Windows 2000 PCL 165
Fit to Page: Windows 2000, PCL Only 165
Using Fit to Page: 165
Windows Me 166
Booklets (Signature Printing): Windows Me PCL Driver 166
General Information 166
Booklets, Individual Print Jobs: Windows Me PCL 167
Setting Booklets as the Printer Default: Windows Me PCL 168
Collating: Windows Me 168
General Information 168
Collating: Windows Me PCL Driver 168
Printing using Collating: Windows Me PCL 169
Setting Collate as the Default: Windows Me PCL 169
Collating: Windows Me PostScript Driver 169
Printing using Collating: Windows Me PS 169
Setting Collate as the Default: Windows Me PS 170
Custom Page Sizes: Windows Me 170
General Information 170
Custom Page Sizes: Windows Me PCL Driver 170
Setting Up a Custom Page Size: Windows Me PCL 170
Printing Using a Custom Page Size: Winodws Me PCL 171
Modifying a Custom Page Size: Windows Me PCL 172
Deleting a Custom Page Size: Windows Me PCL 173
Custom Page Sizes: Windows Me PostScript Driver 173
Setting Up a Custom Page Size: Windows Me PS 173
Printing Using a Custom Page Size: Windows Me PS 174
Modifying a Custom Page Size: Windows Me PS 175
Duplex Printing (Printing on Both Sides): Windows Me 175
General Information 175
Duplex Printing from a Software Application: Windows Me 176
Duplex Printing: Windows Me PCL 176
Duplex Printing: Windows Me PS 176
Duplex Printing Set as Default: Windows Me 177
Setting Duplex Printing as the Default: Windows Me PCL 177
Setting Duplex Printing as the Default: Windows Me PS 177
N-Up: Windows Me 177
General Information 177
N-Up Printing: Windows Me PCL 178
N-Up Printing: Windows Me PS 178
Print Resolution: Windows Me 179
General Information 179

Models C9200, C9200n & C9200dxn: PCL & PostScript Modes 179
Model C9400dxn: PCL Mode 179
Model C9400dxn: PostScript Mode 179
Setting the Default Print Resolution: Windows Me PCL 179
Changing the Resolution for a Print Job: Windows Me PCL 180
Setting the Default Print Resolution: Windows Me PS 181
Changing the Resolution for a Print Job: Windows Me PS 181
Watermarks: Windows Me 182
General Information 182
Watermarks: Windows Me PCL 182
Creating & Storing Watermarks: Windows Me PCL 182
Printing Using a Watermark: Windows Me PCL 182
Modifying a Watermark: Windows Me PCL 183
Deleting a Watermark: Windows Me PCL 183
Watermarks: Windows Me PS 183
Creating & Storing Watermarks: Windows Me PS 183
Printing Using a Watermark; Windows Me PS 184
Modifying a Watermark: Windows Me PS 184
Deleting a Watermark: Windows Me PS 185
Windows 98 & 95 185
Booklets (Signature Printing): Windows 98/95 PCL Driver 185
General Information 185
Booklets, Individual Print Jobs: Windows 98 & 95 PCL 186
Setting Booklets as the Printer Default: Windows 98 & 95 PCL 187
Collating: Windows 98 & 95 187
General Information 187
Collating: Windows 98/95 PCL Driver 188
Printing using Collating: Windows 98/95 PCL 188
Setting Collate as the Default: Windows 98/95 PCL 188
Collating: Windows 98/95Post Script Driver 188
Printing using Collating: Windows 98/95 PS 188
Setting Collate as the Default: Windows 98/95 PS 189
Custom Page Sizes: Windows 98 & 95 189
General Information 189
Custom Page Sizes: Windows 98/95 PCL Driver 189
Setting Up a Custom Page Size: Windows 98/95 PCL 189
Printing Using a Custom Page Size: Windows 98/95 PCL 190
Modifying a Custom Page Size: Windows 98/95 PCL 191
Deleting a Custom Page Size: Windows 98/95 PCL 192
Custom Page Sizes: Windows 98/95 PostScript Driver 192
Setting Up a Custom Page Size: Windows 98/95 PS 192
Printing Using a Custom Page Size: Windows 98/95 PS 193
Modifying a Custom Page Size: Windows 98/95 PS 194
Duplex Printing: Windows 98/95 194
General Information 194
Duplex Printing from a Software Application: Windows 98/95 195

Duplex Printing: Windows 98/95 PCL 195
Duplex Printing: Windows 98/95 PS 195
Setting Duplex Printing as the Default: Windows 98/95 196
Setting Duplex Printing as the Printer Default: Windows 98/95 PCL 196
Setting Duplex Printing as the Printer Default: Windows 98/95 PS 196
Fit to Page: Windows 98/95, PCL Only 196
Using Fit to Page: 196
N-Up: Windows 98 & 95 197
General Information 197
N-Up Printing: Windows 98/95 PCL Driver 198
N-Up Printing: Windows 98/95 PostScript Driver 198
Print Resolution: Windows 98 & 95 199
General Information 199
Models C9200, C9200n & C9200dxn: PCL & PostScript Modes 199
Model C9400dxn: PCL Mode 199
Model C9400dxn: PostScript Mode 199
Setting the Default Print Resolution: Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver 199
Changing the Resolution for a Print Job: Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver 200
Setting the Default Print Resolution: Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver 201
Changing the Resolution for a Print Job: Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver .. 201
Watermarks: Windows 98 & 95 202
General Information 202
Watermarks: Windows 98/95 PCL Driver 202
Creating & Storing Watermarks: Windows 98/95 PCL 202
Printing using Watermarks: Windows 98/95 PCL 202
Modifying a Watermark: Windows 98/95 PCL 203
Deleting a Watermark: Windows 98/95 PCL 203
Watermarks: Windows 98/95 PostScript Driver 203
Creating & Storing Watermarks: Windows 98/95 PS 203
Printing Using a Watermark: Windows 98/95 PS 204
Modifying a Watermark: Windows 98/95 PS 204
Deleting a Watermark: Windows 98/95 PS 205
Windows NT 4.0 205
Booklets (Signature Printing): Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver 205
General Information 205
Booklets, Individual Print Jobs: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 206
Setting Booklets as the Printer Default: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 206
Collating: Windows NT 4.0 207
General Information 207
Collating: Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver 207
Printing using Collating: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 207
Setting Collate as the Default: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 208
Collating: Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver 208
Printing using Collating: Windows NT 4.0 PS 208
Setting Collate as the Default: Windows NT 4.0 PS 209
Custom Page Sizes: Windows NT 4.0 209

General Information 209
Custom Page Sizes: Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver 209
Creating and Storing a Custom Page Size: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 209
Printing Using a Custom Page Size: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 210
Setting a Custom Page Size as the Default: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 211
Modifying a Custom Page Size: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 211
Deleting a Custom Page Size: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 212
Custom Page Sizes: Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver 213
Creating the Default Custom Page Size: Windows NT 4.0 PS 213
Printing Using a Custom Page Size: Windows NT 4.0 PS 214
Modifying the Default Custom Page Size: Windows NT 4.0 PS 215
Duplex Printing: Windows NT 4.0 216
General Information 216
Duplex Printing from a Software Application: Windows NT 4.0 216
Duplex Printing: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 216
Duplex Printing: Windows NT 4.0 PS 217
Duplex Printing as the Default: Windows NT 4.0 217
Setting Duplex Printing as the Default: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 217
Setting Duplex Printing as the Default: Windows NT 4.0 PS 217
Fit to Page: Windows NT 4.0, PCL Only 218
Using Fit to Page: 218
N-Up: Windows NT 4.0 219
General Information 219
N-Up Printing: Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver 219
N-Up Printing: Windows NT 4.0 PS 219
Print Resolution: Windows NT 4.0 220
General Information 220
Models C9200, C9200n & C9200dxn: PCL & PostScript Modes 220
Model C9400dxn: PCL Mode 220
Model C9400dxn: PostScript Mode 220
Setting the Default Print Resolution: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 221
Changing the Resolution for a Print Job: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 221
Setting the Default Print Resolution: Windows NT 4.0 PS 222
Changing the Resolution for a Print Job: Windows NT 4.0 PS 222
Watermarks: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 223
General Information 223
Creating Watermarks: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 223
Printing Using a Watermark: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 223
Modifying a Watermark: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 224
Deleting a Watermark: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 224
Proof & Print 225
General Information 225
Proof & Print: Windows 2000 PCL Driver 225
Printing a Document Using Proof & Print 225
Print the Remaining Copies 226
To Delete a Proof & Print Document before Printing the Remaining Copies 227

Proof & Print: Windows Me 227
Proof & Print: Windows Me PCL Driver 227
Proof & Print: Windows Me PostScript Driver 228
Printing the Remaining Copies 229
Deleting the Job without Printing the Remaining Copies 229
Proof & Print: Windows 98 & 95 230
Proof & Print: Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver 230
Proof & Print: Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver 231
Printing the Remaining Copies 232
Deleting the Job without Printing the Remaining Copies 232
Proof & Print: Windows NT 4.0 233
Proof & Print: Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver 233
Proof & Print: Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver 234
Printing the Remaining Copies 234
Deleting the Job without Printing the Remaining Copies 235
Secure Documents 236
General Information 236
To use Secure Printing: 236
Secure (Confidential) Documents: Windows 2000 PCL Driver 236
Send a Confidential Document to the Printer 236
Print out a Confidential Document 237
To Delete a Confidential Document before Printing It 237
Secure (Confidential) Documents: Windows Me 238
Confidential Documents: Windows Me PCL Driver 238
Confidential Documents: Windows Me PostScript Driver 239
Printing the Confidential Document 240
Deleting the Job without Printing It 240
Secure (Confidential) Documents: Windows 98 & 95 241
Confidential Documents: Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver 241
Confidential Documents: Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver 242
Printing the Confidential Document 242
Deleting the Job without Printing It 243
Secure (Confidential) Documents: Windows NT 4.0 244
Confidential Documents: Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver 244
Confidential Documents: Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver 245
Printing the Confidential Document 245
Deleting the Job without Printing It 246
Overlays (Forms) 248
General Information 248
Printing with Overlays: Windows 2000 248
Defining Overlays: Windows 2000 PCL Driver 248
Printing Using Overlays: Windows 2000 PCL Driver 249
Editing Defined Overlays: Windows 2000 PCL Driver 250
Deleting Defined Overlays: Windows 2000 PCL Driver 250
Printing with Overlays: Windows Me 250
Defining Overlays: Windows Me PCL Driver 250

Printing Overlays: Windows Me PCL Driver 251
Editing Defined Overlays: Windows Me PCL Driver 252
Deleting Defined Overlays: Windows Me PCL Driver 252
Defining Overlays: Windows Me PostScript Driver 253
Set up an Overlay Group: 253
Finish 254
Printing Using Overlays: Windows Me PostScript Driver 254
Editing Defined Overlays: Windows Me PostScript Driver 254
Deleting Defined Overlays: Windows Me PostScript Driver 254
Printing with Overlays: Windows 98 & 95 255
Defining Overlays: Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver 255
Printing Overlays: Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver 256
Editing Defined Overlays: Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver 256
Deleting Defined Overlays: Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver 257
Defining Overlays: Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver 257
Set up an Overlay Group: 258
Finish 258
Printing Using Overlays: Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver 258
Editing Defined Overlays: Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver 259
Deleting Defined Overlays: Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver 259
Printing with Overlays: Windows NT 4.0 259
Defining Overlays: Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver 259
Printing Overlays: Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver 260
Editing Defined Overlays: Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver 261
Deleting Defined Overlays: Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver 261
Defining Overlays: Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver 261
Set up an Overlay Group: 262
Save Your Settings 262
Printing Using Overlays: Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver 263
Editing Defined Overlays: Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver 263
Deleting Defined Overlays: Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver 263
OKI Storage Device Manager (SDM) 265
OKI SDM: General Information 265
OKI SDM Functions 265
OKI SDM Administration 266
Passwords 266
The Spooler 266
Administrative Functions 266
Opening OKI Storage Device Manager 266
OKI SDM: Setting Up an Administrative Password 267
OKI SDM: PostScript Forms 268
Creating & Downloading a PostScript Project 268
Create the Forms 268
Create a New Project 268
Add Files to the Project 269
Check the Location for Storing the Files in the Printer's Memory 269

Save the Project and Download it to the Printer 270
Test Printing a PostScript Form 270
PCL Macros (Forms) 270
Creating & Downloading a PCL Project 270
1. Create the Forms 270
2. Create a New Project 270
3. Convert the Files to Binary (.bin) Format 271
4. Add the .bin Files to the Project 272
5. Check the .bin File Settings and Save the Project 272
6. Download the Project to the Printer 272
Downloading a Printer Job Language (.pjl) Command File to the Printer 272
Test Printing a PCL Macro 273
Using the Spooler 273
To Open the Spooler: 273
To Delete Files: 274
Deleting a Form 274
Problem Solving 276
Paper Jams 276
Hardware Problems 288
Paper Problems 288
Printing Problems 289
Print Quality Problems 290
Error Display Messages 293
Status Display Messages 299
Problem Solving: Macintosh Systems 301
Problem Solving: Windows Systems 302
Maintenance 305
Toner Cartridges 305
Replacing the Toner Cartridges 305
Back 305
Front 305
Toner Cartridge Life 308
Image Drums 309
Replacing Image Drums 309
Back 310
Image Drum Precautions 315
Image Drum Life 315
Cleaning the LED Arrays 315
When to Clean the LED Arrays 315
To clean the LED arrays: 316
Replacing the Fuser Unit 317
Back 317
Replacing the Transfer Belt 320
Back 321
Setting the Color Registration 324
Initiating the Auto Registration Manually 324

To Set the Color Registration Manually: ... 325
Working with Color ... 328
Glossary ... 328
Additive versus Subtractive ... 333
Additive Primaries ... 333
Subtractive Primaries ... 333
Color Adjustments ... 334
Color Adjustment Using the Software Application ... 334
Changing the Lightness & Saturation Settings in the OKI PCL Driver ... 335
Color Perception ... 335
Reflected Light ... 335
Transmitted Light ... 336
Emitted Light ... 336
Color Registration ... 336
Color Wheel ... 336
Dithering & Halftones ... 337
Dithering ... 337
Halftoning ... 338
The Electromagnetic Spectrum ... 338
Visible Light ... 338
White Light ... 339
Black Light ... 339
Perceived Light ... 339
Neutral Colors ... 339
Primary & Secondary Colors ... 339
Primary Colors ... 339
Secondary Colors ... 339
Problems Using Color ... 339
Specifying Color ... 340
The HSL Model ... 340
The RGB Model ... 341
Using the Color Swatch Utility ... 342
Accessing the Color Swatches in the Windows 95 PCL Driver ... 343
Windows ICM (Image Color Matching) ... 343
ICM: Windows 2000 ... 343
Activating the ICM Files in the Windows 2000 PCL Driver ... 343
Activating the OKI ICM Files in the Windows 2000 PostScript Driver ... 343
ICM: Windows Me/98/95 ... 344
Activating the OKI ICM Files in the Windows Me/98/95 PCL Driver ... 344
Activating the OKI ICM Files in the Windows Me/98/95 PostScript Driver ... 344
Color Management ... 345
Color Management Systems ... 345
Effects of Paper ... 345
Potential Problems with Color: Plan, plan, plan! ... 345
Experiment for Best Results ... 345
Color Management: Macintosh® ... 346

Color Management: Windows 2000 347
Windows 2000 PCL Driver 347
Color Management for an Individual Print Job: Windows 2000 PCL 347
Changing the Color Management Defaults: Windows 2000 PCL 348
Activating the OKI ICM Files: Windows 2000 PCL 349
ICM: Windows 2000 PostScript Driver 350
Color Management for an Individual Print Job: Windows 2000 PS 350
Changing the Color Management Defaults: Windows 2000 PS 350
Activating the OKI ICM Files: Windows 2000 PS 351
Color Management: Windows Me 351
ICM: Windows Me PCL Driver 351
Color Management for an Individual Print Job: Windows Me PCL 351
Changing the Color Management Defaults: Windows Me PCL 352
Activating the OKI ICM Files: Windows Me PCL 353
Windows Me PostScript Driver 353
Color Management for an Individual Print Job: Windows Me PS 353
Changing the Color Management Defaults: Windows Me PS 354
Activating the OKI ICM Files: Windows Me PS 355
Color Management: Windows 98 & 95 355
Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver 355
Color Management for an Individual Print Job: Windows 98/95 PCL 355
Changing the Color Management Defaults: Windows 98/95 PCL 356
Activating the OKI ICM Files: Windows 98/95 PCL 356
Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver 356
Color Management for an Individual Print Job: Windows 98/95 PS 356
Changing the Color Management Defaults: Windows 98/95 PS 357
Activating the OKI ICM Files: Windows 98/95 PS 358
Color Management: Windows NT 4.0 358
Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver 359
Color Management for an Individual Print Job: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 359
Changing the Color Management Defaults: Windows NT 4.0 PCL 359
Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver 360
Color Management for an Individual Print Job: Windows NT 4.0 PS 360
Changing the Color Management Defaults: Windows NT 4.0 PS 361
Specifications 363
General Specifications 363
Print Method 363
Print Speed 363
Print Resolution 363
RAM 363
Flash Memory 363
OKI C9000 Series Printer Configurations 363
Electrical Specifications 364
Voltage/Frequency 364
Power 364
Physical Specifications 364

Dimensions 364
Weight 364
Interface Specifications 364
Parallel 364
USB 364
Network 364
How Digital LED Technology Works 364
Digital LED vs Laser Technology 365
Advantages of digital LED technology 365
The Electrophotographic Process 365
Step 1: Charging 365
Step 2: Exposure 365
Step 3: Developing 366
Step 4: Transfer 366
Step 5: Fusing 366
In Summary 366
Service & Support 367
For the Latest Information 367
Support: U.S. & Canada 367
Via the Internet 367
www.okidata.com 367
Your Gateway to OKI Products and Services 367
my.okidata.com 368
Via Your Oki Data Dealer 368
Via Oki Data Customer Service, U.S. & Canada Only, 24/7: 369
Call 1-800-OKI-DATA (1-800-654-3282) 369
The Information System Automated Attendant 369
The Oki Data Customer Support Team 370
Service Information: U.S. & Canada 370
To Locate a Service Dealer 370
Repair under Warranty 371
Repairs after Your Warranty Expires 371
OKI Regional Service Depots: 1-800-OKI-DATA (1-800-654-3282) 371
Oki Data Service Depot Information: U.S. & Canada 371
Repacking the Printer for Shipment 372
Prepare the Printer 372
Pack the Printer for Shipment 375
Supplies & Accessories 377
Purchasing Supplies & Accessories 377
Consumable & Replacement Part Order Numbers 378
Toner Cartridges 378
Image Drums 378
Fusers 378
Transfer Belt 379
Accessory Order Numbers 379
General 379

Memory: RAM Upgrades 380
Network Print Servers 381
Interface Cables 381
Accessories 382
Memory DIMMS 382
Installing Memory DIMMs 382
To install additional DIMMs: 383
Step 1: Prepare The Printer 383
Back 383
Step 2: Install the DIMM(s) 384
Step 3: Complete the Installation 386
Step 4: Check for Proper Installation 387
Step 5: Change the Memory Setting in the Drivers 387
Print Servers 388
Model 6200e, OKI P/N 70036701 388
Installing the OkiLAN® 6200e Print Server 388
Model 6020e, OKI P/N 70036001 390
Installing the OkiLAN® 6020e Print Server 391
Hard Disk Drive, OKI P/N 70037301 391
Installing the Internal Hard Disk Drive 392
Step 1: Prepare The Printer 392
Back 392
Step 2: Install the Hard Disk Drive (HDD) 393
Step 3: Complete the Installation 394
Step 4: Check for Proper Installation 395
Step 5: Activate the Hard Disk in the Printer Driver 396
Windows PCL Driver 396
Windows PostScript Driver 396
Duplex Unit, OKI P/N 70037101 396
Installing the Duplex Unit 397
Back 397
Step 1: Install the Duplex Unit 398
Step 2: Activate the Duplex Unit in the Menu 399
Step 3: Activate the Duplex Unit in the Driver 400
Windows PCL Driver 400
Windows PostScript Driver 400
Macintosh Driver 400
Auxiliary Paper Trays, OKI P/N 41529701 401
Installing the Auxiliary Paper Trays 401
Step 1: Install the Tray(s) 402
Back 402
Step 2: Load Print Media 403
Step 3: Activate the Auxiliary Tray(s) in the Printer Driver 405
Windows PCL Driver 405
Windows PostScript Driver 405
Macintosh PostScript Driver 405

High Capacity Feeder, OKI P/N 41529801 406
Installing the High Capacity Feeder 406
Back 406
Step 2: Load Paper 409
Fonts 411
Selecting Fonts 411
PCL Fonts 411
Resident Bitmap PCL Fonts 411
Resident Fixed Scalable PCL Fonts 411
Resident Proportional Scalable PCL Fonts 413
PCL Font Symbol Sets 415
PostScript 417
Resident Fixed PostScript Fonts 417
Fixed Type-14 Resident PostScript Fonts 418
Resident Proportional PostScript Fonts 418
Type 2 Fonts 418
Type 14 Fonts 419
Font Management for the Macintosh 422
Adobe® Type Manager® (ATM®) 422
Fonts Downloader Program 422
Installing the Downloader Program 422
Using the Downloader Program 422
Warranties, Certifications, etc. 424
Warranties 424
Limited Warranty 424
United States & Canada 424
On-Site Repair 424
Oki Data Service Center Information 425
Options Limited Warranty: US & Canada 425
Oki Data Service Centers 426
Consumables Limited Warranty 426
Oki Data Service Centers 427
Safety Information 427
Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Statements 428
Federal Communications Commission Declarations of Conformity for 120 Volt Models 428
Federal Communications Commission Radio Frequency 428
Interference Statement for 120-Volt Models 429
Federal Communications Commission Radio Frequency Interference Statement for 230/240-Volt Models and 120-Volt Models Equipped with Auxiliary Tray(s) and/or Network Print Server Option 429
Industry Canada Radio Interference Statements 429
For 120-Volt Models 429
For 230/240-Volt Models and 120-Volt Models with Auxiliary Paper Tray(s) and/or Network Print Server Option 430
ENERGY STAR 430
Year 2000 Compliance 430

European Union Council of the European Communities Statement of Electromagnetic Conformance for 230/240-Volt Models 430
European Union Council of the European Communities Statement of Safety Conformance, 230/240V Models 430
Drivers / Connections 431
Uninstalling the Printer Software 431
Windows 2000, Me, 98, 95 & NT 4.0 431
Macintosh 431
Parallel Interface 431
Connecting the Parallel Port 431
Parallel Cable Requirements 432
Standard Parallel Port Menu Settings 432
Changing Parallel Port Menu Settings 433
ECP Mode 433
Changing the ECP Menu Setting 433
Pin Assignments 434
Parallel Interface Pin Assignments: Compatible Mode 434
Parallel Interface Pin Assignments: ECP Mode 435
Parallel Interface Pin Assignments: Nibble Mode 436
USB Interface 436
Connecting the USB Port 437
Standard USB Port Menu Settings 437
Changing USB Port Menu Settings 437
USB Cable Requirements 438
Network Interface 438
Network Interface 438
Network Cable Requirements 439
Windows Systems 439
Macintosh Systems 439
Connecting the Network Server 439
Portrait versus Landscape 440
Portrait 440
Landscape 440
Index 441

Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this document is complete, accurate, and up-to-date. Oki Data assumes no responsibility for the results of errors or omissions beyond its control.

Copyright 2001 by Oki Data Americas, Inc. All Rights Reserved

Written and produced by the Oki Data Training and Publications Department. Please address any comments on this publication to:

Oki Data
Training & Publications Department
2000 Bishops Gate Blvd.
Mount Laurel, NJ 08054-4620

email address: pubs@okidata.com

Please visit Oki Data's multilingual web site at: **http://www.okidata.com**.

OKI, OkiLAN and OkiView are registered trademarks of Oki Electric Industry Company, Ltd.

3M is a trademark or registered trademark of 3M Company.

Adobe, ATM, Carta, Garamond, PostScript, Tekton and Type Manager are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Albertus MT, Arial, Cooper Black, GillSans, Goudy, Joanna and Times New Roman are trademarks of The Monotype Corporation registered in the US Patent and Trademark Office and may be registered in certain other jurisdictions.

American Express is a registered trademark of American Express Company.

Antique Olive is a registered trademark of Marcel Olive.

Apple Chancery, Geneva, Macintosh, Mac and Monaco are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

CG Times and CG Omega are products of Agfa Corporation, Agfa Compugraphic Division.

Clarendon, Helvetica, Optima, Stempel Garamond and Univers are trademarks of Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries.

Copperplate Gothic and Letter Gothic are trademarks of Heidelberger Druckmaschinen AG, which may be registered in certain jurisdictions.

Coronet is a trademark of Ludlow Type Foundry.

Energy Star is a registered trademark of the United States Environmental Protection Agency.

Eurostile is a trademark of Nebiolo.

Folex is a registered trademark of Folex Imaging.

Great White is a registered trademark of Great White Consumer.

HammerMill is a registered trademark of HammerMill.

HP and PCL are registered trademarks of Hewlett Packard Company.

Hoefler Text was designed by the Hoefler Type Foundary.

ITC Avant Garde Gothic, ITC Bookman, ITC Mona Lisa, ITC Symbol, ITC Zapf Chancery, ITC Zapf Dingbats, LubalinGraph, New Century Schoolbook, Palatino, Times and Wingdings are trademarks of International Typeface Corporation.

Marigold is a trademark of AlphaOmega Typography.

MasterCard is a registered trademark of MasterCard International, Inc.

Oxford is a trademark of AlphaOmega Typography.

Springhill is a registered trademark of International Paper.

Strobe is a trademark of Sappi Limited.

Velcro is a registered trademark of Velcro Industries B.V.

VISA is a registered trademark of Visa.

Wausau Exact is a registered trademark of Wausau-Mosinee Paper Corp.

Weyerhaeuser is a trademark or registered trademark of Weyerhaeuser Company.

Windows and Windows NT are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the

United States and other countries.
Xerox is a trademark of Xerox Corporation.

Print Media

Printer Driver Media Weight Settings

Setting	Media Weight		
	US Bond	**Metric**	**Index**
Light	16 lb.	62 g/m^2	33 lb.
Medium Light	17-19 lb.	63-73 g/m^2	34-40 lb.
Medium (default)	20-24 lb.	74-92 g/m^2	42-50 lb.
Medium Heavy	25-27 lb.	93-103 g/m^2	51-56 lb.
Heavy	28-32 lb.	104-122 g/m^2	58-67 lb.
Ultra Heavy	33-54 lb.	123-200 g/m^2	67-110 lb.

Print Media Sizes

English Media

Designation	Dimensions
Letter	8.5 x 11 inches
Legal	8.5 x 14 inches 8.5 x 13.5 inches 8.5 x 13 inches
Executive	7.25 x 10.5 inches
Tabloid	11 x 17 inches
Tabloid Extra	12 x 18 inches

Metric Media

Designation	Dimensions
A3	297 x 420 mm
A3 Nobi	328 x 453 mm
A3 Wide	320 x 450 mm
A4	210 x 297 mm
A5	148 x 210 mm
A6	105 x 148 mm

B4	257 x 364 mm
B5	182 x 257 mm

Envelopes

Designation	Dimensions
DL	110 x 220 mm
C4	229 x 324 mm
C5	162 x 229 mm
COM-9	3.875 x 8.875 inches
COM-10	4.125 x 9.5 inches
Monarch	3.875 x 7.5 inches

Print Media Specifications

Print Media Specifications: Tray 1

Paper

- **Weight:** 17 to 47 lb. (63 to 176 g/m^2)
- **Sizes:** Letter, Legal-13, Legal-13.5, Legal-14, Tabloid, Tabloid Extra, Executive, A3, A3 Nobi, A3 Wide, A4, A5, A6, B4, B5, Custom (must be set up in the printer driver)
- **Exit Path:** Top or Straight-Through

Transparencies

(Use 3M® CG3720 or Folex® BG67 or BG78 transparencies)

- **Sizes:** Letter, A4, Tabloid, Tabloid Extra
- **Exit Path:** Straight-Through Only

Print Media Specifications: Multi-Purpose Tray

Note: Always use the straight-through (face-up) exit with the Multi-Purpose Tray.

Straight-Through Exit

***Caution!* Print media (including ink on preprinted forms) must be able to withstand 392°F (200°C) for 0.1 second.**

Media	Weight	Size(s)	Exit Path
Paper	16 to 47 lb. US Bond (62 to 176 g/m2)	Letter, Legal-13, Legal-13.5, Legal-14, Tabloid, Tabloid Extra, Executive, A3, A3 Nobi, A3 Wide, A4, A5, A6, B4, B5, Custom	Top or Straight-Through
Transparencies*	N.A.	Letter, A4, Tabloid, Tabloid Extra	Straight-Through Only
Envelopes		Com-9, Com-10, Monarch, DL, C5 or C4	Straight-Through Only
Labels	N.A.	Letter, A4	Straight-Through Only
Heavy Paper	up to 110 lb. Index (200 g/m2)	Letter, Legal-13, Legal-13.5, Legal-14, Tabloid, Tabloid Extra, Executive, A3, A3 Nobi, A3 Wide, A4, A5, A6, B4, B5, Custom	Straight-Through Only

* Use only 3M® CG3720 or Folex® BG67 transparencies

Print Media Specifications: Duplex Unit

***Caution!* Print media (including ink on preprinted forms) must be able to withstand 392°F (200°C) for 0.1 second.**

Note: If you will be using the duplex unit to print complex documents, you also need to purchase and install 64 MB of additional memory (OKI # 70037401).

Handles paper:

- **Weight:** 20 to 28 lb. US Bond (75 to 105 g/m^2)

  Note: If you experience significant curling when printing in the duplex mode and you're using 20 or 24-lb. paper, switch to 28-lb. paper.

- **Size:** Letter, Legal-13, Legal-13.5, Legal-14, Tabloid, Tabloid Extra, Executive, A3, A3 Wide, A4, A5, B4, B5
- **Feed Path:** Tray 1, Auxiliary Tray(s), High Capacity Feeder

  Note: The duplex unit is not usable with the Multi-Purpose Tray.

- **Exit Path:** Top or Straight-Through

Print Media Specifications: Auxiliary Trays

***Caution!* Print media (including ink on preprinted forms) must be able to withstand 392°F (200°C) for 0.1 second.**

Paper Only:

- **Weight Range:** 17 to 47-lb. US Bond (63 to 176 g/m^2)
- **Sizes:** Letter, Legal-13, Legal-13.5, Legal-14, Tabloid, Tabloid Extra, Executive, A3, A3 Nobi, A3 Wide, A4, A5, A6, B4, B5
- **Output Path:** Top or Straight-Through

Print Media Specifications: High Capacity Feeder

***Caution!* Print media (including ink on preprinted forms) must be able to withstand 392°F (200°C) for 0.1 second.**

Paper Only:

- **Weight Range:** 17 to 46-lb. US Bond (63 to 176 g/m^2)
- **Sizes:** Letter, Legal-13, Legal-13.5, Legal-14, Tabloid, Tabloid Extra, Executive, A3, A3 Nobi, A3 Wide, A4, A5, A6, B4, B5
- **Output Path:** Top or Straight-Through

Long Edge versus Short Edge

Because the printer takes media up to 12.9 inches wide (328 mm), letter, A4 and B5 size sheets can be fed into the printer either long edge first or short edge first.

Long edge feed (LEF) is the printer default and provides faster throughput than short edge feed.

For example, for letter size media:

- Long Edge feed: 11-inch edge of the media feeds into the printer:

- Short Edge feed: 8.5-inch edge of the media feeds into the printer:

Note: Long versus short edge feed has no impact on whether the document is printed on the sheet in portrait or landscape format. Portrait/landscape printing is determined by your software application.

Paper

Standard Paper

Recommended Standard Paper

Letter Size

HammerMill®

- Laser, 24 lb. US Bond

Xerox

- 4024, 20 lb. US Bond
- 4024DP, 20 lb. US Bond
- Xpressions, 24 lb. / 28 lb. / 32 lb. US Bond
- Color Xpressions, 24 lb. US Bond

Legal Size

Xerox

- 4024DP, 20 lb. US Bond

Tabloid Size

HammerMill

- Laser, 24 lb. US Bond

Wausau Exact®

- Color Copy, 28 lb. US Bond

Standard Paper Specifications

Weight

- 16 to 54 lb. US Bond (62 to 200 g/m^2)

Sizes

- Tabloid, Tabloid Extra
- Letter, Executive
- Legal-14, Legal-13.5, Legal-13
- A3 Nobi, A3 Wide, A3, A4, A5, A6
- B4, B5
- Custom (must be defined and saved in the printer driver)

Standard Paper Print Path

Feed Paths

- Tray 1, range to 47 lb. US Bond
- Multi-Purpose Tray, range to 110 lb. Index (54 lb US Bond)
- Auxiliary Tray(s) (*optional*), range to 47 lb. US Bond
- High Capacity Feeder (*optional*), range to 47 lb. US Bond

Exit Paths

- Top, range to 47 lb.
- Straight-Through (required when using Multi-Purpose Tray)

Matte Photo Paper

Matte Photo Paper Specifications

Weight

- 20 to 54 lb. (75 to 200 g/m^2)

Sizes

- Tabloid, Tabloid Extra
- Letter, Executive
- Legal-14, Legal-13.5, Legal-13
- A3 Nobi, A3 Wide, A3, A4, A5, A6
- B4, B5
- Custom (must be defined and saved in the printer driver)

Matte Photo Paper Print Path

Feed Paths

- Tray 1, range to 47 lb. US Bond
- Multi-Purpose Tray, range to 110 lb. Index (54 lb US Bond)
- Auxiliary Tray(s) (*optional*), range to 47 lb. US Bond
- High Capacity Feeder (*optional*), range to 47 lb. US Bond

Exit Paths

- Top, range to 47 lb
- Straight-Through (*required when using Multi-Purpose Tray*)

Recycled Paper

Recommended (Letter Size)

Great White®
Recycled Content 86100, 24 lb. US Bond

Weyerhaeuser®
Husky Zero Copy 3108, 20 lb. US Bond

Xerox®
Recycled, 3 Holes, 20 lb. US Bond

Recycled Paper Specifications

Weight

- 20 to 54 lb. (75 to 200 g/m^2)

Note: Recycled paper is slightly thicker than non-recycled paper of the same paper weight (ream weight). If the toner is not fusing properly, change the Media Weight to the next higher setting.

Sizes

- Tabloid, Tabloid Extra
- Letter, Executive
- Legal-14, Legal-13.5, Legal-13
- A3 Nobi, A3 Wide, A3, A4, A5, A6
- B4, B5
- Custom (must be defined and saved in the printer driver)

Recycled Paper Print Path

Feed Paths

- Tray 1, range to 47 lb. US Bond
- Multi-Purpose Tray, range to 110 lb. Index (54 lb US Bond)
- Auxiliary Tray(s) (*optional*), range to 47 lb. US Bond
- High Capacity Feeder (*optional*), range to 47 lb. US Bond

Exit Paths

- Top, range to 47 lb
- Straight-Through (required when using Multi-Purpose Tray)

Storing Paper

If paper is stored improperly, print quality could be affected.

- Store paper in a dark, dry place such as a closet or a cabinet.
- Don't open the package until you are ready to use it.
- Always store paper lying flat or it may curl.
- Store your paper in a static-free environment.
- Ideally, store paper at a constant temperature of 70°F (21.1°C) with less than 50% humidity.

Note: Discard the top sheet from each ream of paper before loading it into the paper tray—it may be contaminated with glue or dust.

Transparencies

***Caution!* Transparencies must be able to withstand 392°F (200°C) for 0.1-second.**

Recommended Transparencies

3M®

- CG3720 (letter)

Folex®

- BG67 (A4)
- BG78 (tabloid)

Transparency Print Path

- **Input:** Tray 1 (up to 250 sheets) or Multi-Purpose Tray (up to 50 sheets)
- **Output:** Straight-Through Exit Only

Note: Transparencies can only be fed from Tray 1 or the Multi-Purpose Tray. They can *not* be fed from the auxiliary tray(s) or from the high capacity feeder.

Driver Settings: Individual Print Jobs

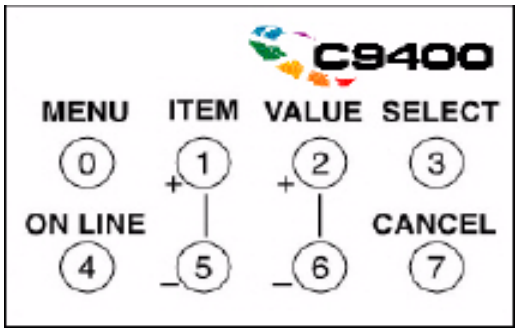
For individual print jobs, change the settings in the driver as you print the job:

- **Source:** Tray 1 or Multi-Purpose Tray
- **Size:** Letter, A4, Tabloid or Tabloid Extra
- **Type:** Transparency
- **Windows PostScript Driver only:** *De*select Paper Size Check (Windows 2000, Windows Me/98/95, Windows NT 4.0)

Menu Settings: Transparencies as the Default

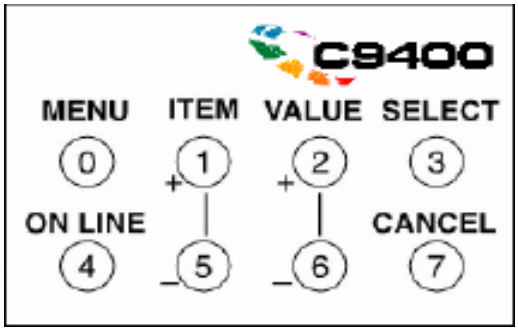
If you consistently use transparencies in Tray 1 or the Multi-Purpose Tray, enter the printer menu and change the settings to make transparencies the default for the appropriate tray. This eliminates the need to set up the transparency print parameters for each print job.

To set transparencies as the default for Tray 1:



1. Press MENU repeatedly until MEDIA MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until TRAY1 MEDIATYPE appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE (+ or -) repeatedly until TRANSPARENCY appears on the display.
4. Press SELECT to engage the setting. *An asterisk appears next to TRANSPARENCY.*
5. Press ON LINE to save the setting and exit the menu.

To set transparencies as the default for the Multi-Purpose Tray:



1. Press MENU repeatedly until MEDIA MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until MP TRAY PAPERSIZE appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE (+ or -) repeatedly until your choice of LETTER, A4, TABLOID or TABLOID EXTRA appears on the display.
4. Press SELECT to engage the setting. *An asterisk appears beside the new setting.*
5. Press ITEM + repeatedly until MP TRAY MEDIATYPE appears on the display.
6. Press VALUE (+ or -) repeatedly until TRANSPARENCY appears on the display.
7. Press SELECT to engage the new setting. *An asterisk appears beside TRANSPARENCY.*
8. Press ON LINE to save the settings and exit the menu.

Printing Transparencies

Printing Transparencies Using the Windows PCL Driver

1. Open the document in the application.

2. Load the transparencies print side *down* in Tray 1 or print side *up* in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

3. Open the straight-through exit tray.

4. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
5. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or Setup, or your application's equivalent).
6. In the Paper tab, select the Size and Source, then click Transparency in the Media Type drop-down list.
7. Click Device options, then click Paper size check to *deselect* it.
8. Click OK and print the document.

Printing Transparencies Using the Windows PostScript Driver

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Load the transparencies print side *down* in Tray 1 or print side *up* in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

3. Open the straight-through exit tray.

4. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
5. Make the following selections in the PostScript driver (Windows 2000, Windows Me/98/95, Windows NT 4.0):
   - Paper size = Letter, A4, Tabloid or Tabloid Extra.
   - Paper source = Multi-Purpose Tray
   - Paper Type = Transparency
   - Paper size check = OFF.

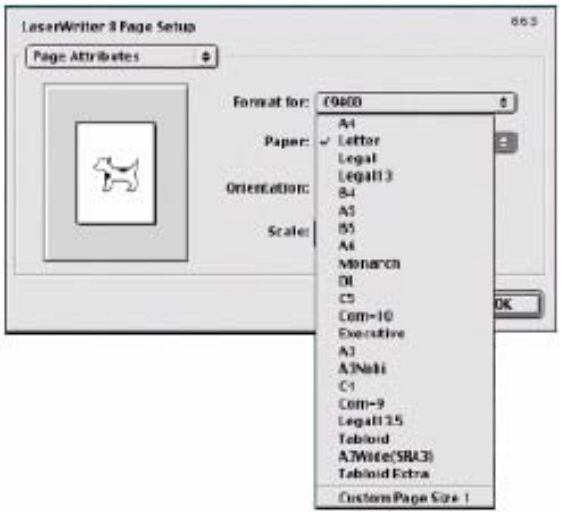
6. Click OK and print the document.

Printing Transparencies Using the Macintosh

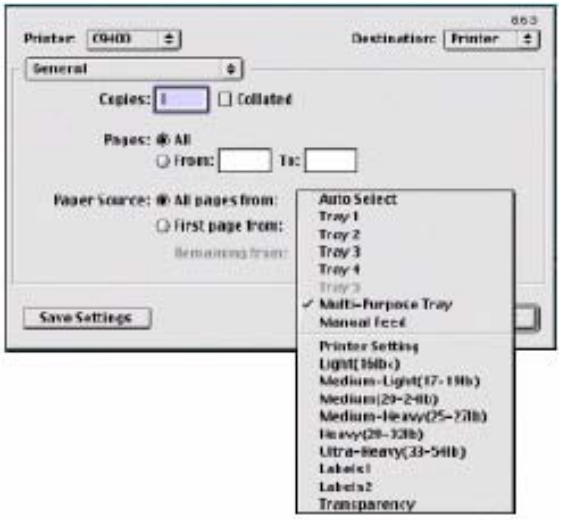
1. Open the document in the application.
2. Load the transparencies print side *down* in Tray 1 or print side *up* in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

3. Open the straight-through exit tray.

4. Click File → Page Setup and select Letter, A4, Tabloid or Tabloid Extra in the Paper drop-down list, then click OK.

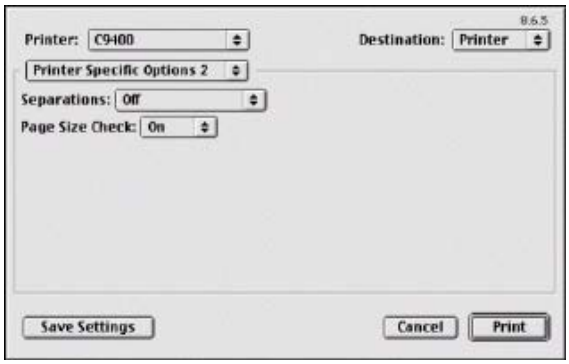


5. Click File → Print Window.
6. Select Multi-Purpose Tray *and* Transparency in the Paper Source drop-down list:



7. Select Printer Specific Options 2 from the drop down list and change the Paper Size

Check setting to Off.



8. Click Print.

Labels

Label Recommendations

Important! Use label sheets designed for laser printers.

Caution!

Labels must be able to withstand 392°F (200°C) for 0.1-second.

Labels must cover the entire carrier sheet.

Label adhesive must not be exposed; if it is, it will cause jamming in the printer.

Label Print Path

- **Input:** Multi-Purpose (MP) Tray Only
- **Output:** Straight-Through Exit Only

Label Specifications

- Maximum depth of label sheet feed stack: about 3/8-inch (1 cm)
- Sheet Size: Letter or A4

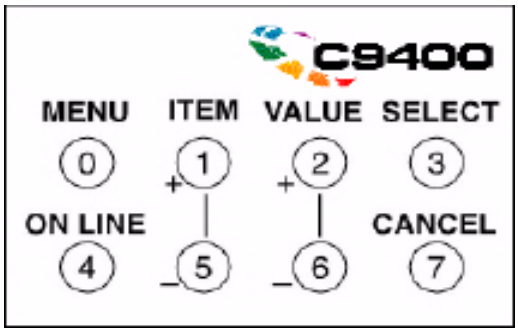
Driver Settings: Individual Print Jobs

For individual print jobs, change the settings in the driver as you print the job:

- **Source:** MP TRAY
- **Size:** LETTER or A4
- **Type:** LABEL1 (Heavy) or LABEL2 (Ultra Heavy)
- **Windows Adobe PostScript Driver only:** Deselect Paper Size Check (Windows 2000, Windows Me/98/95, Windows NT 4.0)

Menu Settings: Labels as the Default for the Multi-Purpose Tray

If you consistently use labels in the Multi-Purpose Tray, enter the printer menu and change the settings to make labels the default for the MP Tray:



1. Press MENU repeatedly until MEDIA MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until MP TRAY PAPERSIZE appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE (+ or -) repeatedly until the desired label sheet size setting (LETTER or A4) appears on the display.
4. Press SELECT to engage the setting.
   An asterisk appears beside the new setting.
5. Press ITEM + repeatedly until MP TRAY MEDIAWEIGHT appears on the display.
6. Press VALUE (+ or -) repeatedly until HEAVY or ULTRA HEAVY appears on the display.
7. Press SELECT to engage the new setting.
   An asterisk appears beside the setting.
8. Press ON LINE to save the settings and exit the menu.

Printing Labels

Printing Labels Using the Windows PCL Driver

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Load the label sheets print side up in the Multi-Purpose Tray (printer default is long edge first).

3. Open the straight-through exit tray.

4. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
5. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or Setup, or your application's equivalent).
6. In the Paper tab, make the following selections:
   - Size = Letter or A4
   - Source = Multi Purpose Tray
   - Media Type = LABEL1 (Heavy) or LABEL2 (Ultra Heavy)

7. Click Device options, then click Paper size check to *deselect* it.
8. Click OK and print the document.

Printing Labels Using the Windows Postscript Driver

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Load the label sheets print side up in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

3. Open the straight-through exit tray.

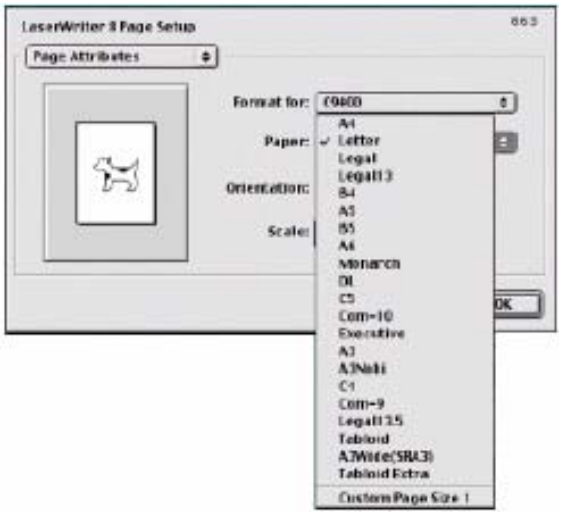
4. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
5. Make the following selections in the PostScript driver (Windows 2000, Windows Me/98/95, Windows NT 4.0):
   - Paper size = Letter or A4.
   - Paper source = Multi-Purpose Tray
   - Paper Type = Labels1 (Heavy) or Labels2 (Ultra Heavy)
   - Paper size check = OFF.
6. Click OK and print the document.

Printing Labels Using the Macintosh

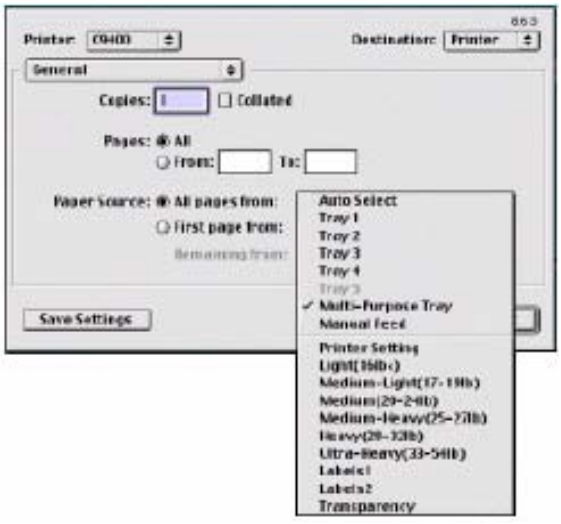
1. Open the document in the application.
2. Load the label sheets print side up in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

3. Open the straight-through exit tray.

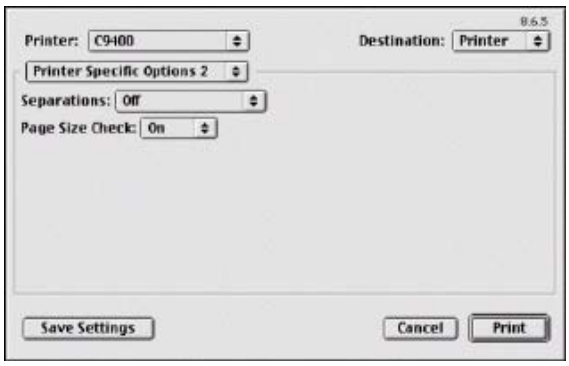
4. Click File → Page Setup and select Letter or A4 in the Paper drop-down list, then click OK.



5. Click File → Print Window.
6. Select Multi-Purpose Tray *and* Labels1 (Heavy) or Labels2 (Ultra Heavy) in the Paper Source drop-down list:



7. Select Printer Specific Options 2 from the drop down list and change the Paper Size Check setting to Off.



8. Click Print.

Thick Paper (Index, Cards)

Caution! ***You must change the printer's media settings before you print on thick paper. If you do not, the printer will be damaged and require repair.***

Recommended Thick Papers

Letter Size

HammerMill®

- Cover Copy, 60 & 80 lb. Index
- Color Cover Copy #12002-3, 80 lb. Index

Spring Hill®

- Index, 110 lb. Index

Weyerhaeuser®

- First Choice Premium Cover #8210, 80 lb. Index

Wausau Exact®

- Index #49111, 90 lb. Index
- Index #49511, 110 lb. Index

Xerox

- Color Xpressions, 65 lb. Index
- Cover Stock, 65 lb. Index
- Index, 90 lb. Index

Tabloid Size

Strobe Gloss

- 100 lb. Index

Thick Paper Specifications

Weight

- up to 110 lb. Index (200 g/m^2)

Sizes

- Tabloid, Tabloid Extra
- Letter, Executive
- Legal-14, Legal-13.5, Legal-13
- A3 Nobi, A3 Wide, A3, A4, A5, A6
- B4, B5
- Custom (must be defined in the printer driver)

Thick Paper Print Path

- **Input:** Tray 1 (up to 47 lb. US Bond) Multi-Purpose (MP) Tray (up to 110 lb. Index)
- **Output:** Straight-Through Exit Only

Thick Paper Driver Settings: Individual Print Jobs

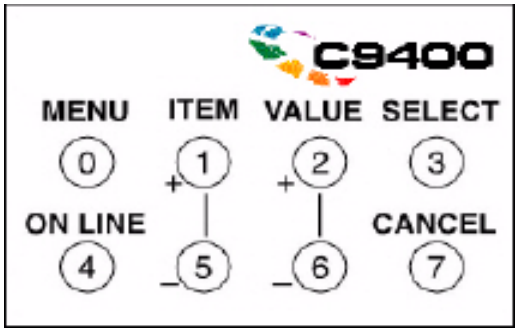
For individual print jobs, change the settings in the driver

as you print the job:

- **Source:** Tray1 (up to 47 lb. US Bond) MP Tray (up to 110 lb. Index)
- **Size:** Letter, Legal-13, Legal 13.5, Legal-14, Tabloid, Tabloid Extra, Executive, A4, A5, A6, B4, B5 or Custom (must be defined and saved in the driver)
- **Type:** Medium Heavy to Ultra Heavy

Menu Settings: Thick Paper as the Default

If you consistently use thick paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray, enter the printer menu and change the settings to make thick paper the default for the MP Tray:



1. Press MENU repeatedly until MEDIA MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until MP TRAY PAPERSIZE appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE (+ or -) repeatedly until the desired size appears on the display.
4. Press SELECT to engage the size setting.
   An asterisk appears beside the new setting.
5. Press ITEM + repeatedly until MP TRAY MEDIAWEIGHT appears on the display.
6. Press VALUE (+ or -) repeatedly until the appropriate choice of MEDIUM HEAVY, HEAVY, or ULTRA HEAVY appears on the display.
7. Press SELECT to engage the new setting.
   An asterisk appears beside the setting.
8. Press ON LINE to save the settings and exit the menu.

Printing Thick Paper

Printing Thick Paper Using the Windows PCL Driver

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Load the thick paper print side up in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

3. Open the straight-through exit tray.

4. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
5. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or Setup, or your application's equivalent).
6. In the Paper tab, make the following selections:
   - Size = your choice
   - Source = Multi Purpose Tray
   - Media Type = Medium Heavy to Ultra Heavy
7. Click Device options, then click Paper size check to deselect it.
8. Click OK and print the document.

Printing Thick Paper Using the Windows Postscript Driver

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Load the thick paper print side up in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

3. Open the straight-through exit tray.

4. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
5. Make the following selections in the PostScript driver (Windows 2000, Windows Me/98/95, Windows NT 4.0):

- Paper size = your choice
- Paper source = Multi-Purpose Tray
- Paper Type = Medium Heavy to Ultra Heavy
- Paper size check = OFF.

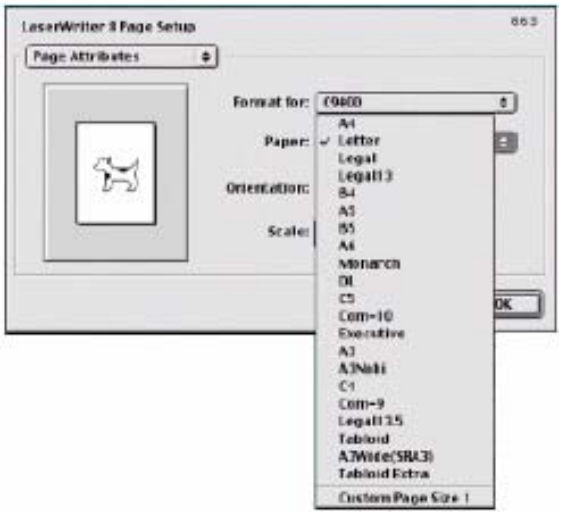
6. Click OK and print the document.

Printing Thick Paper Using the Macintosh

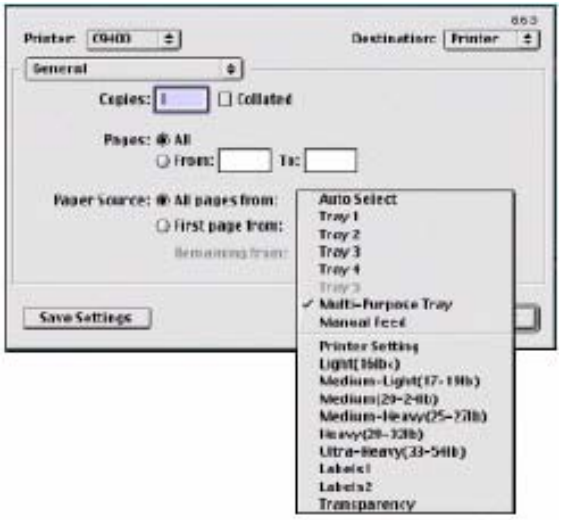
1. Open the document in the application.
2. Load the thick paper print side up in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

3. Open the straight-through exit tray.

4. Click File → Page Setup and select the size in the Paper drop-down list, then click OK.

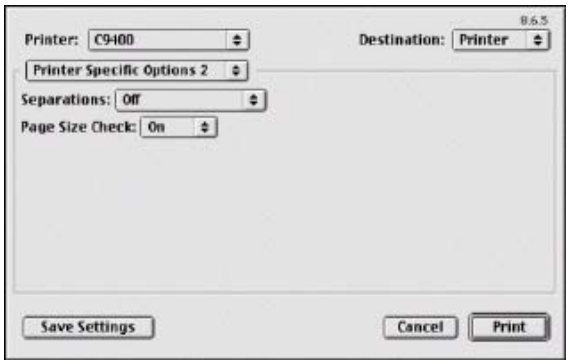


5. Click File → Print Window.
6. Select Multi-Purpose Tray *and* Medium Heavy, Heavy or Ultra Heavy in the Paper Source drop-down list:



7. Select Printer Specific Options 2 from the drop down list and change the Paper Size

Check setting to Off.



8. Click Print.

Envelopes

Caution! ***The ink in preprinted return addresses must be able to withstand 392°F (200°C) for 0.1-second.***

Envelope Recommendations

Important!

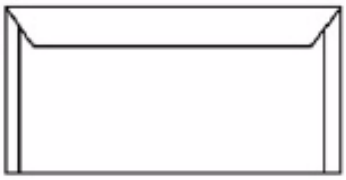
Use envelopes with a smooth, even surface that are designed for laser printers: *no metal clasps, snaps, windows, or self-adhesive flaps*.

Folds should be well scored and sharply creased.

Envelopes containing air can wrinkle as they pass through the printer.

Be sure to test sample envelopes first before buying in quantity.

Yes!



No!

Envelope Print Path

- **Input:** Multi-Purpose (MP) Tray Only
- **Output:** Straight-Through Exit Only

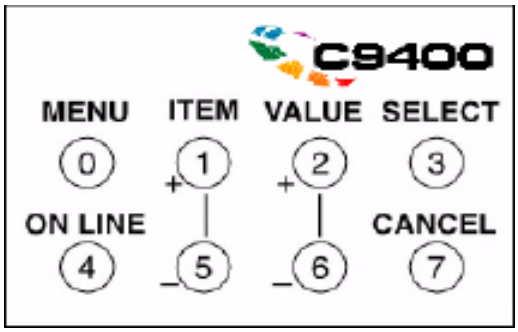
Envelope Driver Settings: Individual Print Jobs

For individual print jobs, change the settings in the driver as you print the job:

- **Source:** Multi-Purpose Tray
- **Size:** Com-9, Com-10, Monarch, DL, B4, C5 or C4
- **Type:** Medium Heavy

Menu Settings: Envelopes as the Default

If you consistently use envelopes in the Multi-Purpose Tray, enter the printer menu and change the settings to make envelopes the default for the MP Tray:



1. Press MENU repetitively until MEDIA MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM (+ or -) until MP TRAY PAPERSIZE appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE (+ or -) until the desired envelope size appears on the display.
4. Press SELECT to engage the envelope size setting.
   An asterisk appears beside the new setting.
5. Press ITEM + until MP TRAY MEDIAWEIGHT appears on the display.
6. Press VALUE (+ or -) until MEDIUM HEAVY appears on the display.
7. Press SELECT to engage this new setting.
   An asterisk appears beside the setting.
8. Press ON LINE to save the settings and exit the menu.

Printing Envelopes

Printing Envelopes Using the Windows PCL Driver

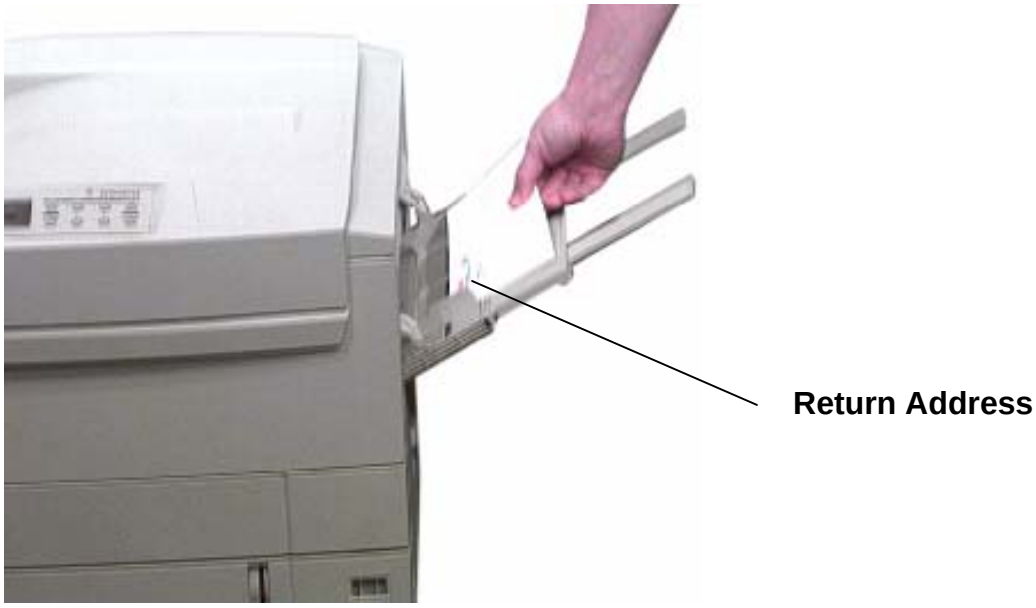
1. Open the document in the application.
2. Load the envelopes print side up, return address toward the printer and to the left, in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

3. Open the straight-through exit tray.

4. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
5. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or Setup, or your application's equivalent).
6. In the Paper tab, make the following selections:
   - Size = Com-9, Com-10, Monarch, DL, C5 or C4
   - Source = Multi-Purpose Tray
   - Media Type = Medium Heavy
7. Click OK and print the document.

Printing Envelopes Using the Windows PostScript Driver

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Load the envelopes print side up, return address toward you and to the left, in the Multi-Purpose Tray.



3. Open the straight-through exit tray.

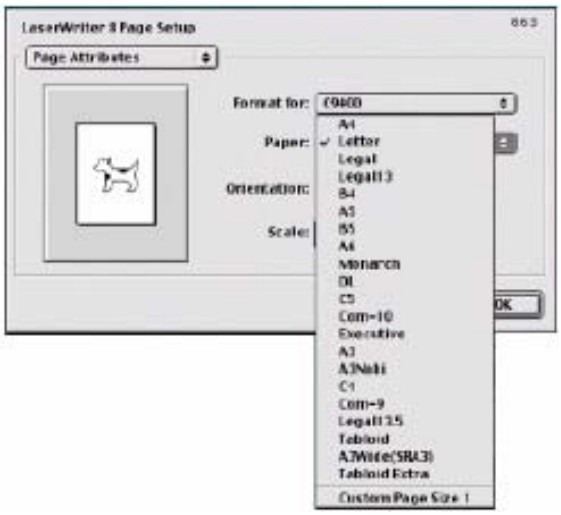
4. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
5. Make the following selections in the PostScript driver (Windows 2000, Windows Me/98/95, Windows NT 4.0):
   - Paper size = Com-9, Com-10, Monarch, DL, C5 or C4.
   - Paper source = Multi-Purpose Tray
   - Paper Type = Medium Heavy
6. Click OK and print the document.

Printing Envelopes Using the Macintosh

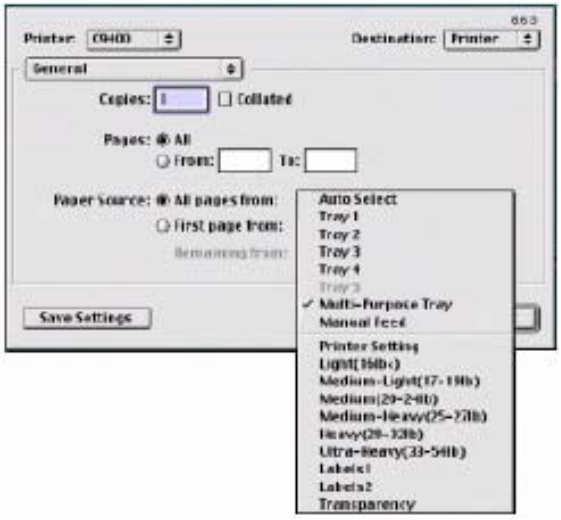
1. Open the document in the application.
2. Load the envelopes print side up, return address toward you and to the left, in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

3. Open the straight-through exit tray.

4. Click File → Page Setup and select the envelope size (Com-9, Com-10, Monarch, DL, C5 or C4) in the Paper drop-down list, then click OK.



5. Click File → Print Window.
6. Select Multi-Purpose Tray and Medium Heavy in the Paper Source drop-down list:



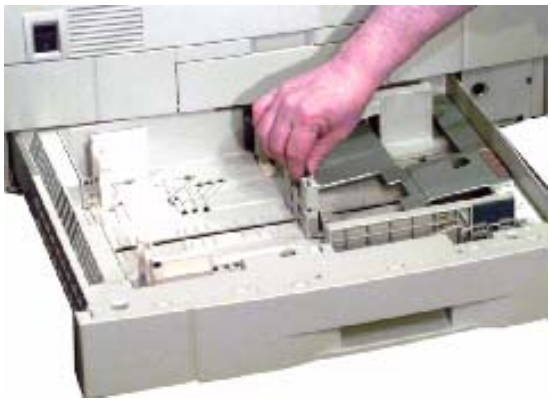
7. Click Print.

Loading Print Media

Loading Print Media in Tray 1, Auxiliary Trays & High Capacity Feeder

1. Pull the tray out.

2. If you're switching to a different media size, adjust the media guides for the width of the media and length of the media.

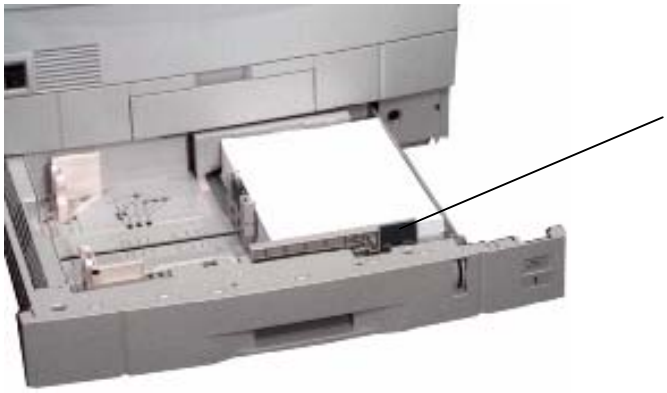


For legal size or larger media, adjust the corner supports:

3. If you're loading paper, fan the paper.

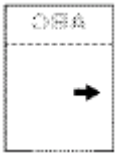
4. Place the print media in the tray, *print side down*, keeping the stack below the PAPER FULL mark.

Note: The default feed for letter size paper is long edge.



Note: Load letterhead stationery print side down:

For long edge feed, load letterhead stationery with the top aimed toward the back of the printer:



For short edge feed, load letterhead stationery with the top to the right:

5. If you're switching to another size or type of media as the normal media in the tray, switch the media indicator to the new media designation.

6. Gently push the tray back into the printer.

Loading Print Media in the Multi-Purpose Tray

1. Pull open the Multi-Purpose Tray.

2. Swing out the platform.

3. Pivot out the extender supports.

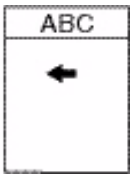
4. Adjust the guides for the media you are using.

5. Place the media on the tray.

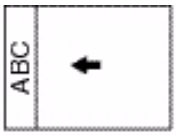
Notes

Letterhead Stationery (Letter, A4 or B5 size):

For long edge feed, load letterhead stationery face up with the top aimed toward the back of the printer:



For short edge feed, load letterhead stationery face up with the top nosed into the printer:



Transparencies & Labels:

Place transparencies and labels print side up. (Remember that the printer default is long edge feed.)

Envelopes:

Place envelopes with flap down and nosed into the printer:

Print Paths

Feed Paths

Print media can be fed into the printer in multiple ways:

- From Tray 1, which takes up to 550 sheets of 20-lb. paper or 250 transparencies

- From the Multi-Purpose Tray (MP Tray) which takes up to 100 sheets of 20-lb paper, 50 transparencies or 10 envelopes, as well as label sheets.

- From the optional Auxiliary Tray which takes up to 550 sheets of 20-lb. paper.

- From a second optional Auxiliary Tray which takes up to 550 sheets of 20-lb. paper.

- From the optional High Capacity Feeder which takes up to 1650 sheets of 20-lb. paper (550 sheets in each of its three trays).

Tray 1

- Takes up to 550 sheets of 20-lb paper or up to 250 transparencies in an enclosed area, away from environmental conditions.
- Usable with paper, range 17 to 47 lb. US Bond (63 to 176 g/m^2).

Tray 1 Usable Media Sizes

- Letter
- Legal-13, Legal-13.5, Legal-14
- Tabloid, Tabloid Extra
- Executive
- A3, A3 Nobi, A3 Wide, A4, A5, A6
- B4, B5
- Custom (must be defined and saved in the printer driver)

The Paper Tray Gauge

The paper tray gauge on the right side indicates the amount of paper left in the tray. This eliminates having to open the tray to check how much paper remains.

The Paper Tray Media Indicator

A media indicator insert is provided on the right end of the tray. The insert can be removed and flipped/repositioned to indicate what media is installed in the tray.

Selections include:

Letter 8.5" x 11" (long edge)	A3
Letter 8.5" x 11"	A3 Wide
 (short edge)	
Legal 14" 8.5" x 14"	A3 Nobi
Legal 13.5" 8.5" x 13.5"	A4 (Long Edge)
Legal 13" 8.5" x 13"	 A4 (Short Edge)
11"x17" (Tabloid)	A5 [long edge only]
12"x18" (Tabloid Extra)	A6
Executive 7.25" x 10.5"	B4

Transparency OHP	B5 (Long Edge) B5 (Short Edge)

Multi-Purpose Tray

Use the Multi-Purpose Tray to print on special media without having to change the paper you have loaded in the tray(s). You can print multiple pieces of media or you can use the Multi-Purpose Tray as a manual feed unit to print individual pieces "on-the-fly."

Important! Always use the straight-through exit when feeding media from the multi-purpose feeder. This eliminates curling, and for labels, it eliminates peeling.

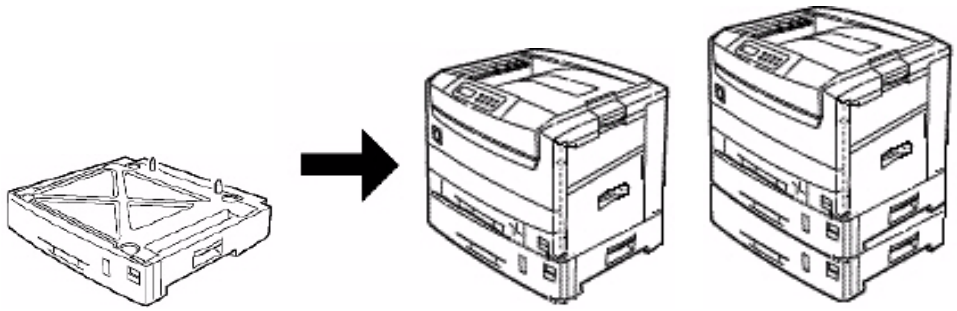
You can use the Multi-Purpose Tray to print on the following media:

- **Standard Paper** (up to 100 sheets of 20-lb. paper), usually a paper that is different from the paper loaded in the tray(s): e.g., letterhead, different size, different color, etc.
- **Labels**
- **Transparencies** (up to 50)
- **Thick Paper** such as index or card stock (up to 53 lb. US Bond [110 lb. Index, 200 g/m^2])
- **Envelopes** (up to 10)

Multi-Purpose Tray Usable Media Sizes

- Letter
- Legal-13, Legal-13.5, Legal-14
- Tabloid, Tabloid Extra
- Executive
- A3, A3 Nobi, A3 Wide, A4, A5, A6
- B4, B5
- Custom (must be defined and saved in the printer driver)

Auxiliary Trays (Optional)



- Used for paper, range 17 to 47 lb. US Bond (63 to 176 g/m^2)
- Up to two Auxiliary Trays can be added to the printer.
- Each tray holds up to 550 sheets of 20-lb. paper in an enclosed area, away from environmental conditions.

Note: The Auxiliary Trays can *not* be used with transparencies.

Auxiliary Tray Usable Media Sizes

- Letter
- Legal-13, Legal-13.5, Legal-14
- Tabloid, Tabloid Extra
- Executive
- A3, A3 Nobi, A3 Wide, A4, A5, A6
- B4, B5
- Custom (must be defined and saved in the printer driver)

The Auxiliary Tray Gauge

The paper tray gauge on the right end of the tray indicates the amount of paper left in the tray. This eliminates having to open the tray to check how much paper remains.

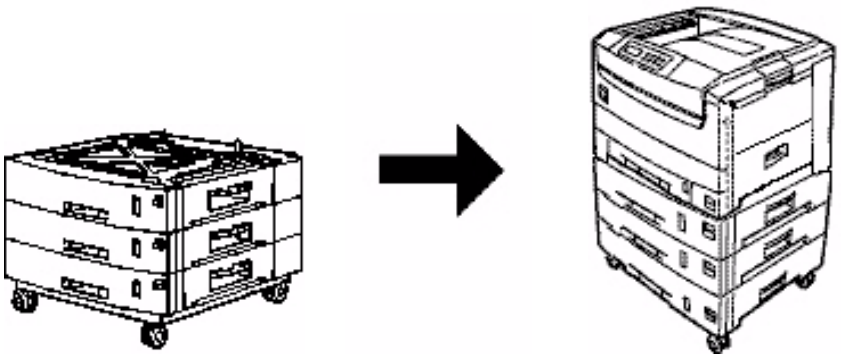
Paper Tray Media Indicator

A media indicator insert is provided on the right end of the tray. The insert can be removed and flipped/repositioned to indicate what media is installed in the tray.

Selections include:

Letter 8.5" x 11" (long edge)	A3
Letter 8.5" x 11"	A3 Wide
 (short edge)	
Legal 14" 8.5" x 14"	A3 Nobi
Legal 13.5" 8.5" x 13.5"	A4 (Long Edge)
Legal 13" 8.5" x 13"	A4 (Short Edge)
11"x17" (Tabloid)	A5 [long edge feed only]
12"x18" (Tabloid Extra)	A6 ***Size A6 is not supported by Auxiliary Trays!***
Executive 7.25" x 10.5"	B4 [long edge feed only]
Transparency OHP	B5 (Long Edge)
	B5 (Short Edge)

High Capacity Feeder (HCF)



- Includes three paper trays.
- Takes paper, range 17 to 47 lb. US Bond (63 to 176 g/m^2).
- Each tray holds up to 550 sheets of 20-lb. paper in an enclosed area, away from environmental conditions.
- Can be used with one Auxiliary Tray.

Note: The High Capacity Feeder trays can *not* be used with transparencies.

HCF Usable Media Sizes

- Letter
- Legal-13, Legal-13.5, Legal-14
- Tabloid, Tabloid Extra
- Executive
- A3, A3 Nobi, A3 Wide, A4, A5, A6
- B4, B5
- Custom (must be defined and saved in the printer driver)

The Paper Tray Gauge

The paper tray gauge on the right side of each tray indicates the amount of paper left in the tray. This eliminates having to open the tray to check how much paper remains.

The Paper Tray Media Indicator

A media indicator insert is provided on the right end of each tray. The insert can be removed and flipped/repositioned to indicate what media is installed in the tray.

Selections include:

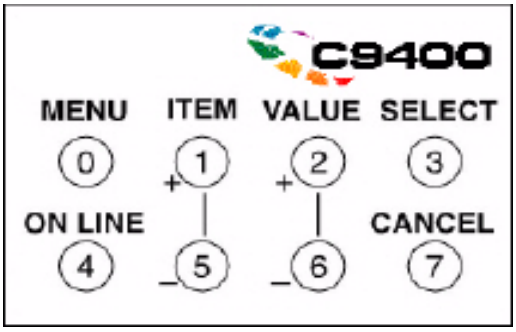
Letter 8.5" x 11" (long edge)	A3
Letter 8.5" x 11"	A3 Wide
 (short edge)	
Legal 14" 8.5" x 14"	A3 Nobi
Legal 13.5" 8.5" x 13.5"	A4 (Long Edge)
Legal 13" 8.5" x 13"	A4 (Short Edge)
11"x17" (Tabloid)	A5 [long edge feed only]
12"x18" (Tabloid Extra)	A6 ***Size A6 is not supported by High Capacity Feeder trays!***
Executive 7.25" x 10.5"	B4 [long edge feed only]
Transparency OHP	B5 (Long Edge)
	B5 (Short Edge)

Automatic Tray Switching

With Automatic Tray Switching turned on (the factory default), if the tray from which the printer is

currently feeding print media runs out, the printer will automatically switch to the nearest tray with the same print media size and type.

To turn automatic tray switching off:



1. Press MENU repeatedly until PRINT MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM (+ or -) repeatedly until AUTO TRAY SWITCH appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE +.
   OFF *appears on the second line of the display.*
4. Press SELECT.
   An asterisk appears next to OFF.
5. Press ON LINE to save the setting and exit the Menu Mode.

Changing The Default Feed Path

Changing the Default Feed Path: Windows 2000

PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI PCL Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. Click your choice of Tray1 (or Tray2, Tray3, etc., if the Auxiliary Tray(s) and/or High Capacity Feeder are installed) or Multi purpose tray for the default feed path from the Source drop-down list.
4. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

PostScript Driver (factory default = Automatically Select)

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI PS Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper/Quality tab
4. Click your choice of Tray 1 (or Tray 2, Tray 3, etc., if the Auxiliary Tray(s) and/or High

Capacity Feeder are installed) or Multi-Purpose Tray for the default feed path from the Paper Source drop-down list.

5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Changing the Default Feed Path: Windows Me

PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI PCL Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab.
4. Click your choice of Tray1 (or Tray2, Tray3, etc., if the Auxiliary Tray(s) and/or High Capacity Feeder are installed)or Multi purpose tray for the default feed path from the Source drop-down list.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

PostScript Driver (factory default = AutoSelect)

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printer dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI PS Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab.
4. Click your choice of Tray 1 (or Tray 2, Tray 3, etc., if the Auxiliary Tray(s) and/or High Capacity Feeder are installed) or Multi-Purpose Tray for the default feed path from the Source drop-down list.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Changing the Default Feed Path: Windows 98 & 95

PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI PCL Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab.
4. Click your choice of Tray1 (or Tray2, Tray3, etc., if the Auxiliary Tray(s) and/or High Capacity Feeder are installed)or Multi purpose tray for the default feed path from the Source drop-down list.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

PostScript Driver (factory default = AutoSelect)

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.

The Printers dialog box appears.

2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI PS Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab.
4. Click your choice of Tray1 (or Tray2, Tray3, etc., if the Auxiliary Tray(s) and/or High Capacity Feeder are installed)or Multi-Purpose Tray for the default feed path from the Source drop-down list.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Changing the Default Feed Path: Windows NT 4.0

PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI PCL Default dialog box appears.
3. Click your choice of Tray1 (or Tray2, Tray3, etc., if the Auxiliary Tray(s) and/or High Capacity Feeder are installed) or Multi purpose tray for the default feed path from the Source drop-down list.
4. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

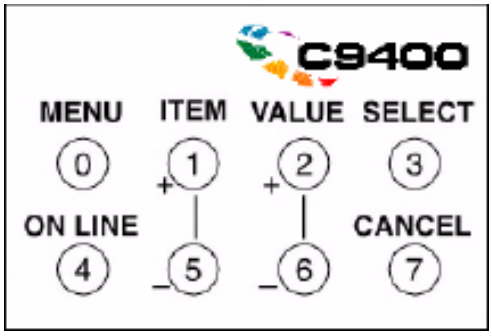
PostScript Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI PS Default dialog box appears.
3. Under Paper/Output, click Paper Source.
4. Under Change 'Paper Source' Setting, click your choice of Automatically Select, Tray1 (or Tray2, Tray3, etc., if the Auxiliary Tray(s) and/or High Capacity Feeder are installed) or Multi-Purpose Tray for the default feed path.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Changing the Default Feed Path: Macintosh

1. Double-click the printer icon to open the printer dialog.
2. Click File → Print Window.
3. Select General from the drop-down list.
4. Select the feed path you want under Paper Source.
5. Click Save Settings.

Changing the Default Feed Path in the Printer Menu



1. Press MENU repeatedly until PRINT MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until PAPER FEED appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the paper feed path you wish to be the default appears on the display.
4. Press SELECT to engage the new setting. An asterisk appears next to the new setting.
5. Press ON LINE to save the setting and exit the menu.

Exit Paths

Top Exit Path

The top exit is the one normally used for routine printing.

- For standard and letterhead paper, up to 32 lb (120 g/m^2).
- Printed pages feed face down into the bin.
- Pages stack in the correct order.
- Bin holds up to 500 sheets of 20-lb. paper.

When the bin is full

REMOVE THE PAPER

480: STACKER FULL

appears on the display and printing stops until the paper is removed.

Straight-Through Exit Path

Provides a straight-through path for special print media such as transparencies, labels, envelopes and heavy stock (cards, etc.) to eliminate curl.

Important!

To use the straight-through exit path you must select it in the printer driver or set it as the default in the driver or printer menu.

The straight-through exit path must be used when the print media is fed in from the Multi-Purpose Tray.

- For paper up to 53 lb. US Bond (200 g/m^2) or card stock up to 110 lb. Index (200 g/m^2)
- Printed pages feed face up.
- Pages stack in reverse order.
- Holds a maximum of 100 sheets of 20 lb. letter-size paper.

When the bin is full

REMOVE THE PAPER
470: FINISHER STACKER FULL

appears on the display and printing stops until the paper is removed.

Opening the Straight-Through Exit Path

To open the straight-through exit:

Caution! Do not extend the straight-through exit tray while printing: a print media jam may occur.

1. Pull the tray down.

2. Pivot out the extenders.

Selecting the Straight-Through Exit Path in the Driver

Windows Systems

To select the straight-through exit path when printing a job:

1. Open the document in your software application, then click File → Print. *The Print dialog box appears.*
2. In the Print dialog box, click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
3. Click the exit path you want (Face-down = top exit; Face-up = straight-through exit) under Output bin:

   Windows PCL Driver:

   - *All Windows Systems:* click the Layout tab

   Windows PostScript Driver:

   - *Windows 2000:* click Advanced, then go to Document Options → Printer Features → Output Bin.
   - *Windows Me/98/95:* click the Paper tab.
   - *Windows NT 4.0:* go to Document Options → Paper/Output.

Macintosh

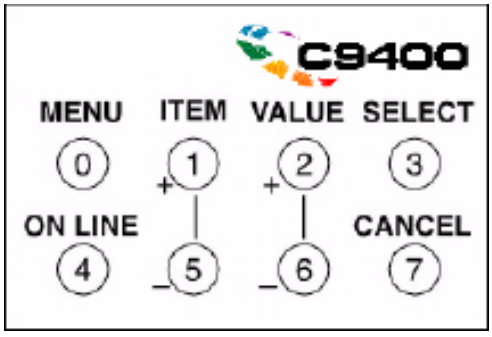
To select the straight-through exit path when printing a job:

1. Double-click the printer icon to open the printer dialog.
2. Click File → Print Window.
3. Select Printer Specific Options 1 from the drop-down list.
4. Select the exit path you want (Face-down = top exit; Face-up = straight-through exit) under Output Bin.
5. Click Print.

Changing the Default Exit Path

Important! Normally, settings made in the driver override settings made in the printer menu.

Using the Printer Menu



To select the exit path using the printer menu:

1. Press MENU repeatedly until PRINT MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + until OUTPUT BIN appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + to toggle the setting between FACE DOWN (top exit) and FACE UP (straight-through exit).
4. Press SELECT.
   An asterisk appears beside the new setting.
5. Press ON LINE to save the setting and exit the menu.

Using the Driver

Windows 2000 PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI PCL Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. Click the Layout tab.
4. Click your choice for the default exit path from the Output bin drop-down list (Face-down = top exit; Face-up = straight-through exit).
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Windows 2000 PostScript Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI PS Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. Click Advanced.
4. Under Document Options, Printer Features, click your choice for the default exit path from the Output Bin drop-down list (Face-down = top exit; Face-up = straight-through exit).
5. Click OK twice and close the Printers dialog box.

Windows Me PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI PCL Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Layout tab.
4. Select your choice for the default exit path from the Output bin drop-down list (Face-down = top exit; Face-up = straight-through exit).
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Windows Me PostScript Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI PS Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab.
4. Click your choice for the default exit path from the Output bin drop-down list (Face-down = top exit; Face-up = straight-through exit).
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Windows 98/95 PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI PCL Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Layout tab.
4. Select your choice for the default exit path from the Output bin drop-down list (Face-down = top exit; Face-up = straight-through exit).
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Windows 98/95 PostScript Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI PS Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab.
4. Click your choice for the default exit path from the Output bin drop-down list (Face-down = top exit; Face-up = straight-through exit).
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI PCL Default dialog box appears.
3. Click the Layout tab.
4. Under Finisher, Output bin, click Stacker (Face-down) to select the top exit path, or Stacker (Face-up) to select the straight-through exit path.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver

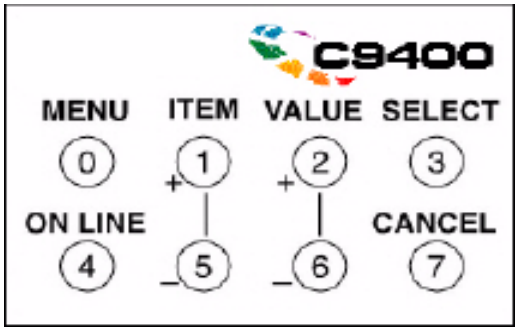
1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI PS Default dialog box appears.
3. Under Paper/Output, click Output Bin.
4. Under Change 'Output Bin' Setting, click Stacker [Face-down] to select the top exit path, or Stacker [Face-up] to select the straight-through exit path.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Macintosh

1. Double-click the printer icon to open the printer dialog.
2. Click File → Print Window.
3. Select Printer Specific Options 1 from the drop-down list.
4. Select the exit path you want (Face-down = top exit; Face-up = straight-through exit) under Output Bin.
5. Click Save Settings.

Changing Media Settings in the Menu

Changing Media Settings in the Menu: Tray 1



Transparencies

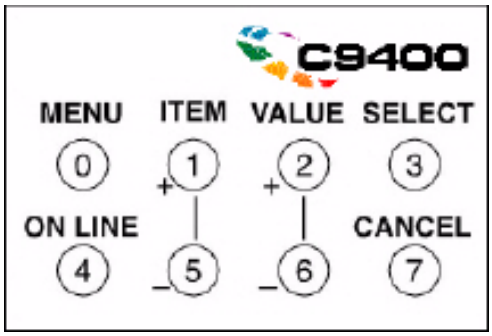
1. Press MENU repeatedly until MEDIA MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until TRAY1 MEDIATYPE appears on the display.

3. Press VALUE (+ or -) repeatedly until TRANSPARENCY appears on the second line of the display.
4. Press SELECT to engage Transparency.
   An asterisk appears next to TRANSPARENCY.
5. Press ON LINE to save the setting and exit the menu.

Other Print Media (Non-Transparencies)

1. Press MENU repeatedly until MEDIA MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until TRAY1 MEDIAWEIGHT appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE (+ or -) repeatedly until the desired setting appears on the second line of the display.
4. Press SELECT to engage the new setting.
   An asterisk appears next to the new setting.
5. Press ON LINE to save the setting and exit the menu.

Changing Media Settings in the Menu: Multi-Purpose (MP) Tray



Transparencies

First, set the Media Size:

1. Press MENU repeatedly until MEDIA MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until MP TRAY PAPERSIZE appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE (+ or -) repeatedly until TABLOID, TABLOID EXTRA, LETTER or A4 appears on the second line of the display.
4. Press SELECT to engage the new setting.
   An asterisk appears next to the new setting.

Next, set the Media Type

5. Press ITEM + repeatedly until MP TRAY MEDIATYPE appears on the display.

6. Press VALUE (+ or -) repeatedly until TRANSPARENCY appears on the second line of the display.
7. Press SELECT to engage TRANSPARENCY.
   An asterisk appears next to TRANSPARENCY.

Exit the Menu

8. Press ON LINE to save the settings and exit the menu.

Other Print Media (Non-Transparencies)

First, set the Media Size:

1. Press MENU repeatedly until MEDIA MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until MP TRAY PAPERSIZE appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE (+ or -) repeatedly until the size you wish to select appears on the second line of the display.
4. Press SELECT to engage the new setting.
   An asterisk appears next to the new setting.

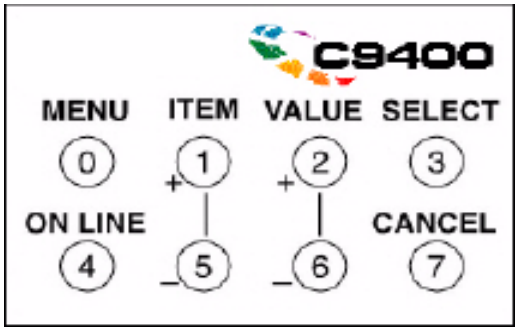
Next, set the Media Weight

5. Press ITEM + repeatedly until MP TRAY MEDIAWEIGHT appears on the display.
6. Press VALUE (+ or -) repeatedly until the desired setting appears on the second line of the display.
7. Press SELECT to engage the new setting.
   An asterisk appears next to the new setting.

Exit the Menu

8. Press ON LINE to save the settings and exit the menu.

Changing Media Weight in the Menu: Auxiliary Trays

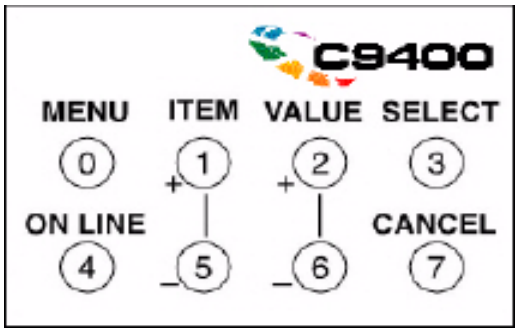


1. Press MENU repeatedly until MEDIA MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until TRAY2 MEDIAWEIGHT or TRAY3 MEDIAWEIGHT appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE (+ or -) repeatedly until the desired setting appears on the second line of

the display.

4. Press SELECT to engage the new setting.
   An asterisk appears next to the new setting.
5. Press ON LINE to save the setting and exit the menu.

Changing Media Weight in the Menu: High Capacity Feeder



1. Press MENU repeatedly until MEDIA MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until the appropriate tray number (e.g. TRAY5 MEDIAWEIGHT or TRAY4 MEDIAWEIGHT) appears on the display.

   Note: With just the High Capacity Feeder installed, the HCF tray numbers will be 2, 3 and 4. With both the High Capacity Feeder and one Auxiliary Tray installed, the HCF tray numbers will be 3, 4 and 5 (Auxiliary Tray will be 2).

3. Press VALUE (+ or -) repeatedly until the desired setting appears on the second line of the display.
4. Press SELECT to engage the new setting.
   An asterisk appears next to the new setting.
5. Press ON LINE to save the setting and exit the menu.

Printable Area

Printable Area: PCL

Letter

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	**Length**	**Width**	**Length**
Inches	8.5	11	8.17	10.67
Millimeters	215.9	279.4	207.4	270.9

Unit	Margins			
	Left	**Right**	**Top**	**Bottom**

Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

Legal 13"

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	8.5	13	8.17	12.67
Millimeters	215.9	330.2	207.4	321.7

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

Legal 13.5"

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	8.5	13.5	8.17	13.17
Millimeters	215.9	342.9	207.4	334.4

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

Legal 14"

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	8.5	14	8.17	13.67
Millimeters	215.9	355.6	207.4	347.1

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

Tabloid

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	11	17	10.67	16.67
Millimeters	279.4	431.8	270.9	423.3

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

Tabloid Extra

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	12	18	11.67	17.67
Millimeters	304.8	457.2	296.3	448.7

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

Executive

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	7.25	10.5	6.92	10.17

Millimeters	184.15	266.7	175.7	258.2

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

A3

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	11.7	16.5	11.36	16.20
Millimeters	297	420	288.5	411.6

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

A3 Nobi

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	12.91	17.83	12.58	117.50
Millimeters	328	453	319.5	444.5

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

A3Wide

	Sheet	Printable

Unit	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	12.6	17.72	12.27	17.38
Millimeters	320	450	311.6	441.5

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

A4

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	8.27	11.69	7.93	11.36
Millimeters	210	297	201.5	288.5

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

A5

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	5.83	8.27	5.49	7.93
Millimeters	148	210	139.5	201.5

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

A6

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	4.13	5.83	3.80	5.49
Millimeters	105	148	96.5	139.5

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

B4

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	10.12	14.33	9.78	14.00
Millimeters	257	364	248.5	355.5

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

B5

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	7.17	10.12	6.83	9.78
Millimeters	182	257	173.6	248.5

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

Monarch

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	3.875	7.5	3.54	7.17
Millimeters	98.4	190.5	90.0	182.0

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

Com-9

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	3.875	8.875	3.54	8.54
Millimeters	98.4	225.4	90.0	217.0

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

Com-10

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	4.125	9.5	3.79	9.17
Millimeters	104.8	241.3	96.4	232.8

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17

Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

DL

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	**Length**	**Width**	**Length**
Inches	4.33	8.66	4.00	8.33
Millimeters	110	220	101.5	211.5

Unit	Margins			
	Left	**Right**	**Top**	**Bottom**
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

C4

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	**Length**	**Width**	**Length**
Inches	9	12.8	8.67	12.47
Millimeters	229	324	220.1	316.7

Unit	Margins			
	Left	**Right**	**Top**	**Bottom**
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

C5

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	**Length**	**Width**	**Length**
Inches	6.4	9	6.07	8.67
Millimeters	162	229	154.1	220.1

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17
Millimeters	4.23	4.23	4.23	4.23

Printable Area: PostScript

Letter

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	8.5	11	8.187	10.667
Millimeters	215.9	279.4	207.941	270.933

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.157	0.157	0.167	0.167
Millimeters	3.979	3.979	4.233	4.233

Legal 13"

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	8.5	13	8.187	12.667
Millimeters	215.9	330.2	207.941	321.733

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.157	0.157	0.167	0.167
Millimeters	3.979	3.979	4.233	4.233

Legal 13.5"

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	8.5	13.5	8.187	13.173
Millimeters	215.9	342.9	207.941	334.603

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.157	0.157	0.167	0.167
Millimeters	3.979	3.979	4.233	4.233

Legal 14"

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	8.5	14	8.187	13.680
Millimeters	215.9	355.6	207.941	347.472

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.157	0.157	0.167	0.153
Millimeters	3.979	3.979	4.233	3.895

Tabloid

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	11	17	10.667	16.667
Millimeters	279.4	431.8	270.933	423.333

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.167	0.167	0.167	0.167
Millimeters	4.233	4.233	4.233	4.233

Tabloid Extra

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	12	18	11.68	17.68
Millimeters	304.8	457.2	296.672	449.072

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.16	0.16	0.167	0.153
Millimeters	4.064	4.064	4.233	3.895

Executive

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	7.25	10.5	6.933	10.187
Millimeters	184.15	266.7	176.107	258.741

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.160	0.157	0.167	0.147
Millimeters	4.064	3.979	4.233	3.725

A3

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	11.693	16.535	11.36	16.213
Millimeters	297	420	288.544	411.819

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.167	0.167	0.167	0.157
Millimeters	4.233	4.233	4.233	3.979

A3 Nobi

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	12.913	17.835	12.587	17.520
Millimeters	328	453	319.701	445.008

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.167	0.163	0.167	0.150
Millimeters	4.233	4.149	4.233	3.810

A3Wide

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	12.598	17.717	12.267	17.387
Millimeters	320	450	311.573	441.621

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.167	0.167	0.167	0.163
Millimeters	4.233	4.233	4.233	4.149

A4

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	8.268	11.693	7.947	11.36
Millimeters	210	297	201.845	288.544

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.163	0.16	0.167	0.167

Millimeters	4.149	4.064	4.233	4.233

A5

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	5.827	8.268	5.520	7.947
Millimeters	148	210	140.208	201.845

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.157	0.153	0.167	0.157
Millimeters	3.979	3.895	4.233	3.979

A6

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	4.134	5.827	3.813	5.520
Millimeters	105	148	96.9	139.5

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.163	0.16	0.167	0.143
Millimeters	4.149	4.064	4.233	3.641

B4

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	10.118	14.331	9.787	14.00
Millimeters	257	364	248.581	355.600

	Margins

Unit	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.167	0.167	0.167	0.167
Millimeters	4.233	4.233	4.233	4.233

B5

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	7.165	10.118	6.853	9.787
Millimeters	182	257	174.075	248.581

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.157	0.157	0.167	0.167
Millimeters	3.979	3.979	4.233	4.233

Monarch

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	3.875	7.5	3.547	7.173
Millimeters	98.425	190.5	90.085	182.203

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.167	0.163	0.167	0.160
Millimeters	4.233	4.149	4.233	4.064

Com-9

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	3.875	8.875	3.547	8.560
Millimeters	98.425	225.425	90.085	217.424

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.167	0.163	0.167	0.150
Millimeters	4.233	4.149	4.233	3.810

Com-10

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	4.125	9.5	3.813	9.173
Millimeters	104.775	241.3	96.859	233.003

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.157	0.157	0.167	0.160
Millimeters	3.979	3.979	4.233	4.064

DL

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length
Inches	4.33	8.66	4.00	8.347
Millimeters	109.982	219.964	101.6	212.005

Unit	Margins			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom
Inches	0.167	0.163	0.167	0.147
Millimeters	4.233	4.149	4.233	3.725

C4

Unit	Sheet		Printable	
	Width	Length	Width	Length

Inches	9.016	12.756	8.693	12.427
Millimeters	229	324	220.811	315.637

	Margins			
Unit	**Left**	**Right**	**Top**	**Bottom**
Inches	0.163	0.160	0.67	0.163
Millimeters	4.149	4.064	4.33	4.149

C5

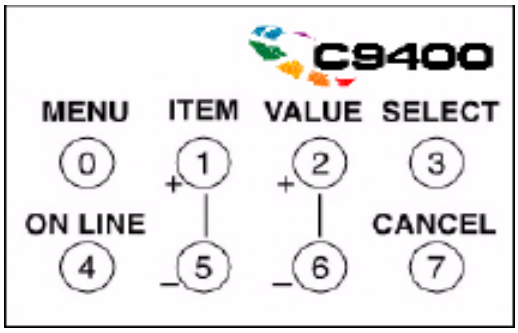
	Sheet		Printable	
Unit	**Width**	**Length**	**Width**	**Length**
Inches	6.378	9.016	6.053	8.693
Millimeters	162	229	153.755	220.811

	Margins			
Unit	**Left**	**Right**	**Top**	**Bottom**
Inches	0.163	0.163	0.167	0.157
Millimeters	4.149	4.149	4.233	3.979

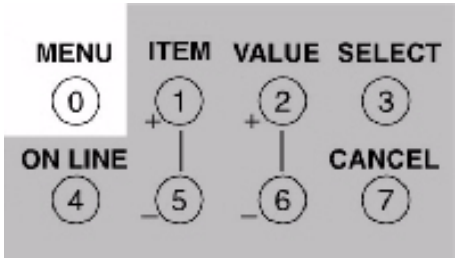
Control Panel Description & Walk-up Functions

Description

Control Panel Buttons



Menu Button

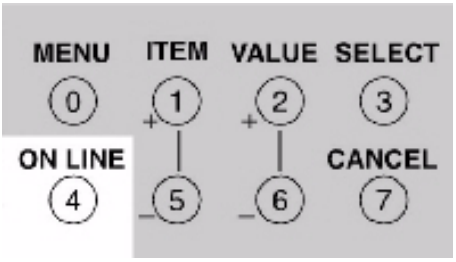


Printer On line or Off line
Press to enter the Menu mode.

Menu mode
Press to advance to the next Category in the Menu.
Press and hold for 2 seconds or longer to go back to the previous Category.

Password (PIN) Mode
Press to enter a zero in the password.

ON LINE Button



Printer On line
Press to take the printer off line.

Printer Off line
Press to put the printer on line.

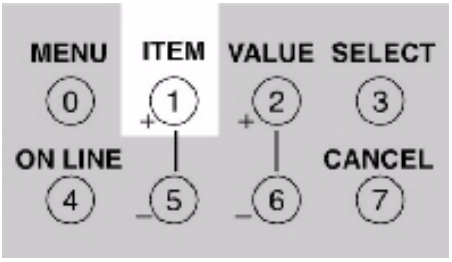
Menu Mode
Press to exit the Menu mode and go back on line.

Password (PIN) Mode
Press to enter the number 4 in the password.

Error Mode (Attention light blinking)
If the paper size requested by the print job is different from the paper specified as in the tray, press the ON LINE button to force the job to print despite the paper size error.

If you have selected manual print in the driver, press the ON LINE button to print the job after you load the print media in the MP Tray.

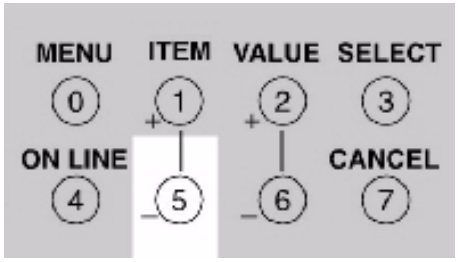
ITEM + Button



Menu Mode
Press to advance to the next Item in the Menu.
Press and hold to advance through the menu Items quickly.

Password (PIN) Mode
Press to enter the number 1 in the password.

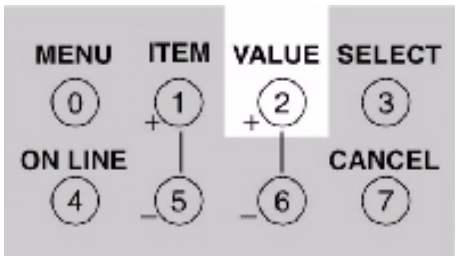
ITEM - Button



Menu Mode
Press to go back to the previous Item in the Menu.
Press and hold to advance backward through the menu Items quickly.

Password (PIN) Mode
Press to enter the number 5 in the password.

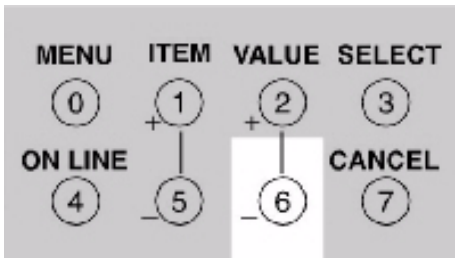
VALUE + Button



Menu Mode
Press to advance to the next Value for an Item in the Menu.
Press and hold to advance through the Values quickly.

Password (PIN) Mode
Press to enter the number 2 in the password.

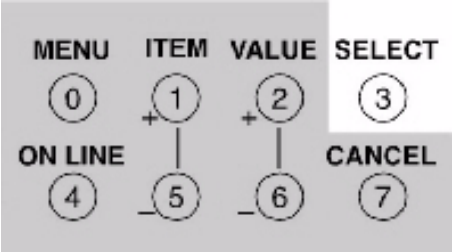
VALUE - Button



Menu Mode
Press to go back to the previous Value for an Item in the Menu.
Press and hold to advance backward through the Values quickly.

Password (PIN) Mode
Press to enter the number 6 in the password.

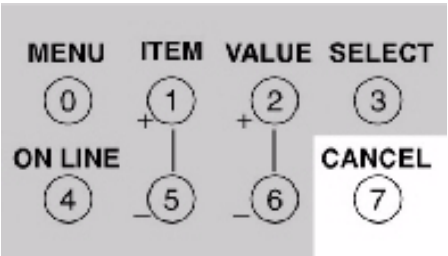
SELECT Button



Menu Mode
Press to engage a new value for an Item (an asterisk appears next to the new setting).
Press to initiate the action indicated on the display (e.g., print MenuMap).

Password (PIN) Mode
Press to enter the number 3 in the password.

CANCEL Button



Printer On line or Off Line
Press to delete a job being processed:

- If the job is currently printing, it is cancelled and deleted.
- If the job is still being received by the printer, it continues until all the data is received, then is deleted.

Note: If the printer is off line, it will remain off line after the job is deleted.

Menu Mode
Press to exit the Menu mode and place the printer back on line.

Password (PIN) Mode
Press to enter the number 7 in the password.

During Error Condition

CANCEL button is disabled.

Control Panel Lights

READY Light

On
The printer is on line.

Off
The printer is off line.

Blinking
The printer is receiving data.

ATTENTION Light

On
Warning: the printer needs attention, but can continue to operate. The display message indicates the nature of the problem: e.g. TONER LOW, CHANGE CYAN IMAGE DRUM, PAPER NEAR END, etc.

Off
Normal.

Blinking
Alarm: the printer needs attention immediately. The display message indicates the nature of the problem: e.g., PAPER JAM, CLOSE COVER, TONER EMPTY, INSTALL NEW IMAGE DRUM, TRAY1 EMPTY, STACKER FULL, MEDIA MISMATCH, etc.

Walk-up Functions

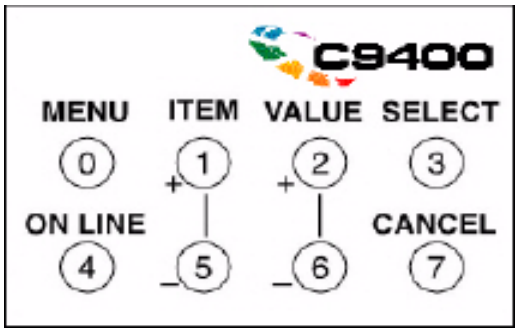
Printing a Demo Page

Notes

You can print either the standard demo page supplied with the printer or a custom demo page file you have created and stored on the printer's internal hard disk drive.

Models C9200n, C9200dxn and C9400dxn include the internal hard disk drive; model C9200 can be equipped with the hard drive option.

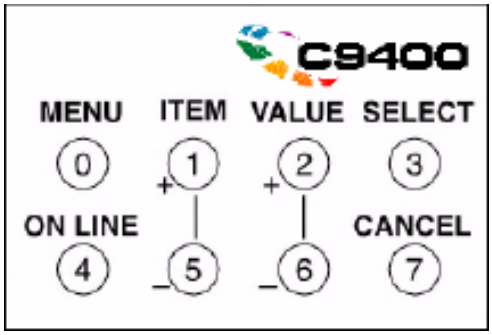
To print out a demo page:



1. Press MENU once or twice until INFORMATION MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM (+ or -) repeatedly until DEMO1 (the default demo page) or the file name you wish to print appears on the display.
3. Press SELECT.
   The demo page prints and the printer returns to the on-line state.

Printing a PCL Font List

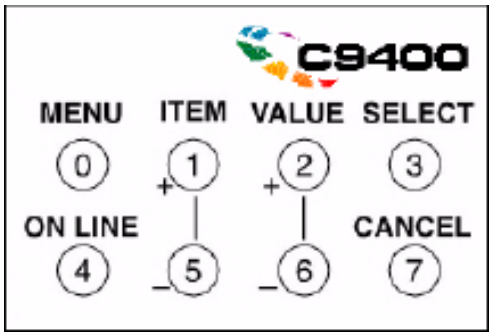
To print out a list of PCL Fonts, including Font ID information, Escape Sequences and print samples:



1. Press MENU once or twice until INFORMATION MENU appears on the display
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until PRINT PCL FONT appears on the display.
3. Press SELECT.
   The PCL Font List prints.

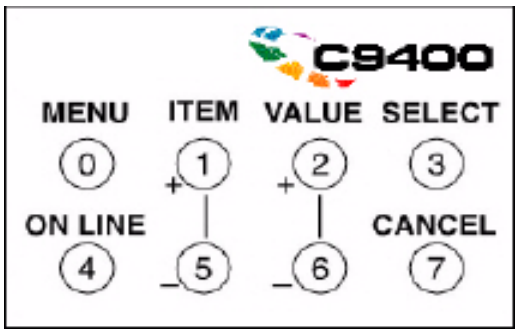
Printing a PostScript Typeface List

To print out a list of PostScript® Fonts with print samples:



1. Press MENU once or twice until INFORMATION MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until PRINT PS FONT appears on the display.
3. Press SELECT.
   The PostScript Typeface List prints.

Printing Out the MenuMap (List of Current Menu Settings)

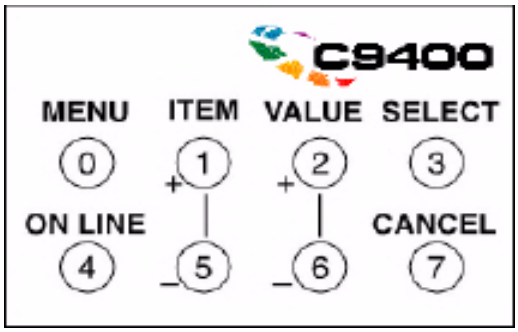


1. Press MENU repeatedly until INFORMATION MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until PRINT MENU MAP appears on the display.
3. Press SELECT.
   The MenuMap prints and the printer goes back on line.

Printing Confidential (Secure) Documents

Printing a Confidential Document

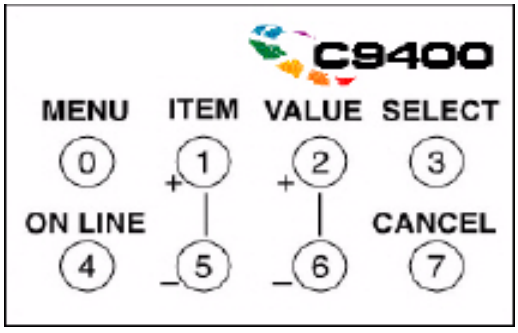
To print a confidential document which has been saved to the printer's internal hard disk drive (the hard disk drive is standard on all but model C9200):



1. Press MENU. PRINT JOBS MENU appears on the display.
2. Press SELECT and enter your personal ID number (PIN) using the control panel buttons. SELECT JOB ALL JOBS *appears on the display.*
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the name of the job you wish to print appears.
4. Press SELECT.
   The document prints and is deleted from the printer's hard drive. The printer goes back on line.

Deleting a Confidential Document *before* Printing It

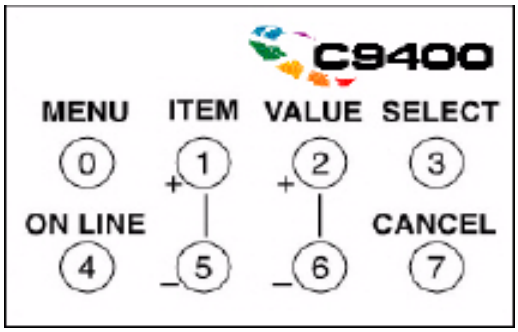
If you wish to deleted a confidential document from the printer's internal hard disk drive without printing it:



1. Press MENU.
   PRINT JOBS MENU *appears on the display.*
2. Press SELECT and enter your personal ID number (PIN) using the control panel buttons.
   SELECT JOB ALL JOBS *appears on the display.*
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the name of the job you wish to delete appears.
4. Press CANCEL
   DELETE THE JOB YES=SELECT/NO=CANCEL *appears on the display.*
5. To delete the job, press SELECT. Otherwise, press CANCEL.
   The printer goes back on line.

Printing the File List

To print out a list of files in the printer's memory:



1. Press MENU (repeatedly) until INFORMATION MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + (repeatedly) until PRINT FILE LIST appears on the display.
3. Press SELECT.
   The listing of files prints.

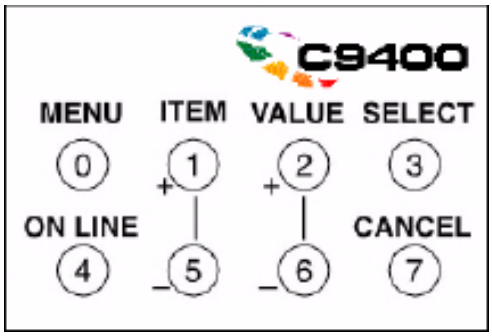
Setting the Color Balance

Setting the color balance ensures that the three primary colors your printer uses are properly balanced. If they are not balanced, one color may dominate, and printed pictures will not be as lifelike as they could be.

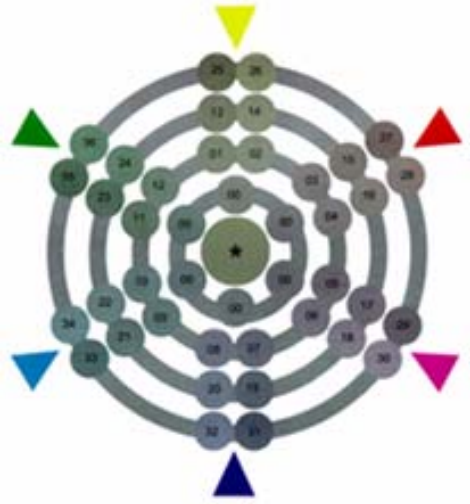
The color balance should be set

- when the printer is installed
- any time the print quality seems to have deteriorated
- when image drums are replaced
- if you switch to a significantly different print media (e.g., from white to a color media)
- if the printer is moved to a new location

To set the Color Balance:



1. Press MENU repeatedly until COLOR MENU displays.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until COLOR BALANCE ADJUST RESET TO DEFAULT displays.
3. Press SELECT. This restores the factory color balance settings, which form a baseline for the adjustment.
   The Color Balance test pattern prints:



4. Check the color of the center circle in the printout against the surrounding circles:
   - If the center circle matches the circles labeled 00, the color balance is okay and you're done. Press ON LINE (the printer goes back on line).
   - If the center circle does *not* match the circles labeled 00, determine which surrounding circle most closely matches the center circle and note its number.
5. Press VALUE (+ or -) until COLOR BALANCE ADJUST SELECT PATTERN # displays, where # represents the number of the circle determined in step 4.
6. Press SELECT.
   The new value is engaged and a new test pattern prints.
7. Check the pattern again and repeat steps 4 through 6 until the color of the center circle most closely matches the circles labeled 00.

> **Note:** The color balance process is subjective. It is unlikely that you will get an exact match of the center circle to the circles labeled 00. Repeat the color balance process until you feel you have a match, but no more than three times before pressing ON LINE to exit the color balance process.

8. Press ON LINE.
   The printer goes back on line.

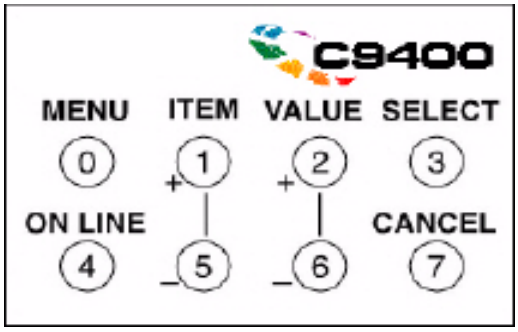
Setting Power Save Mode (Time to Print)

The Power Save Mode setting determines the amount of time the printer waits for another print job before going to the standby state.

Once the printer is in the standby state, it must warm up first before it prints a job or before you can access the printer's menu.

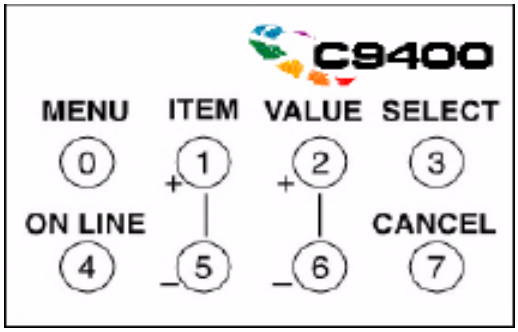
> **Note:** The default setting for the Power Save interval is 60 minutes.

Setting the Power Save Interval



1. Press MENU repeatedly until SYSTEM CONFIG MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM (+ or -) repeatedly until POWER SAVE DELAY TIME appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE (+ or -) repeatedly until the time interval (5, 15, 30, 60, or 240 minutes) you wish to select appears on the display.
4. Press SELECT to engage the new setting (an asterisk appears next to the new setting).
5. Press ON LINE to save the setting and exit the menu.

Disabling/Enabling Power Save



Note: The default setting for Power Save is ENABLED.

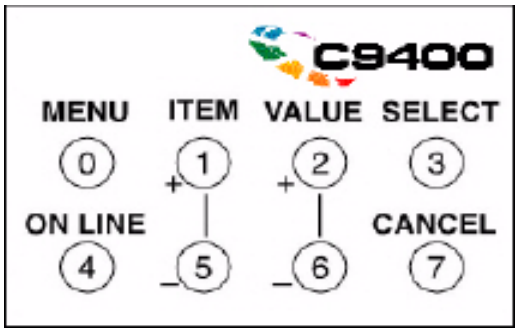
To disable the Power Save mode, or to re-enable it:

1. Press MENU repeatedly until MAINTENANCE MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM (+ or -) repeatedly until POWER SAVE appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + to toggle the setting between ENABLE and DISABLE.
4. Press SELECT to engage the new setting (an asterisk appears next to the new setting).
5. Press ON LINE to save the setting and exit the menu.

Setting a Specific Emulation

The printer is set at the factory to automatically detect the emulation of an incoming print job.

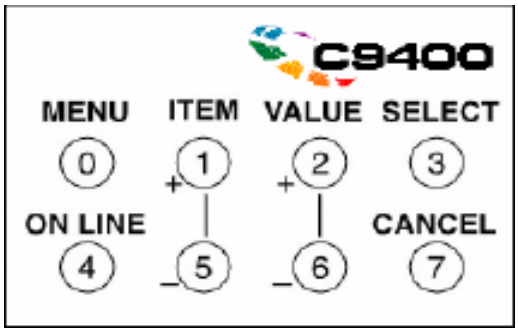
To change it to always be PCL® or Adobe® PostScript®:



1. Press MENU repeatedly until SYSTEM CONFIG MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until PERSONALITY appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the setting you wish to engage appears on the second line of the display.
4. Press SELECT.
   An Asterisk (*) appears next to the new setting.
5. Press ON LINE to save the setting and exit the menu.

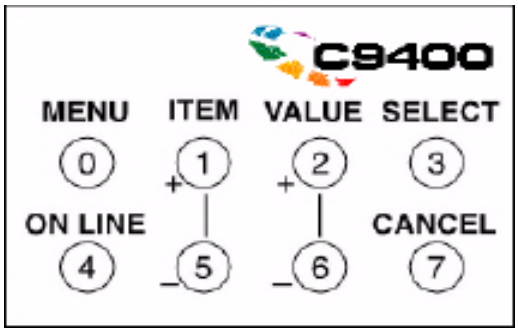
Turning the Duplex Unit On in the Menu

To turn duplex printing on in the printer menu:



1. Press MENU several times until PRINT MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + several times until DUPLEX appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + once to change the setting from OFF to ON.
4. Press SELECT to engage the new setting.
   An asterisk will appear at the end of the second line.
5. Press ON LINE to save the setting and exit the menu.

Control Panel Display Language

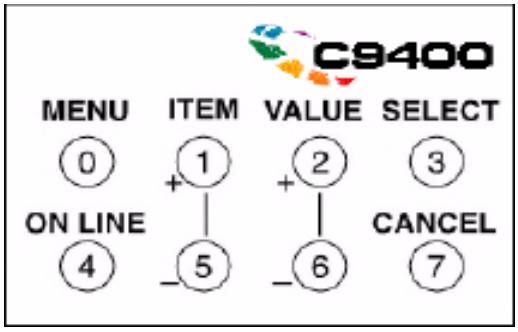


To change the control panel display language:

1. Press MENU repeatedly until SYSTEM CONFIG MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM (+ or -) repeatedly until LANGUAGE appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE (+ or -) repeatedly until the language you wish to engage appears on the display.
4. Press SELECT to engage that value (an asterisk appears beside the language).
5. Press ON LINE to save the setting and exit the menu.

Printer Menus

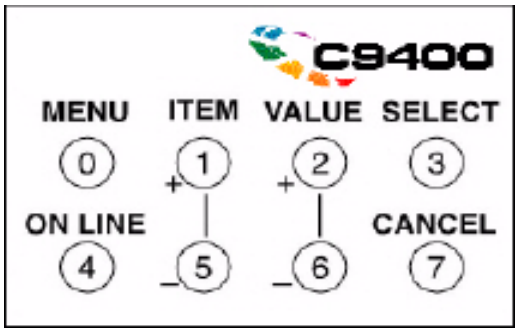
How to Use the Menu



To make changes in the printer's menu:

1. Press MENU repeatedly until the group in which you wish to make a change appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + or ITEM - repeatedly until the specific item you wish to change appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + or VALUE - repeatedly until the setting you wish to engage for that item appears on the display.
4. Press SELECT to engage the setting.
5. Press ON LINE to save the setting and exit the menu.

Resetting the Printer's Menu to the Factory Defaults



To reset the printer menu to the factory defaults:

1. Press MENU repeatedly until MAINTENANCE MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM (+ or -) repeatedly until EEPROM RESET EXECUTE appears on the display.
3. Press SELECT to reset the menu to the factory defaults. *The printer resets and returns*

to the on-line state.

Printer Menu Entries (in alphabetical sequence)

Color Menu

Used for

- Setting the Color Balance
- Optimizing quality when printing web pages
- Manually initiating the automatic Color Registration
- Setting the Color Registration manually.

Defaults are **red bold** print.

Item (see descriptions below)	**Values/Meaning**
COLOR BALANCE ADJUST	Prints Color Balance pattern, Type 1 or Type 2.
COLOR BALANCE ADJUST SELECT PATTERN	**RESET TO DEFAULT**, SELECT PATTERN 1 to 36
ADJUST REGISTRATION EXECUTE	Press to manually initiate automatic registration.
AUTO REGISTRATION	**ON**, OFF
The following items are used for manual registration and appear only if AUTO REGISTRATION is set to OFF:	
AUTO REGISTRATION PATTERN	Prints registration pattern.
AUTO REGISTRATION #1	**0**, +1, +2, +3, +4, +5, +6, +7, -7, -6, -5, -4, -3, -2, -1
AUTO REGISTRATION #2	**0**, +1, +2, +3, +4, +5, +6, +7, -7, -6, -5, -4, -3, -2, -1
AUTO REGISTRATION #3	**0**, +1, +2, +3, +4, +5, +6, +7, -7, -6, -5, -4, -3, -2, -1
AUTO REGISTRATION #4	**0**, +1, +2, +3, +4, +5, +6, +7, -7, -6, -5, -4, -3, -2, -1
AUTO REGISTRATION #5	**0**, +1, +2, +3, +4, +5, +6, +7, -7, -6, -5, -4, -3, -2, -1
AUTO REGISTRATION #6	**0**, +1, +2, +3, +4, +5, +6, +7, -7, -6, -5, -4, -3, -2, -1
AUTO REGISTRATION #7	**0**, +1, +2, +3, +4, +5, +6, +7, -7, -6, -5, -4, -3, -2, -1
AUTO REGISTRATION #8	**0**, +1, +2, +3, +4, +5, +6, +7, -7, -6, -5, -4, -3, -2, -1
AUTO REGISTRATION #9	**0**, +1, +2, +3, +4, +5, +6, +7, -7, -6, -5, -4, -3, -

	2, -1
PROCESS MODE (see explanation below)	TYPE1, **TYPE2**

Process Mode

If you are printing web pages and the printing is too light, ***temporarily*** change this setting to Type 1. For occasional use only.

Disk Maintenance Menu

The Disk Maintenance Menu can be used to initialize the printer's internal hard disk drive, to reassign the partition contents, or to reformat the partitions.

Unless you know what you are doing, please avoid this section of the Menu.

It is recommended that disk maintenance be done through the OKI Storage Device Manager software by the System Administrator, or by someone who is knowledgeable in this area.

Information Menu

The Information Menu provides printouts of information about the printer. It is also used to print the demo page(s).

When the message EXECUTE appears, press SELECT to print the information provided.

Defaults are **red bold** print.

Item (see descriptions below)	**Values**
PRINT MENU MAP EXECUTE	Not applicable.
PRINT FILE LIST EXECUTE	Not applicable.
PRINT PCL FONT EXECUTE	Not applicable.
PRINT PS FONT EXECUTE	Not applicable.
PRINT DEMO	**DEMO1** … DEMOn*
PRINT ERROR LOG EXECUTE	Not applicable.

* DEMO1 is built into the printer. Other Demos can be generated and saved in the Flash memory or on the printer's internal hard disk drive (standard on Models C9200n, C9200dxn and C9400dxn; optional on Model C9200).

Print Menu Map

Prints a listing of all the menu entries by group, including the values currently selected for each item in the group.

Print File List

Prints a listing of all the files stored

- in the Flash memory
- on each partition of the printer's internal hard disk drive (standard on Models C9200n, C9200dxn and C9400dxn; optional on Model C9200)

Print PCL Font

Prints a list of the PCL® fonts, including

- Resident Fonts
- Fonts Stored in the Flash Memory
- Fonts Stored on the Internal Hard Drive

The following information is supplied for each font:

- Font ID #
- Font Name
- Pitch/Point
- Escape Sequence
- Print Sample

Print PS Font

Prints a list of the resident PostScript® typefaces, each one printed in the typeface it represents.

Print Demo

Prints the demo page. If you have stored additional demo pages in the Flash memory or on the internal hard disk drive, you can choose which demo page you wish to print by pressing VALUE + to scan through the list.

Print Error Log

Prints a list of the printer's error messages, including

- Counter No.
- Error No.
- Error Message

Maintenance Menu

For performing printer maintenance functions.

You'll use this menu primarily to Enable/Disable the Power Save Mode or to reset the printer menu to the defaults.

Defaults are **red bold** print.

Item (see descriptions below)	Values/Meaning
EEPROM RESET	**EXECUTE**
POWER SAVE	**ENABLE**, DISABLE
PAPER BLACK SETTING	**0**, +1, +2, -2, -1
PAPER COLOR SETTING	**0**, +1, +2, -2, -1
TRANSPR BLACK SETTING	**0**, +1, +2, -2, -1
TRANSPR COLOR SETTING	**0**, +1, +2, -2, -1

EEPROM Reset

Use this to reset the printer's menu to the factory defaults.

Power Save

With Power Save engaged (the printer's default), the printer waits the preselected interval (60 minutes is the printer's default) before going into the standby state. This saves energy, but if the printer is in the power save state when you send a print job or try to go into the printer menu, you have to wait for the printer to warm up before you can proceed.

You can use the Power Save setting in the Maintenance Menu to disable the power save mode.

For information on changing the Power Save Interval, see "Setting the Power Save Interval."

Paper Black Setting

Used to compensate for deterioration in the black print quality resulting from temperature and humidity differences:

- Select -1 or -2 if light specks or streaks appear in the black printing.
- Select +1 or +2 if the black printing appears faded.

Paper Color Setting

Used to compensate for deterioration in color print quality resulting from temperature and humidity differences:

- Select -1 or -2 if light specks or streaks appear in the color printing.
- Select +1 or +2 if the color printing appears faded.

Transpr Black Setting

Used to compensate for deterioration in the black print quality on transparencies, resulting from temperature and humidity differences:

- Select -1 or -2 if light specks or streaks appear in the black printing.
- Select +1 or +2 if the black printing appears faded.

Transpr Color Setting

Used to compensate for deterioration in the color print quality on transparencies, resulting from temperature and humidity differences:

- Select -1 or -2 if light specks or streaks appear in the color printing.
- Select +1 or +2 if the color printing appears faded.

Media Menu

Sets media type/feed/size parameters.

Defaults are **red bold** print.

> **Note:** Paper size for Trays 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 is automatically detected.

Item (see descriptions below)	Values
TRAY1 MEDIATYPE	**PLAIN**, LETTERHEAD, TRANSPARENCY, BOND, RECYCLED, CARD STOCK, ROUGH
TRAY1 MEDIAWEIGHT	LIGHT, MEDIUM LIGHT, **MEDIUM**, MEDIUM HEAVY, HEAVY, ULTRA HEAVY
TRAY2 MEDIATYPE	**PLAIN**, LETTERHEAD, TRANSPARENCY, BOND, RECYCLED, CARD STOCK, ROUGH
TRAY2 MEDIAWEIGHT	LIGHT, MEDIUM LIGHT, **MEDIUM**, MEDIUM HEAVY, HEAVY, ULTRA HEAVY
TRAY3 MEDIATYPE	**PLAIN**, LETTERHEAD, TRANSPARENCY, BOND, RECYCLED, CARD STOCK, ROUGH
TRAY3 MEDIAWEIGHT	LIGHT, MEDIUM LIGHT, **MEDIUM**, MEDIUM HEAVY, HEAVY, ULTRA HEAVY
TRAY4 MEDIATYPE	**PLAIN**, LETTERHEAD, TRANSPARENCY, BOND, RECYCLED, CARD STOCK, ROUGH

TRAY4 MEDIAWEIGHT	LIGHT, MEDIUM LIGHT, **MEDIUM**, MEDIUM HEAVY, HEAVY, ULTRA HEAVY
TRAY5 MEDIATYPE	**PLAIN**, LETTERHEAD, TRANSPARENCY, BOND, RECYCLED, CARD STOCK, ROUGH
TRAY5 MEDIAWEIGHT	LIGHT, MEDIUM LIGHT, **MEDIUM**, MEDIUM HEAVY, HEAVY, ULTRA HEAVY
MP TRAY PAPERSIZE *LEF = Long Edge Feed	A3 Nobi, A3 Wide, A3, A4 SHORT EDGE, A4 LONG EDGE, A5, A6, B4, B5 SHORT EDGE, B5 LONG EDGE, LEGAL14, LEGAL13.5, LEGAL13, TABLOID EXTRA, TABLOID, LETTER SHORT EDGE, **LETTER LONG EDGE**, EXECUTIVE, CUSTOM, COM-9 ENVELOPE LEF*, COM-10 ENVELOPE LEF*, MONARCH ENVELOP LEF*, DL ENVELOPE LEF*, C5 ENVELOPE LEF*, C4 ENVELOPE LEF*
MP TRAY MEDIATYPE	**PLAIN**, LETTERHEAD, TRANSPARENCY, LABELS, BOND, RECYCLED, CARD STOCK, ROUGH
MP TRAY MEDIAWEIGHT	LIGHT, MEDIUM LIGHT, **MEDIUM**, MEDIUM HEAVY, HEAVY, ULTRA HEAVY
UNIT OF MEASURE	**INCH**, MILLIMETER
X DIMENSION	3.5 to 12.9 in increments of 0.1-INCH. Default = **8.5 INCH**.
Y DIMENSION	5.8 to 35.5 INCH in increments of 0.1-INCH. Default = **11 INCH**.

TRAY1 MEDIATYPE
(TRAY2 MEDIATYPE, TRAY3 MEDIATYPE, TRAY4 MEDIATYPE, TRAY5 MEDIATYPE)

Use only the TRAY1 Mediatype setting to change the default media to transparencies. Select TRANSPARENCY.

Note: Trays 2 through 5 only appear if the optional Auxiliary Trays and/or the optional High Capacity Feeder are installed on the printer. These trays can *not* be used with transparencies.

TRAY1 MEDIAWEIGHT
TRAY2 MEDIAWEIGHT
TRAY3 MEDIAWEIGHT
TRAY4 MEDIAWEIGHT
TRAY5 MEDIAWEIGHT

Use these settings to set the default to print media other than transparencies (e.g., labels, thick paper, etc.).

Note: Trays 2 through 5 only appear if the optional Auxiliary Trays and/or the optional High Capacity Feeder are installed on the printer.

MP TRAY PAPERSIZE

Use this to set the default paper size for the Multi-Purpose Tray.

MP TRAY MEDIATYPE

Use this to set the default media type for the Multi-Purpose Tray. *It is **very important** to select TRANSPARENCY when you are consistently using transparencies in this tray.*

MP TRAY MEDIAWEIGHT

Use this to set the default for the Multi-Purpose Tray to a print media other than transparencies (e.g., labels, thick paper, etc.).

UNIT OF MEASURE

Sets the default unit of measure for defining custom page sizes to inches or millimeters.

X DIMENSION

For setting the width of custom page sizes. For this dimension to work, the Multi-Purpose Tray size must be set to Custom.

Y DIMENSION

For setting the length of custom page sizes. For this dimension to work, the Multi-Purpose Tray size must be set to Custom.

Memory Menu

Sets parameters for the printer's memory.

Defaults are **red bold** print.

Item (see descriptions below)	Values
RECEIVE BUFF SIZE	**AUTO**, 0.5MB, 1MB, 2MB, 4MB, 8MB, 16MB, 32 MB
RESOURCE SAVE	AUTO, **OFF**, O.5MB, 1MB, 2MB, 4MB, 8MB, 16MB, 32MB
FLASH INITIALIZE	EXECUTE

PS FLASH RESIZE	**1MB**, 0.5MB, 1.5MB, 0MB

RECEIVE BUFF SIZE

Sets the size of the receive buffer. The Auto setting calculates the receive buffer size as a percentage of the installed printer memory.

RESOURCE SAVE

Sets the size of the font cache area.

FLASH INITIALIZE

***Caution!* This will erase whatever is presently in the printer's Flash memory.**

Initializes the printer's Flash memory. ***This function is normally set by the System Administrator.***

To perform a Flash Initialization:

1. Press MENU repeatedly until MEMORY MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + several times until FLASH INITIALIZE EXECUTE appears on the display.
3. Press SELECT.
   ARE YOU SURE?
   YES=SELECT/NO=CANCEL
   appears on the display.
4. Press SELECT.
   EXECUTE NOW?
   YES=SELECT/NO=CANCEL
   appears on the display.
5. Press SELECT.
   PLEASE POWER OFF
   SHUTDOWN COMPLETED
   appears on the display.
6. Shut the printer off, then turn it back on again.

PS FLASH RESIZE

***Caution!* This will erase whatever is presently in the printer's PostScript Flash memory.**

Changes the size of the printer's PostScript Flash memory area. ***This function is normally set by the System Administrator.***

To perform a PS Flash Resize:

1. Press MENU repeatedly until MEMORY MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + several times until
   PS FLASH RESIZE
   1.5MB *
   appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the new memory size you wish to use appears on the second line of the display.
4. Press SELECT.
   ARE YOU SURE?
   YES=SELECT/NO=CANCEL
   appears on the display.
5. Press SELECT.
   EXECUTE NOW?
   YES=SELECT/NO=CANCEL
   appears on the display.
6. Press SELECT.
   PLEASE POWER OFF
   SHUTDOWN COMPLETED
   appears on the display.
7. Shut the printer off, then turn it back on again.

Note:

During the initialization process,

FLASH MEMORY FORMAT

appears on the display while the Flash memory is being reconfigured to the new memory value.

Network Menu

Note: These items are normally set by the System Administrator.

- This menu appears only on printers equipped with a network print server.
- Sets the network parameters. English only.

For more information on the OkiLAN® 6200e print server, see the on-line OkiLAN 6200e User's Guide.

Defaults are **red bold** print.

Item (see descriptions below)	Values
TCP/IP	**ENABLE**, DISABLE
NETWARE	**ENABLE**, DISABLE

ETHERTALK	**ENABLE**, DISABLE
NETBEUI	**ENABLE**, DISABLE
FRAME TYPE	**AUTO**, 802.2, 802.3, ETHER-II, SNAP
DHCP/BOOTP	**ENABLE**, DISABLE
RARP	ENABLE, **DISABLE**
IP ADDRESS	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
SUBNET MASK	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
GATEWAY ADDRESS	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
INITIALIZE	ON, **OFF**
PRINT SETTINGS	ON,**OFF**

TCP/IP

Enables/Disables TCP/IP.

NETWARE

Enables/Disables NETWARE®.

ETHERTALK

Enables/Disables EtherTalk®.

NETBEUI

Enables/Disables NETBEUI.

FRAME TYPE

Sets the frame type.

DHCP/BOOTP

Specifies whether or not DHCP/BOOTP automatically resets.

RARP

Specifies whether or not RARP automatically resets.

IP ADDRESS

Sets IP address (see Changing the IP address).

SUBNET MASK

Sets subnet mask (see Changing the Subnet Mask).

GATEWAY ADDRESS

Sets gateway address (see Changing the Gateway Address).

INITIALIZE

Change the setting to ON if you wish the network to initialize whenever the menu is exited.

PRINT SETTINGS

Change the setting to ON if you wish to print a MenuMap including the results of a self-diagnosis and a listing of the network settings. The MenuMap will print automatically when you exit the menu mode.

Parallel Menu

Sets parameters for the parallel interface.

Defaults are **red bold** print.

Item (see descriptions below)	Values
PARALLEL	**ENABLE**, DISABLE
BI-DIRECTION	**ENABLE**, DISABLE
ECP	**ENABLE**, DISABLE
ACK WIDTH	**NARROW**, MEDIUM, WIDE
ACK/BUSY TIMING	**ACK IN BUSY**, ACK WHILE BUSY
I-PRIME	3 MICRO SEC, 50 MICRO SEC, **DISABLE**

PARALLEL

Enables/disables the printer's parallel port.

BI-DIRECTION

Enables/disables bi-directional communication between the printer and the computer through the parallel port.

ECP

Enables/disables the ECP mode.

ACK WIDTH

Sets the ACK width for compatible reception:

- Narrow = 0.5 microseconds
- Medium = 1 microsecond
- Wide = 3 microseconds

ACK/BUSY TIMING

Sets the output order for the ACK signal and the busy signal during compatible reception.

I-PRIME

Sets or disables the I-Prime signal.

PCL Emulation Menu

Sets parameters for the PCL® emulation.

Defaults are **red bold** print.

Item (see descriptions below)	**Values**
FONT SOURCE	**RESIDENT**, DIMM0, DIMM1, DOWNLOADED

FONT No.	I000, **C001**, S001
FONT PITCH	0.44 to 99.99 CPI IN 0.01 CPI increments. Default = **10.00 CPI**
FONT HEIGHT	4.00 to 999.75 point in 0.25-poin increments. Default = **12.00 points**.
SYMBOL SET	WIN3.1J, **PC-8**, PC-8 Dan/Nor, PC-8 TK, PC-775, PC-850, PC-852, PC-855, PC-857 TK, PC-858, PC-866, PC-869, PC-1004, Pi Font, Plska Mazvia, PS Math, PS Text, Roman-8, Roman-9, Roman Ext, Serbo Croat1, Serbo Croat2, Spanish, Ukrainian, VN Int'l, VN Math, VN US, Win 3.0, Win 3.1 Blt, Win 3.1 Cyr, Win 3.1 Grk, Win 3.1 Heb, Win 3.1 L1, Win 3.1 L2, Win 3.1 L5, Wingdings, Dingbats MS, Symbol, OCR-A, OCR-B, HP ZIP, USPSFIM, USPSSTP, ISO Swedish1, ISO Swedish2, ISO Swedish3, ISO-2 IRV, ISO-4 UK, ISO-6 ASC, ISO-10 S/F, ISO-11 Swe, ISO-14 JASC, ISO-15 Ita, ISO-16 Por, ISO-17 Spa, ISO-21 Ger, ISO-25 Fre, ISO-57 Chi, ISO-60 Nor, ISO-61 Nor, ISO-69 Fre, ISO-84 Por, ISO-85 Spa, Kamenicky, Legal, Math-8, MC Text, MS Publish, PC Ext D/N, PC Ext US, PC Set1, PC Set2 D/N, PC Set2 US, USPSZIP, Bulgarian, CWI Hung, DeskTop, German, Greek-437, Greek-437 Cy, Greek-928, Hebrew NC, Hebrew OC, IBM-437, IBM-850, IBM-860, IBM-863, IBM-865, ISO Dutch, ISO L1, ISO L2, ISO L5, ISO L6, ISO L9
A4 PRINT WIDTH	**78 COLUMN**, 80 COLUMN
WHITE PAGE SKIP	**OFF**, ON
CR FUNCTION	**CR**, CR + LF
LF FUNCTION	**LF**, LF + CR
PRINT MARGIN	**NORMAL**, 1/5 INCH, 1/6 INCH
TRUE BLACK	**OFF**, ON

FONT SOURCE

Selects location of font used. Downloaded only appears if fonts have been downloaded to the printer.

FONT No.

The prefix denotes the font source:

- I = internal (resident font); I000 = Courier.
- C = Card Font (font stored in printer's Flash memory).
- S = downloaded soft font (font stored on the printer's internal hard disk drive).

FONT PITCH

Sets the font width in characters per inch (cpi). Applies only to fixed fonts (does not apply to proportional fonts).

FONT HEIGHT

Sets the font height in points. Applies only to proportional, scalable fonts (does not apply to fixed fonts).

SYMBOL SET

Selects the character symbol set to be used.

A4 PRINT WIDTH

If you are printing a letter size document on an A4 size sheet, select 80 column. This condenses the print to fit on the slightly narrower A4 sheet, without changing the line breaks.

WHITE PAGE SKIP

Change this setting to ON if you do not wish to print blank pages.

CR FUNCTION

Determines what happens when the carriage return code is received in the PCL emulation:

- CR = Carriage Return
- CR + LF = Carriage Return and Line Feed

LF FUNCTION

Determines what happens when the line feed code is received in the PCL emulation:

- LF = Line Feed
- LF + CR = Line Feed and Carriage Return

PRINT MARGIN

Sets the width of the non-printed margins.

TRUE BLACK

Sets how black will be printed:

- OFF = Composite Black (CMYK)
- ON = Pure Black (Black toner only)

Composite black text should be used for the best results when printing photographs. Text in such documents may appear slightly muddy.

Change the setting to ON to get the best results when printing a combination of text and graphics.

Print Menu

Sets the print parameters.

Defaults are **red bold** print.

Item (see descriptions below)	Values
COPIES	**1** to 999
DUPLEX	ON, **OFF**
BINDING	**LONG EDGE**, SHORT EDGE (Appears only when DUPLEX item is set to ON.)
JOB OFFSET	**ON**, OFF
PAPER FEED	**TRAY1**, TRAY2, TRAY3, TRAY4, TRAY%, MPTRAY (TRAY2 through TRAY5 appear only when the optional Auxiliary Trays and/or the High Capacity Feeder are installed.)
OUTPUT BIN	**FACE-DOWN**, FACE-UP
AUTO TRAY SWITCH	**ON**, OFF
PAPER SIZE CHECK	**ENABLE**, DISABLE
PRIORITY TRAY	**NONE**, MPTRAY
RESOLUTION	Model C9200: 1200DPI, **600DPI** Model C9400: 1200DPI, **FAST1200DPI**, 600DPI
MONO-PRINT SPEED	**AUTO**, COLOR SPEED, NORMAL SPEED
ORIENTATION	**PORTRAIT**, LANDSCAPE
LINE PER PAGE	5 to 128 LINES in increments of 1 LINE. Default = **60 LINES** (based on letter size paper). PCL only.
EDIT SIZE	**CASSETTE SIZE**, LETTER SHORT EDGE, LETTER LONG EDGE, EXECUTIVE, LEGAL14, LEGAL13.5, LEGAL13, TABLOID EXTRA, TABLOID, A3 NOBI, A3 WIDE, A3, A4 SHORT EDGE, A4 LONG EDGE, A5, A6, B4, B5 SHORT EDGE, B5 LONG EDGE, CUSTOM, COM-9 ENVELOPE, COM-10 ENVELOPE, MONARCH ENVELOPE, DL ENVELOPE, C5 ENVELOPE, C4 ENVELOPE

COPIES

Sets the default number of copies to be printed.

DUPLEX

Change to ON if you will always be using two-sided (duplex) printing for multi-page print jobs.

BINDING

Sets the default binding edge for duplex printing.

Example

For an 8½ x 11-inch document:

Long Edge = document bound on the 11-inch edge

Short Edge = document bound on the 8½-inch edge.

Note: Duplex settings you make in the printer drivers will override this menu setting.

JOB OFFSET

Applies to the top (face-down) exit only. This causes each consecutive document to be offset left-right by approximately ¾-inch to make it easier to separate multiple copies of a document.

All media sizes *except* Tabloid Extra and A3 Nobi will be offset.

Change to OFF if you do not want documents to be offset.

PAPER FEED

Selects the default feed source for print media.

Note: Paper feed settings you make in the printer drivers will override this menu setting.

OUTPUT BIN

Selects whether the print job will go to the top exit (FACE-DOWN) or the straight-through exit (FACE-UP).

AUTO TRAY SWITCH

Change this to OFF if you do not want the printer to automatically switch to another feed tray with the same size and type of media when the present tray runs out of media.

PAPER SIZE CHECK

Normally the printer will check to see that the media size being specified by the print job matches what is in the feed tray and signals a mismatch with a warning message on the display.

If you do not wish the printer to provide such warning messages, change this setting to Disable.

PRIORITY TRAY

Change this setting to MP TRAY if you wish the printer to look for media in the Multi-Purpose Tray first, before using Tray 1.

RESOLUTION

Sets the default print resolution.

Note: Resolution settings you make in the printer drivers will override this menu setting.

MONO-PRINT SPEED

Sets the print speed for printing monochrome documents:

- AUTO (default) = Switches to mono print speed if more than three pages in a row are detected as monochrome printing.
- COLOR = Sets the printer to the color print speed. Use this setting if you will be printing documents which have a few monochrome pages interspersed with color pages.
- NORMAL = Sets the printer to the monochrome print speed . Use this setting to increase the print speed if you are printing a multi-page monochrome document.

ORIENTATION

Sets the default print orientation.

LINE PER PAGE

PCL emulation only. Sets the number of lines printed per page. Change this setting if you find your document pages running over to the next page by a few lines.

EDIT SIZE

Change the setting only if you are printing a document on print media which is a different size from the original. For example, if you are printing an 8½ x 14-inch legal document on letter size paper, change the EDIT SIZE setting to Legal14, then load letter size paper in the tray.

System Adjust Menu

Defaults are **red bold** print.

Item (see descriptions below)	Values
X ADJUST	**0.00 MILLIMETER**, +0.25 to +2.00 MILLIMETER and –0.25 to –2.00 MILLIMETER, in 0.25 mm increments
Y ADJUST	**0.00 MILLIMETER**, +0.25 to +2.00 MILLIMETER and –0.25 to –2.00 MILLIMETER, in 0.25 mm increments
DUPLEX X ADJUST	**0.00 MILLIMETER**, +0.25 to +2.00 MILLIMETER and –0.25 to –2.00 MILLIMETER, in 0.25 mm increments (Appears only if duplex unit is installed.)
DUPLEX Y ADJUST	**0.00 MILLIMETER**, +0.25 to +2.00 MILLIMETER and –0.25 to –2.00 MILLIMETER, in 0.25 MM increments (Appears only if duplex unit is installed.)
TRAY1 NOBI PAPER	A3 NOBI, A3 WIDE, **TABLOID EXTRA**
TRAY1 LEGAL 14 PAPER	**LEGAL 14**, LEGAL 13.5
TRAY2 NOBI PAPER	A3 NOBI, A3 WIDE, **TABLOID EXTRA** (Appears only if the optional Auxiliary Tray or High Capacity Feeder is installed.)
TRAY2 LEGAL 14 PAPER	**LEGAL 14**, LEGAL 13.5 (Appears only if the optional Auxiliary Tray or High Capacity Feeder is installed.)
TRAY3 NOBI PAPER	A3 NOBI, A3 WIDE, **TABLOID EXTRA** (Appears only if a second optional Auxiliary Tray or the optional High Capacity Feeder is installed.)
TRAY3 LEGAL 14 PAPER	**LEGAL 14**, LEGAL 13.5 (Appears only if a second optional Auxiliary Tray or the optional High Capacity Feeder is installed.)
TRAY4 NOBI PAPER	A3 NOBI, A3 WIDE, **TABLOID EXTRA** (Appears only if the optional High Capacity Feeder is installed.)
TRAY4 LEGAL 14 PAPER	**LEGAL 14**, LEGAL 13.5 (Appears only if the optional High Capacity Feeder is installed.)
TRAY5 NOBI PAPER	A3 NOBI, A3 WIDE, **TABLOID EXTRA** (Appears only if one

	optional Auxiliary Tray and the High Capacity Feeder are both installed.)
TRAY5 LEGAL 14 PAPER	**LEGAL 14**, LEGAL 13.5 (Appears only if one optional Auxiliary Tray and the High Capacity Feeder are both installed.)
PCL TRAY2 ID#	1 to 59. Default = **5**. (Appears only if the optional Auxiliary Tray is installed.)
PCL TRAY3 ID#	1 to 59. Default = **20**. (Appears only if a second optional Auxiliary Tray or the optional High Capacity Feeder is installed.)
PCL TRAY4 ID#	1 to 59. Default = **21**. (Appears only if the optional High Capacity Feeder is installed.)
PCL TRAY5 ID#	1 to 59. Default = **22**. (Appears only if the optional High Capacity Feeder is installed.)
PCL MP TRAY ID#	1 to 59. Default = **4**.
HEX DUMP	**EXECUTE**

X ADJUST

Shifts the print position of the entire page's image to the right or left relative to the left-hand margin. Settable in 0.25 millimeter increments.

Note: Any parts of the print image that go beyond the printable area as a result of this adjustment are clipped.

Y ADJUST

Shifts the print position of the entire page's image up or down relative to the top margin. Settable in 0.25 millimeter increments.

Notes

Any parts of the print image that go beyond the printable area as a result of this adjustment are clipped.

Negative values are invalid in the PostScript mode.

DUPLEX X ADJUST

Applies when using duplex printing (printing on both sides).

Shifts the print position of the entire page's image to the right or left relative to the left-hand margin. Settable in 0.25 millimeter increments.

Notes

Any parts of the print image that go beyond the printable area as a result of this adjustment are clipped.

Negative values are invalid in the PostScript mode.

DUPLEX Y ADJUST

Applies when using duplex printing (printing on both sides).

Shifts the print position of the entire page's image up or down relative to the top margin. Settable in 0.25 millimeter increments.

Note: Any parts of the print image that go beyond the printable area as a result of this adjustment are clipped.

TRAY1 NOBI PAPER
TRAY2 NOBI PAPER
TRAY3 NOBI PAPER
TRAY4 NOBI PAPER
TRAY5 NOBI PAPER

If you are using A3 NOBI, A3 WIDE, or TABLOID EXTRA paper, use this setting to tell the printer which of the three sizes is loaded in the designated tray.

TRAY1 LEGAL 14 PAPER
TRAY2 LEGAL 14 PAPER
TRAY3 LEGAL 14 PAPER
TRAY4 LEGAL 14 PAPER
TRAY5 LEGAL 14 PAPER

Sets the length of the legal paper in the designated tray. Change this to LEGAL 13.5 if that is the standard legal size in your country.

PCL TRAY2 ID#

PCL emulation only.

For use by programmers. When setting the paper feed destination command (ESC&l#H), the number set here represents Tray 2.

PCL TRAY3 ID#

PCL® emulation only.

For use by programmers. When setting the paper feed destination command (ESC&l#H), the number set here represents Tray 3.

PCL TRAY4 ID#

PCL emulation only.

For use by programmers. When setting the paper feed destination command (ESC&l#H), the number set here represents Tray 4.

PCL TRAY5 ID#

PCL emulation only.

For use by programmers. When setting the paper feed destination command (ESC&l#H), the number set here represents Tray 5.

PCL MP TRAY ID#

PCL emulation only.

For use by programmers. When setting the paper feed destination command (ESC&l#H), the number set here represents the multi-Purpose Tray.

HEX DUMP

Go to this item in the menu and press the SELECT button to print the data received by the printer in hexadecimal code.

To return to normal printing, turn the printer off, then on again.

System Configuration Menu

Sets system parameters.

Defaults are **red bold** print.

Item (see descriptions below)	Values
POWER SAVE DELAY TIME	5 MIN, 15 MIN, 30 MIN, **60 MIN**, 240 MIN
PERSONALITY	**AUTO EMULATION**, PCL, Adobe PostScript
CONTROL-T	**ENABLE**, DISABLE (PostScript only)
CLEARABLE WARNING	**ON**, JOB (PCL only)
AUTO CONTINUE	ON, **OFF**

MANUAL TIMEOUT	**60 SEC**, 30 SEC, OFF
WAIT TIMEOUT	OFF, 5 to 300 SEC in increments of 1 SEC. Default = **40 SEC**.
LOW TONER	**CONTINUE**, STOP
JAM RECOVERY	**ON**, OFF
ERROR REPORT	ON, **OFF**
LANGUAGE	**ENGLISH**, GERMAN, FRENCH, ITALIAN, SPANISH, SWEDISH, NORWEGIAN, DANISH, DUTCH, TURKISH, PORTUGUESE

POWER SAVE DELAY TIME

Sets the interval before the printer automatically enters the power save mode. Power Save can also be disabled.

PERSONALITY

Sets the printer emulation.

CONTROL-T

PostScript® mode only.

Normally the printer is set to send a reply to CONTROL-T from the parallel port immediately. To prevent this, change the setting to DISABLE.

CLEARABLE WARNING

PCL® emulation only.

Change the setting to JOB if you wish error messages which appear on the display to remain there until the next print job comes in.

AUTO CONTINUE

PCL emulation only.

Determines whether or not the printer will automatically recover after a memory overflow or print overrun.

MANUAL TIMEOUT

PostScript mode only.

Sets the time the printer will wait for paper to be installed after it displays a request for paper, before it cancels the print job.

WAIT TIMEOUT

Sets the length of time the printer waits for additional data to be received.

PCL Mode

If the amount of time selected passes before the printer receives additional data, the printer will print any data it has in the buffer and reset.

PostScript Mode

If the amount of time selected passes before the printer receives additional data, the printer will cancel the print job immediately and reset without any further printing.

LOW TONER

Normally when this message is displayed, the printer will remain on line and continue printing until it runs out of toner.

Change the setting to STOP if you wish the printer to stop printing and go off line when this message displays.

JAM RECOVERY

Determines what happens to the print job after a paper exit jam is cleared.

Normally, the printer will automatically resume the print job.

If you change the setting to OFF, the printer won't reprint the jammed pages.

ERROR REPORT

If you wish the printer to automatically generate and print an error report when an internal error occurs, change the setting to ON.

LANGUAGE

Sets the printer's display language.

Usage Menu

Provides information on counts for various printer parameters.

Item (see descriptions below)	Values
TOTAL PAGE COUNT	Nnnnnn
TRAY1 PAGE COUNT	Nnnnnn
TRAY2 PAGE COUNT	Nnnnnn (Appears only if the optional Auxiliary Tray or the High Capacity Feeder is installed.)
TRAY3 PAGE COUNT	Nnnnnn (Appears only if a second optional Auxiliary Tray or the High Capacity Feeder is installed.)
TRAY4 PAGE COUNT	Nnnnnn (Appears only if the High Capacity Feeder is installed.)
TRAY5 PAGE COUNT	Nnnnnn (Appears only if one optional Auxiliary Tray and the High Capacity Feeder are installed.)
MP TRAY PAGE COUNT	Nnnnnn
BLACK DRUM USAGE	Nnnnnn IMAGES
CYAN DRUM USAGE	Nnnnnn IMAGES
MAGENTA DRUM USAGE	Nnnnnn IMAGES
YELLOW DRUM USAGE	Nnnnnn IMAGES
BELT USAGE	Nnnnnn PRINTS
FUSER USAGE	Nnnnnn PRINTS
BLACK TONER	15k = XXX% 7.5k = YYY%
CYAN TONER	15k = XXX% 7.5k = YYY%
MAGENTA TONER	15k = XXX% 7.5k = YYY%
YELLOW TONER	15k = XXX% 7.5k = YYY%

TOTAL PAGE COUNT

Displays the total number of pages printed, based on the number of pages that have passed the fuser.

Note: Pages that have jammed after leaving the feed tray are not counted. In Duplex Printing, one page is counted as two. The total page count does not necessarily match the number of pages fed from each tray.

TRAY1 PAGE COUNT
TRAY2 PAGE COUNT
TRAY3 PAGE COUNT
TRAY4 PAGE COUNT
TRAY5 PAGE COUNT

Displays the total number of pages printed from the designated tray.

MP TRAY PAGE COUNT

Displays the total number of pages printed from the Multi-Purpose Tray.

BLACK DRUM USAGE

Displays the usage of the black drum, based on the number of drum rotations.

CYAN DRUM USAGE

Displays the usage of the cyan drum, based on the number of drum rotations.

MAGENTA DRUM USAGE

Displays the usage of the magenta drum, based on the number of drum rotations.

YELLOW DRUM USAGE

Displays the usage of the yellow drum, based on the number of drum rotations.

BELT USAGE

Displays the usage of the belt, based on the number of belt rotations.

FUSER USAGE

Displays the usage of the fuser, based on the number of pages that have passed through the fuser.

BLACK TONER

Displays the approximate amount of toner left in the black toner cartridge.

Note: Both values appear no matter which toner is installed.

CYAN TONER

Displays the approximate amount of toner left in the cyan toner cartridge.

Note: Both values appear no matter which toner is installed.

MAGENTA TONER

Displays the approximate amount of toner left in the magenta toner cartridge.

Note: Both values appear no matter which toner is installed.

YELLOW TONER

Displays the approximate amount of toner left in the yellow toner cartridge.

Note: Both values appear no matter which toner is installed.

USB Menu

Sets parameters for the USB interface.
For instructions on changing USB Menu settings, see "Changing USB Port Menu Settings."
Defaults are **red bold** print.

Item (see descriptions below)	Values
USB	**ENABLE**, DISABLE
SOFT RESET	ENABLE, **DISABLE**

USB

Enables/Disables the printer's USB interface.

SOFT RESET

Enables/Disables the printer's soft reset command.

Using Print Features

(see also Proof & Print, Secure Documents and Overlays)

Macintosh

Collating: Macintosh

General Information

Collated printing allows you to print multiple copies of a document as a series of individual documents, as opposed to printing multiple copies of each page of the document then manually collating the pages into documents.

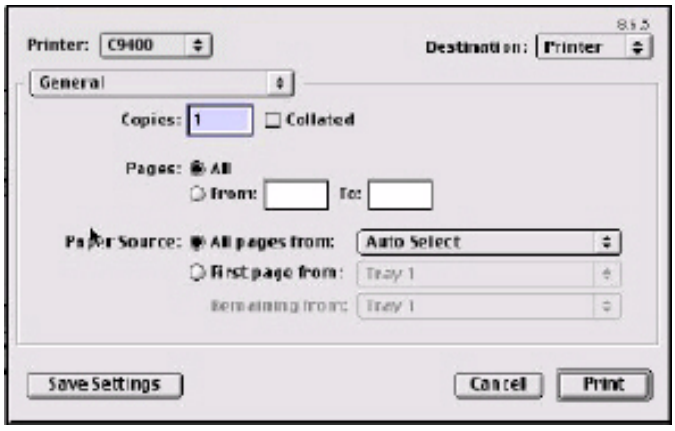
If your software application has a collated print option, use the software to select collated printing rather than the printer driver. See your software application documentation for information on how to do this.

If your software application does not have a collated printing option, you'll need to select it using the printer driver.

Using Collating: Macintosh

To print a job using collating:

1. Double click the printer icon to open the printer dialog.
2. Click File → Print Window.



3. Enter the required number of Copies and click Collated to select it.
4. Click Print.

Custom Page Sizes: Macintosh

General Information

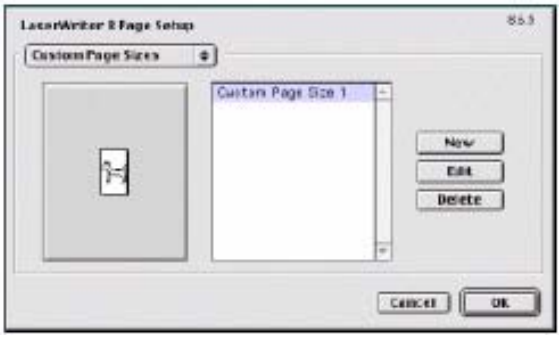
To print custom page sizes, you must:

- Use the Multi-Purpose Tray
- Use the Straight-Through Exit path
- Use a Custom Page Size defined in the printer driver:
  - Width range 3 to 12.9 inches (76 to 328 mm)
  - Length range 5 to 18 inches (127 to 457 mm)

Creating & Saving a Custom Page Size: Macintosh

Note: You can create and store virtually as many Custom Page Sizes as you want.

1. Double click the printer icon.
2. Click File → Page Setup.
3. Select Custom Page Sizes from the drop-down list.



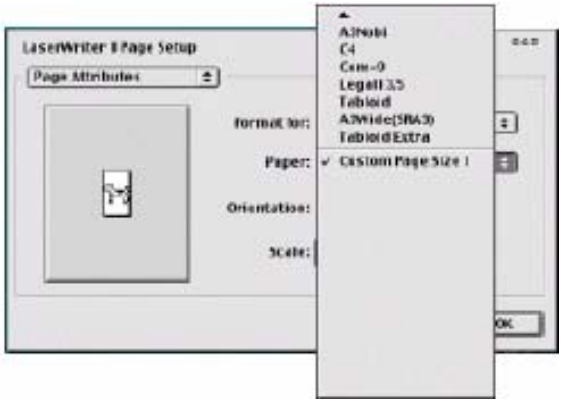
4. Click New.

5. Select the units of measure you wish to use in the Units drop-down list.
6. Enter the custom page measurements under Paper Size.
7. Enter the Margins you wish to use.

8. Enter a name for the custom page under Custom Page Name, then click OK.
9. Click OK.

Printing Using a Custom Page Size: Macintosh

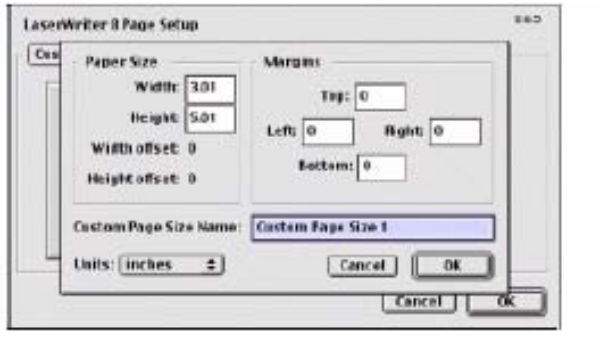
1. Double click the printer icon to open the printer dialog.
2. Click File → Page Setup.
3. Select Page Attributes from the drop-down list.
4. Select the custom page name from the drop-down list under Paper and click OK.



5. Print the document.

Modifying a Custom Page Size: Macintosh

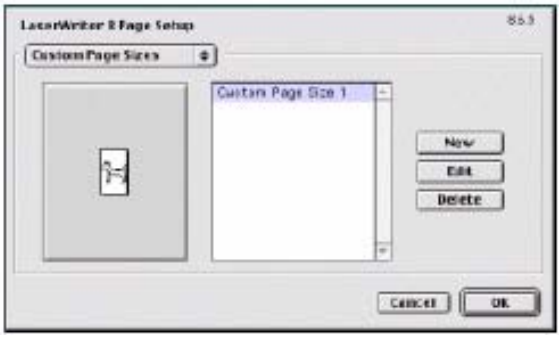
1. Double click the printer icon.
2. Click File → Page Setup.
3. Select the custom page name you wish to modify from the drop-down list, then click Edit."



4. Make your changes, then click OK.

Deleting a Custom Page Size: Macintosh

1. Double click the printer icon.
2. Click File → Page Setup.
3. Select the custom page name you wish to remove.



4. Click Delete.
5. Click OK.

Duplex Printing (Printing on Both Sides): Macintosh

General Information

Models equipped with the duplex unit can be used to print on both sides of the paper.

Note: Models C9200dxn and C9400dxn include the duplex unit; Models C9200 and C9200n must have the optional duplex unit installed before they can be used for duplex printing.

To use duplex printing:

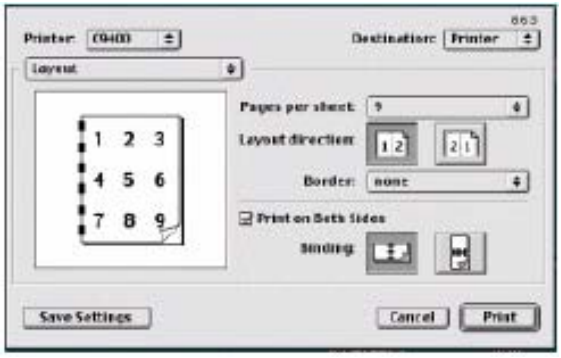
- The duplex unit must be activated in the driver.
- Paper must be fed from Tray 1 (or one of the optional Auxiliary Trays or the optional High Capacity Feeder trays)
- Paper weight must be 20 to 28 lb (74 to 108 g/m^2)
- Paper sizes supported:
  - Letter (long or short edge)
  - Legal-14
  - Legal-13.5
  - Legal-13
  - Tabloid
  - Tabloid Extra
  - Executive
  - A3
  - A3 Wide
  - A4 (long or short edge)
  - A5
  - B4
  - B5 (long or short edge).

Note: If you experience significant curling when printing in the duplex mode and you're using 20 or 24-lb. paper, switch to 28-lb. paper.

Duplex Printing from a Software Application: Macintosh

Note: If you haven't already done so, before attempting duplex printing you must activate the duplex unit in the driver.

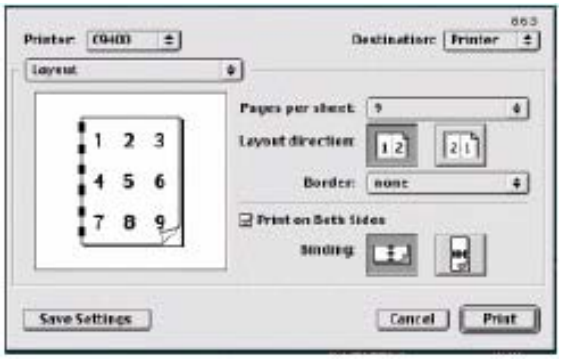
1. Open the document in your software application.
2. Double click the printer icon to open the printer dialog.
3. Click File → Print Window.
4. Open Layout from the drop down selections.



5. Click Print on Both Sides.
6. Under Binding, select which binding to use.
7. Click Print.

Setting Duplex Printing as the Printer Default: Macintosh

1. Change the Duplex setting in the printer menu to ON.
2. Double click the printer icon to open the printer dialog.
3. Click File → Print Window.
4. Click Layout from the drop-down list.



5. Click Print on Both Sides.
6. Under Binding, select which binding to use.
7. Click Save Settings.

N-Up (Multiple Pages on One Sheet): Macintosh

General Information

This feature is handy for saving paper when proofing a multi-page document. You can print up to 16 reduced-size pages on one sheet of paper.

Choices include:

- 2-up
- 4-up
- 6-up
- 9-up
- 16-up

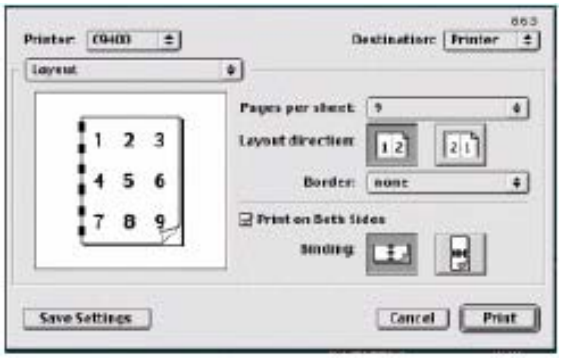
For example, if you select 4-up printing:

- Each page will be reduced to 25% of its original size.
- Four pages will print on each sheet for one-sided printing; eight pages with two-sided (duplex) printing engaged.

N-Up Printing: Macintosh

To print multiple pages on one sheet of media:

1. Double click the printer icon to open the printer dialog.
2. Click File → Print Window.
3. Click Layout from the drop-down list.



4. Select the required number of pages from the Pages per sheet drop-down list.
5. Select the printing order under Layout direction.
6. Select the type of border from the Border drop-down list.
7. Click Save Settings to save the printer driver settings or click Print to print the document.

Print Resolution: Macintosh

General Information

The print resolution is set in units of dots per inch (dpi).

Generally, the higher the resolution, the higher the quality of the printed graphic images.

Higher resolutions use up more toner, require larger amounts of disk space for spooling and will increase the time required to print a job. For example, a 1200 dpi x 1200 dpi print job is up to four times the size of a 600 dpi x 600 dpi print job.

Models C9200, C9200n & C9200dxn

Default is in **red bold** print.

Resolution	Use for	Speed
600 x 600 dpi	Proofing	Fast
600 x 1200 dpi	Highest quality images	Slower

Model C9400dxn

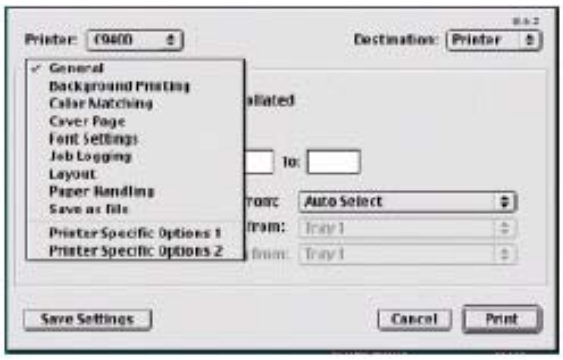
Default is in **red bold** print.

Resolution	Use for	Speed
600 x 600 dpi	Proofing	Fastest

1200 x 1200 dpi	Highest quality images	Slowest

Setting the Print Resolution: Macintosh

1. Double-click the printer icon to open the printer dialog.
2. Click File → Print Window.
3. Select Printer Specific Options 1 from the drop-down list.



4. Select the resolution in the Resolution drop-down list.
5. Click Save Settings to save the setting or click Print to print the document.

Windows 2000

Collating: Windows 2000

General Information

Collated printing allows you to print multiple copies of a document as a series of individual documents, as opposed to printing multiple copies of each page of the document then manually collating the pages into documents.

Important! If you are using duplex printing with collating:

1. Select collated printing in your software application.

2. Select the number of copies in the driver (click Properties [or Setup or your application's equivalent] in the Print dialog box and set the number of copies in the driver for the Windows 2000 PCL driver, you must set the number of copies in the Paper tab, not the General tab).

If your software application has a collated print option, use the software to select collated printing rather than the printer driver. See your software application documentation for information on how to do this.

If your software application does not have a collated printing option, you'll need to select it using the printer driver.

Collating: Windows 2000 PCL Driver

Printing using Collating: Windows 2000 PCL

To print a job using collating in the Windows 2000 PCL driver:

1. In the software application, open the file you wish to print.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. On the General tab, select the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer.
4. Enter the Number of copies and click Collate.

> **Important! If you are using duplex printing, set the number of copies in the Paper tab,** *not the General tab***.**

5. Click Print.

Setting Collate as the Default: Windows 2000 PCL

To set collated printing as the printer default in the Windows 2000 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. On the Paper tab, under Copies, enter the number of copies to be printed and click Printer Collate.
4. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Collating: Windows 2000 PostScript Driver

Printing using Collating: Windows 2000 PS

To print a job using collating in the Windows 2000 PostScript driver:

1. In the software application, open the file you wish to print.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. On the General tab, select the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer.
4. Enter the Number of copies and click Collate to select it.
5. Click Print.

Setting Collate as the Default: Windows 2000 PS

To set collated printing as the default in the Windows 2000 PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers. *The Printers dialog box appears.*

2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. On the Layout tab, click Advanced.
   The Advanced Options dialog box appears.
4. Scroll down to Printer Features, click Collate, and select Yes in the Collate drop-down box.
5. Click OK twice and close the Printers dialog box.

Custom Page Sizes: Windows 2000

General Information

To print custom page sizes, you must:

- Use the Multi-Purpose Tray
- Use the Straight-Through Exit path
- Use a Custom Page Size defined in the printer driver:
- Width range 3 to 12.9 inches (76 to 328 mm)
- Length range 5 to 18 inches (127 to 457 mm)

Custom Page Sizes: Windows 2000 PCL Driver

Creating and Storing a Custom Page Size: Windows 2000 PCL

Note: You can save up to 32 Custom Page Sizes in the PCL driver.

To set up a Custom Page Size in the Windows 2000 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. On the Paper tab, click Custom size.
   The Custom size dialog box appears.
4. Enter a Name (up to 12 characters) for the custom page size.
5. Select a Unit of measure, then enter the Width and Length you wish to use.
6. Click Add.
   The name will appear in the box.
7. Click OK.
   The name you entered appears at the end of the Media Size drop-down list.
8. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Using a Custom Page Size: Windows 2000 PCL

To print using a Custom Page Size in the Windows 2000 PCL driver:

1. Open the document in your software application.
2. Load the custom print media in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

3. Make sure the Straight-Through Exit tray is open.

4. From your software application, click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
5. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click the Paper tab.
6. On the Paper tab, click the M in the illustration (or click Multi purpose tray in the Source drop-down list).
7. Under Size, select the appropriate custom page size name.
8. Click Print.

Setting a Custom Page Size as the Default: Windows 2000 PCL

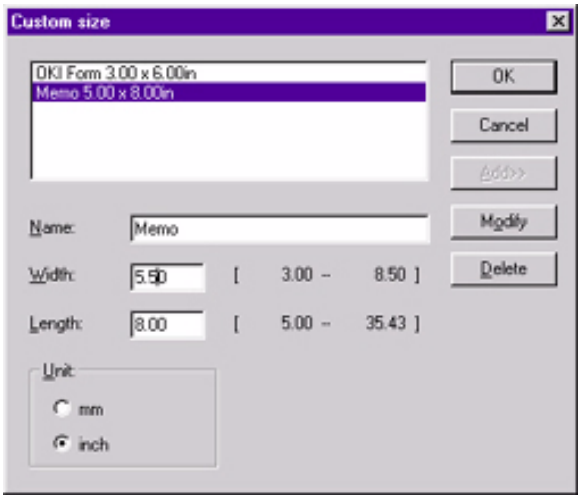
If you wish to set a Custom Page Size as the default in the Windows 2000 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. On the Paper tab, click the M in the illustration (or click Multi purpose tray in the Source drop-down list).
4. Select the appropriate custom page size name in the Media Size drop-down list.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Modifying a Custom Page Size: Windows 2000 PCL

To change the size or name of an established Custom Page Size in the Windows 2000 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. On the Paper tab, click Custom size.
   The Custom size dialog box appears.
4. In the box, click the name of the custom size you wish to modify, then make the changes in Name, Width and Length.

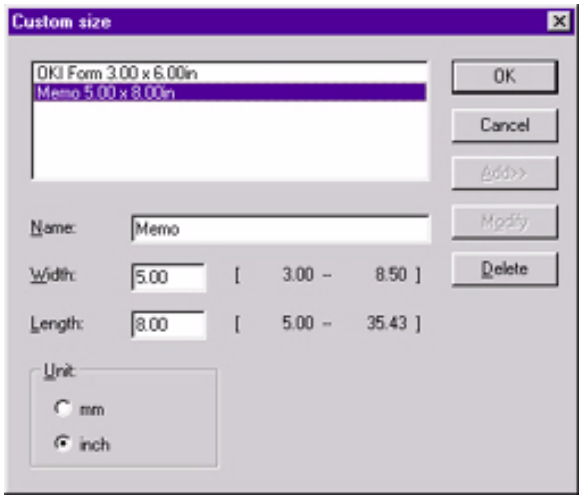


5. Click Modify.
   The changes will be reflected in the box.
6. Click OK twice, then close the Printers dialog box.

Deleting a Custom Page Size: Windows 2000 PCL

To delete a Custom Page Size in the Windows 2000 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. On the Paper tab, click Custom size.
   The Custom size dialog box appears.
4. In the box, click the name of the custom size you wish to remove, then click Delete and click Yes to confirm the deletion.



5. Click OK twice, then close the Printers dialog box.

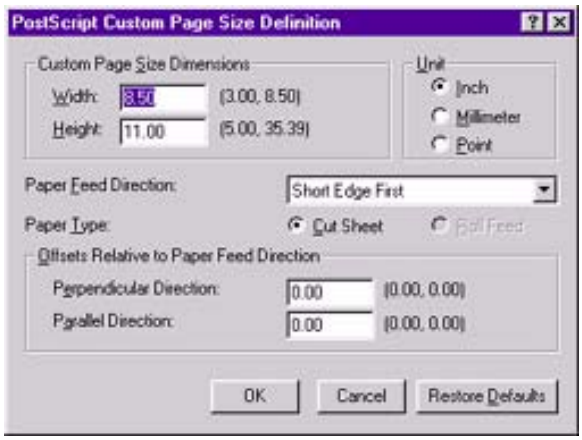
Custom Page Sizes: Windows 2000 PostScript Driver

Creating the Default Custom Page Size: Windows 2000 PS

Note: In the PostScript driver, you can set up one Custom Page Size in the driver to save for future use.

To create a Custom Page Size in the Windows 2000 PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. On the Layout tab, click Advanced.
   The OKI Advanced Options dialog box appears.
4. Under Paper/Output, in the Paper Size drop-down list, click PostScript Custom Page Size.
   The PostScript Custom Page Size Definition dialog box appears:



5. Select a Unit of measure, then enter the Width and Height.
6. Select a Paper Feed Direction:

> **Notes**
>
> Maximum width for Long Edge First is 12.9 inches.
>
> Paper length must be greater than the paper width.

   - Long Edge First = media feeds in long edge first
   - Short Edge First = media feeds in short edge first
   - Long Edge First (flipped) = Reserved for future use.
   - Short Edge First (flipped) = Reserved for future use.
7. Click OK.
8. Click OK twice, then close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Using a Custom Page Size: Windows 2000 PS

To print using a Custom Page Size in the Windows 2000 PostScript driver:

1. Open the document in your software application.
2. Load the custom print media in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

3. Make sure the Straight-Through Exit tray is open.

4. From your software application, select File → Print.
5. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click the Paper/Quality tab.
6. Click Advanced.
   The OKI Advanced Options dialog box appears.
7. If you have set the custom page size as the default, skip to step 9. Otherwise, click PostScript Custom Page Size in the Paper Size drop-down list.
   The PostScript Custom Page Size Definition dialog box appears.
8. If you're using your preset default, click OK; otherwise, make your settings, then click OK.
9. Click OK, then click Print.

Modifying the Default Custom Page Size: Windows 2000 PS

To modify the default Custom Page Size in the Windows 2000 PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. On the Layout tab, click Advanced.
   The OKI PS Default dialog box appears.
4. If you've set the custom page size as the default, click Edit Custom Page Size; otherwise click PostScript Page Size in the Paper Size drop-down list.
   The PostScript Custom Page Size Definition dialog box appears.
5. Make any changes you wish to make in the settings, then click OK.
6. Click OK twice, then close the Printers dialog box.

Duplex Printing (Printing on Both Sides): Windows 2000

General Information

Models equipped with the duplex unit can be used to print on both sides of the paper.

Note: Models C9200dxn and C9400dxn include the duplex unit; Models C9200 and C9200n

must have the optional duplex unit installed before they can be used for duplex printing.

To use duplex printing:

- The duplex unit must be activated in the driver.
- Paper must be fed from Tray 1 (or one of the optional Auxiliary Trays or the optional High Capacity Feeder trays)
- Paper weight must be 20 to 28 lb (74 to 108 g/m^2)
- Paper sizes supported:
  - Letter (long or short edge)
  - Legal-14
  - Legal-13.5
  - Legal-13
  - Tabloid
  - Tabloid Extra
  - Executive
  - A3
  - A3 Wide
  - A4 (long or short edge)
  - A5
  - B4
  - B5 (long or short edge).

Note: If you experience significant curling when printing in the duplex mode and you're using 20 or 24-lb. paper, switch to 28-lb. paper.

Duplex Printing from a Software Application: Windows 2000

Note: If you haven't already done so, before attempting duplex printing you must activate the duplex unit in the driver (PCL, PostScript).

Duplex Printing: Windows 2000 PCL Driver

1. Open the document in your software application,
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. On the General tab, select the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer, then click the Layout tab.
4. Select Long edge ( ) or Short edge ( ) binding under 2-sided printing.

   Note: If these selections are grayed out, you need to activate the duplex unit in the driver.

5. Click Print.

Duplex Printing: Windows 2000 PostScript Driver

1. Open the document in your software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. On the General tab, select the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer, then click the Layout tab.
4. Under Print on Both Sides (Duplex), click your selection of Flip on Long Edge ( ) or Flip on Short Edge ( ).

   Note: If these selections do not appear on the Layout tab, you need to activate the duplex unit in the driver.

5. Click Print.

Duplex Printing as the Printer Default: Windows 2000

Setting Duplex Printing as the Default: Windows 2000 PCL

1. Change the Duplex setting in the printer menu to ON.
2. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
3. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
4. Click the Layout tab.
5. Select Long edge ( ) or Short edge ( )binding in the 2-sided printing drop-down list.

   Note: If these selections do not appear on the Layout tab, you need to activate the duplex unit in the driver.

6. Click OK, then close the Printers dialog box.

Setting Duplex Printing as the Default: Windows 2000 PS

1. Change the Duplex setting in the printer menu to ON.
2. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
3. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
4. On the Layout tab, under Print on Both Sides (Duplex), click your choice of Flip on Long Edge ( ) or Flip on Short Edge ( ).

   Note: If these selections do not appear on the Layout tab, you need to activate the duplex unit in the driver.

5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

N-Up: Windows 2000

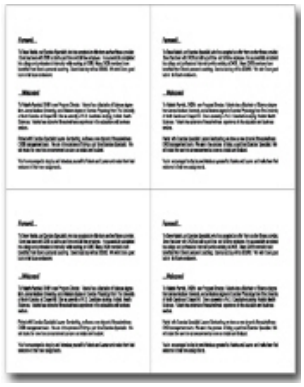
General Information

This feature is handy for saving paper when proofing a multi-page document. You can print up to 16 reduced-size pages on one sheet of paper.

Choices include:

- 2-up
- 4-up
- 6-up
- 9-up
- 16-up

For example, if you select 4-up printing:



- Each page will be reduced to 25% of its original size.
- Four pages will print on each sheet for one-sided printing; eight pages with two-sided (duplex) printing engaged.

N-Up Printing: Windows 2000 PCL

To print a job using N-Up printing in the Windows 2000 PCL driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. In the General tab, click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon.
4. Click the Layout tab. Under Finishing Mode, click the number of pages to be printed per sheet from the Pages per sheet drop-down list.
5. Click your choice from the Page Borders drop-down list.
6. Click Print.

N-Up Printing: Windows 2000 PS

To print a job using N-Up printing in the Windows 2000 PostScript driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.

2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. In the General tab, select the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon.
4. Click the Layout tab. Under Pages per Sheet, click the number of pages to be printed per sheet.
5. Click Print.

Print Resolution: Windows 2000

General Information

The print resolution is set in units of dots per inch (dpi).

Generally, the higher the resolution, the higher the quality of the printed graphic images.

Higher resolutions use up more toner, require larger amounts of disk space for spooling and will increase the time required to print a job. For example, a 1200 dpi x 1200 dpi print job is up to four times the size of a 600 dpi x 600 dpi print job.

Models C9200, C9200n & C9200dxn: PCL & PostScript Modes

Default is in **red bold** print.

Resolution	Use for	Speed
600 x 600 dpi	Proofing	Fast
600 x 1200 dpi	Highest quality images	Slower

Model C9400dxn: PCL Mode

Default is in **red bold** print.

Resolution	Use for	Speed
600 x 600 dpi	Proofing	Fastest
Fast 1200 (600 x 1200 dpi)	Higher quality images	Medium Fast
1200 x 1200 dpi	Highest quality images	Slowest

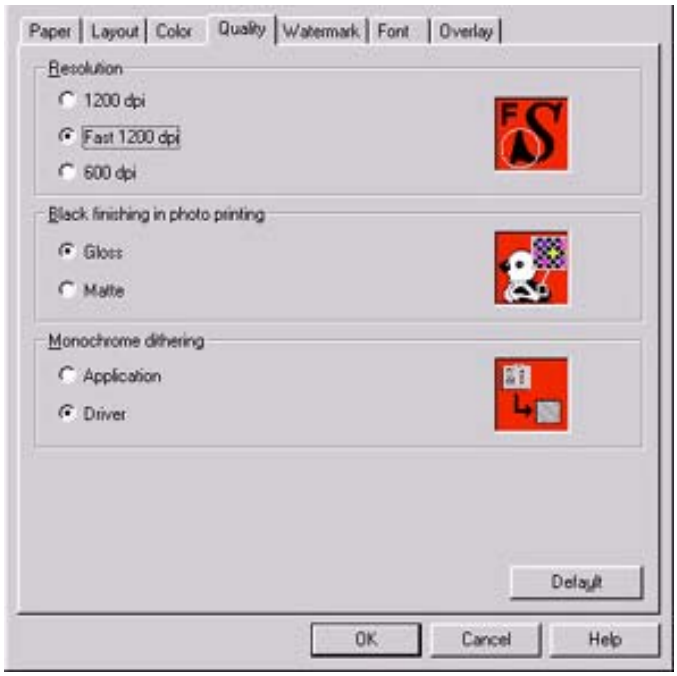
Model C9400dxn: PostScript Mode

Default is in **red bold** print.

Resolution	Use for	Speed
600 x 600 dpi	Proofing	Fastest
1200 x 1200 dpi	Highest quality images	Slowest

Setting the Default Print Resolution: Windows 2000 PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. Click the Quality tab, then click your resolution selection under Resolution.



4. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Changing the Resolution for a Print Job: Windows 2000 PCL Driver

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click the Quality tab.

4. Click your resolution selection under Resolution.
5. Click Print.

Setting the Default Print Resolution: Windows 2000 PostScript Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Preferences dialog box appears.
3. On the Layout tab, click Advanced.
   The OKI Advanced Options dialog box appears.
4. Under Graphic, click Print Quality.
5. Click your resolution selection in the Print Quality drop-down list.
6. Click OK twice, then close the Printers dialog box.

Changing the Resolution for a Print Job: Windows 2000 PostScript Driver

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click the Paper/Quality tab.
4. Click Advanced.
   The OKI Advanced Options dialog box appears.
5. Under Graphic, click Print Quality.

6. Click your resolution selection in the Print Quality drop-down list.
7. Click OK, then click Print.

Watermarks: Windows 2000

General Information

A watermark is an image superimposed on the pages of a printed document. Normally a watermark is a faint background image, but it can be any color, any intensity.

For example, the word "DRAFT" could be watermarked on a page:

You set the text, size, angle, font color and position of the watermark in the printer driver.

You can insert a watermark on:

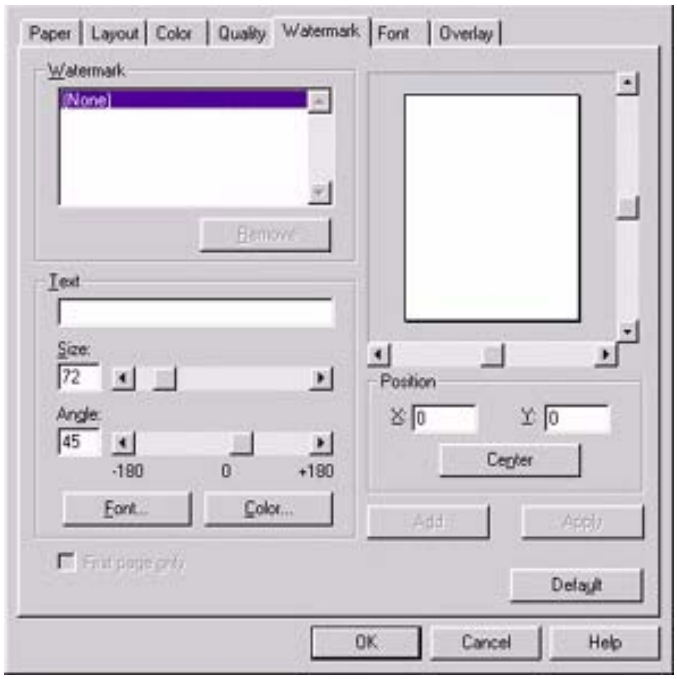
- the first page of your document or
- on all pages of your document.

Note: Watermarks can only be printed in Windows 2000 using the PCL driver.

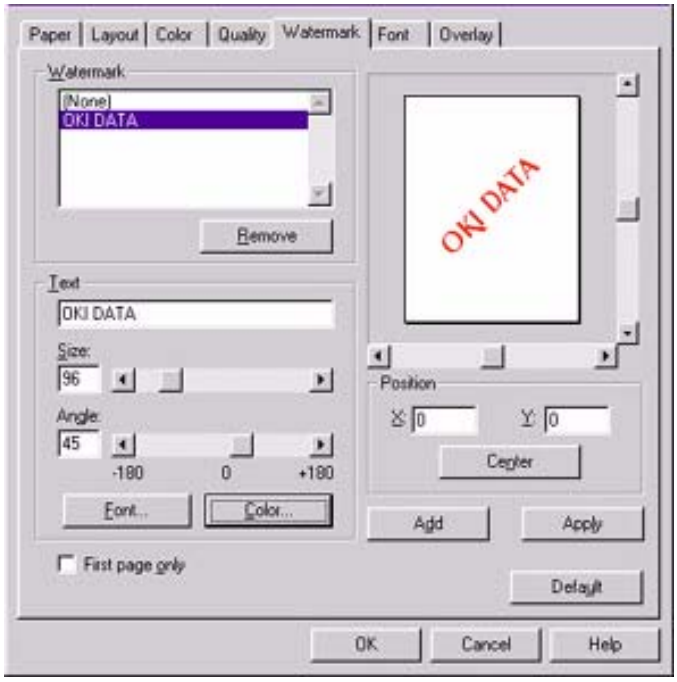
Creating & Storing a Watermark: Windows 2000 PCL

To create a watermark:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. Click the Watermark tab.



4. Type in the text, then select the Size, Angle, Font and Color.
5. Click Add.
   The text appears in the Watermark list box:



6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Using a Watermark: Windows 2000 PCL

To print a document with a watermark:

1. Open the document in the software application.

2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. On the General tab, click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon.
4. Click the Watermark tab and select the watermark you wish to use from the Watermark list (or create a new one).
5. To print the watermark only on the first page of the document, click First page only. Otherwise the watermark will print on every page.
6. Click Print.

Modifying a Watermark: Windows 2000 PCL

To edit an existing watermark:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. Click the Watermark tab, then click the watermark you wish to change.
4. Make any changes.
5. When you're done making changes, click Apply.
6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Deleting a Watermark: Windows 2000 PCL

To delete a watermark:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The PCL Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. Click the Watermark tab.
4. Click the watermark you wish to delete, then click Remove.
5. Click Yes to confirm the removal.
6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Fit to Page: Windows 2000, PCL Only

This feature allows you to print a document on a different size media by reducing or enlarging it to fit on the page. For example, you can proof a custom-size document on standard size paper, reserving the special custom-size paper for use only for the final printing.

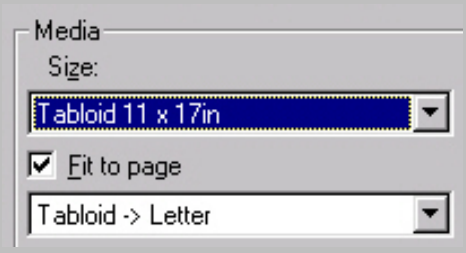
Using Fit to Page:

Note: If the document size is significantly larger than the print media, portions of the edge of the document will be cut off to fit it on the page.

1. With the document you wish to print open in your software application, click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
2. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL driver is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
3. Click the Paper tab.
4. If necessary, select the Source.
5. Click the checkbox beside Fit to Page.
   A drop-down list appears below Fit to Page.
6. Under Size, click the paper size representing the document you wish to print, then select the size conversion you wish to use from the drop-down list.

Example

To print a tabloid size document on letter-size paper:



7. Click Print.

Windows Me

Booklets (Signature Printing): Windows Me PCL Driver

Note: Booklet printing is available only for the PCL driver.

General Information

Important! In order to print booklets, your printer must be equipped with the duplex unit (standard on Models C9200dxn and C9400dxn, optional on Models C9200 and C9200n) and the duplex unit must be activated in the driver (see "Activate the Duplex Unit in the Driver ") and in the printer menu (see "Turning the Duplex Unit On in the Menu ").

Note: Some software applications do not support booklet printing.

Printing booklets allows you to print multiple pages on a single sheet—printing on both sides—then fold the paper in half to form a booklet.

Example

If your document pages are 5.5" x 8.5" (portrait), you can set the printer up to print four pages (landscape) per 8.5" x 11" sheet which would then be folded over to form a 5.5" x 8.5" (portrait) booklet:

Booklets, Individual Print Jobs: Windows Me PCL

To print a file as a booklet:

1. Load paper, print side down, in Tray 1.

   Note: The Multi-Purpose Tray, Auxiliary Trays and High Capacity Feeder can *not* be used for printing booklets.

2. In your software application, open the file you wish to print.
3. Click File → Print and make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Layout tab.
5. Under Finishing Mode, select Booklet from the drop-down list.

   Note: If Booklet does not appear in the drop-down list, the duplex unit has not been activated in the driver. On the Paper tab, click Device options, then click Duplex option unit to select it and click OK.

6. If necessary, select the appropriate Signature from the drop-down list (normally No limit is used).

   Note: The term signature refers to the number of pages in the document to be included in the booklet, and does not refer to the traditional printer's signature (imposition). Generally, the setting for this should be left at No limit so that all the pages in the document will be printed.

7. Click OK and print the document.

Setting Booklets as the Printer Default: Windows Me PCL

To set booklet printing up as the printer default:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Layout tab.
4. Under Finishing Mode, select Booklet from the drop-down list.
5. If necessary, select the appropriate Signature from the drop-down list (normally No limit is used).

   Note: The term signature refers to the number of pages in the document to be included in the booklet, and does not refer to the traditional printer's signature (imposition). Generally, the setting for this should be left at No limit so that all the pages in the document will be printed.

6. Click OK, then close the Printers dialog box.

Collating: Windows Me

General Information

Collated printing allows you to print multiple copies of a document as a series of individual documents, as opposed to printing multiple copies of each page of the document then manually collating the pages into documents.

Important! If you are using duplex printing with collating:

1. Select collated printing in your software application.

2. Select the number of copies in the driver (click Properties [or Setup or your application's equivalent] in the Print dialog box and set the number of copies in the driver for the Windows 2000 PCL driver, you must set the number of copies in the Paper tab, not the General tab).

If your software application has a collated print option, use the software to select collated printing rather than the printer driver. See your software application documentation for information on how to do this.

If your software application does not have a collated printing option, you'll need to select it using the printer driver.

Collating: Windows Me PCL Driver

Printing using Collating: Windows Me PCL

To print a job using collating in the Windows Me PCL driver:

1. In your software application, open the file to be printed.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.

> **Important! If your application has a collate feature select it here. If you are using duplex printing, select the number of copies in the driver (see step 4).**

3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. On the Paper tab, under Copies, enter the number of required copies. If your application does *not* have the collate feature, click Printer Collate.
5. Click OK and print the job.

Setting Collate as the Default: Windows Me PCL

To set collating as the default in the Windows Me PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon and click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab.
4. Under Copies, enter the number of required copies and click Printer collate.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Collating: Windows Me PostScript Driver

Printing using Collating: Windows Me PS

To print a job using collating in the Windows Me PostScript driver:

1. In your software application, open the file to be printed.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.

> **Important! If your application has a collate feature select it here. If you are using duplex printing, select the number of copies in the driver (see step 4).**

3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI PS Properties dialog box appears.
4. On the Paper tab, under Copies, enter the number of required copies. If your application does *not* have the collate feature, click Collate.
5. Click OK and proceed to print the job.

Setting Collate as the Default: Windows Me PS

To set collate as the default in the Windows Me PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab.
4. Under Copies, enter the number of required copies and click Collate.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Custom Page Sizes: Windows Me

General Information

To print custom page sizes, you must:

- Use the Multi-Purpose Tray
- Use the Straight-Through Exit path
- Use a Custom Page Size defined in the printer driver:
- Width range 3 to 12.9 inches (76 to 328 mm)
- Length range 5 to 18 inches (127 to 457 mm)

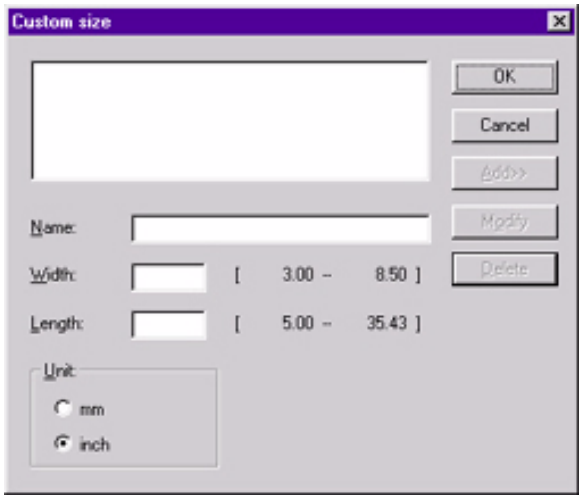
Custom Page Sizes: Windows Me PCL Driver

Note: Up to 32 custom paper sizes can be defined and stored.

Setting Up a Custom Page Size: Windows Me PCL

To set up a Custom Page Size in the Windows Me PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab, then click Custom Size.
   The Custom size dialog box appears.



4. Type in the Name of the custom page size.
5. Click the desired Unit of measurement, then enter the Width and Length.
6. Click Add, then click OK.
   The custom page size is added to the bottom of Size drop-down list.

> **Note:** If you want to set the custom page size as the default, click it in the drop-down list before continuing.

7. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Using a Custom Page Size: Winodws Me PCL

To print using a Custom Page Size in the Windows Me PCL driver:

1. Open the file in your software application.
2. Load the custom size media in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

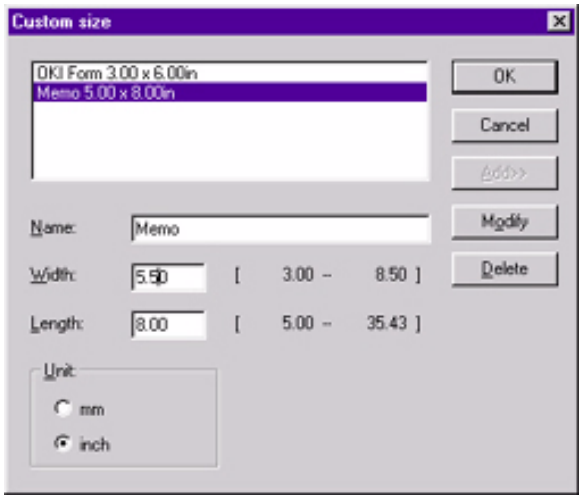
3. Make sure the straight-through exit tray is open.

4. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
5. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
6. On the Paper tab, click the M on the printer drawing (or click Multi purpose tray from the Source drop-down list).
7. Click the desired custom page size from the Size drop-down list.
8. Click OK and print the document.

Modifying a Custom Page Size: Windows Me PCL

To modify a Custom Page Size in the Windows Me PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab, then click Custom Size.
   The Custom size dialog box appears.



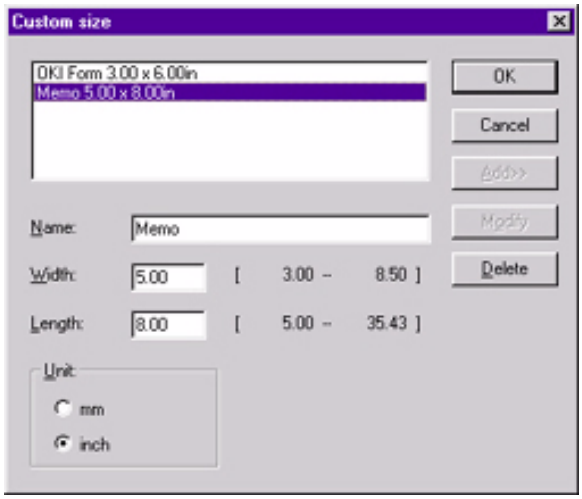
4. Click the Name of the custom page size you wish to change.
5. Enter any changes, then click Modify.

6. Click OK twice, then close the Printers dialog box.

Deleting a Custom Page Size: Windows Me PCL

To delete a Custom Page Size in the Windows Me PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab, then click Custom Size.
   The Custom size dialog box appears.
4. Click the Name of the custom page size you wish to delete.



5. Click Delete, then click Yes to confirm the deletion.
6. Click OK twice, then close the Printers dialog box.

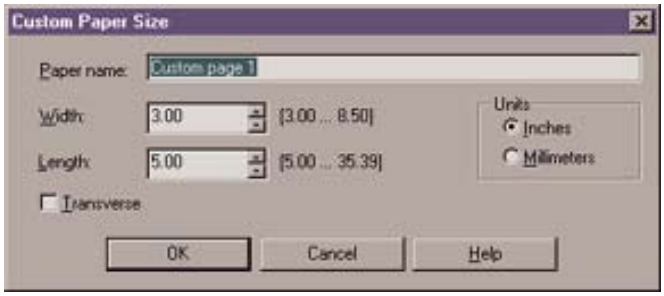
Custom Page Sizes: Windows Me PostScript Driver

Setting Up a Custom Page Size: Windows Me PS

> **Note:** Three Custom Page Sizes can be defined in the PostScript driver.

To set up a Custom Page Size in the Windows Me PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab, then select Custom page 1, Custom page 2, or Custom page 3 in the Size drop-down list.
4. Click Custom Size.



5. In the Paper name box, type in the name for the custom paper size.
6. Select a Unit of measure, then enter the Width and Length measurements.
7. Click OK.
   The new custom size will appear near the bottom of the Size drop-down list.
8. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Using a Custom Page Size: Windows Me PS

To print using a Custom Page Size in the Windows Me PostScript driver:

1. Open the file in your software application.
2. Load the custom size media in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

3. Make sure the straight-through exit tray is open.

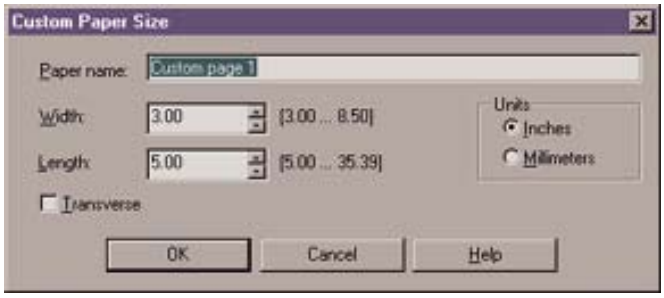
4. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.

5. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click Properties (or Setup, or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
6. On the Paper tab, click Multi-Purpose tray in the Source drop-down list.
7. Click the desired custom page size from the Size drop-down list.
8. Click OK and proceed to print the job.

Modifying a Custom Page Size: Windows Me PS

To modify a Custom Page Size in the Windows Me PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI PS Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab.
4. In the Size drop-down list, click the custom page size to be modified.
5. Click Custom Size.
   The Custom Paper Size dialog box appears.



6. Make any changes in Paper name, Width, and Length, then click OK.
7. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Duplex Printing (Printing on Both Sides): Windows Me

General Information

Models equipped with the duplex unit can be used to print on both sides of the paper.

Note: Models C9200dxn and C9400dxn include the duplex unit; Models C9200 and C9200n must have the optional duplex unit installed before they can be used for duplex printing.

To use duplex printing:

- The duplex unit must be activated in the driver.
- Paper must be fed from Tray 1 (or one of the optional Auxiliary Trays or the optional High Capacity Feeder trays)
- Paper weight must be 20 to 28 lb (74 to 108 g/m^2)
- Paper sizes supported:

- Letter (long or short edge)
- Legal-14
- Legal-13.5
- Legal-13
- Tabloid
- Tabloid Extra
- Executive
- A3
- A3 Wide
- A4 (long or short edge)
- A5
- B4
- B5 (long or short edge).

Note: If you experience significant curling when printing in the duplex mode and you're using 20 or 24-lb. paper, switch to 28-lb. paper.

Duplex Printing from a Software Application: Windows Me

Note: If you haven't already done so, before attempting duplex printing you must activate the duplex unit in the driver (PCL, PostScript).

Duplex Printing: Windows Me PCL

1. Open the document in your software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL driver is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Layout tab, then select Long edge ( ) or Short edge ( ) binding under 2-sided printing.
5. Click OK and print the document.

Duplex Printing: Windows Me PS

1. Open the document in your software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript driver is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI PS Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Layout tab.
5. Under 2-sided printings, click your selection of Flip on long edge ( ) or Flip on short edge ( ) from the drop-down list.
6. Click OK and print the document.

Duplex Printing Set as Default: Windows Me

Setting Duplex Printing as the Default: Windows Me PCL

To set Duplex printing as the default in the Windows Me PCL Driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Layout tab.
4. Under 2-Sided printing, click Long edge ( ) or Short edge () binding from the drop-down list.

   Note: If these items are grayed out, you need to turn the duplex unit on in the driver.

5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Setting Duplex Printing as the Default: Windows Me PS

To set Duplex printing as the default in the Windows Me PostScript Driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI PS Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Layout tab.
4. Under 2-sided printings, click your selection of Flip on long edge () or Flip on short edge () from the drop-down list.

   Note: If these items are grayed out, you need to turn the duplex unit on in the driver.

5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

N-Up: Windows Me

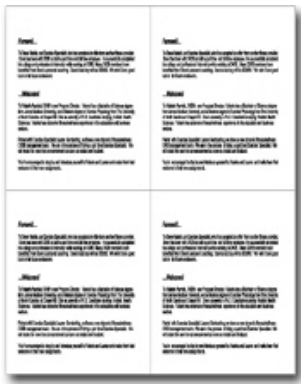
General Information

This feature is handy for saving paper when proofing a multi-page document. You can print up to 16 reduced-size pages on one sheet of paper.

Choices include:

- 2-up
- 4-up
- 6-up
- 9-up
- 16-up

For example, if you select 4-up printing:



- Each page will be reduced to 25% of its original size.
- Four pages will print on each sheet for one-sided printing; eight pages with two-sided (duplex) printing engaged.

N-Up Printing: Windows Me PCL

To print a job using N-Up printing in the Windows Me PCL driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Layout tab. Under Finishing Mode, click the number of pages to be printed per sheet.
5. Click your choice from the Page Borders drop-down list
6. Click OK and print the document.

N-Up Printing: Windows Me PS

To print a job using N-Up printing in the Windows Me PostScript driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Layout tab. Under Pages on Sheet, click the number of pages to be printed per sheet.
5. Click OK and print the document.

Print Resolution: Windows Me

General Information

The print resolution is set in units of dots per inch (dpi).

Generally, the higher the resolution, the higher the quality of the printed graphic images.

Higher resolutions use up more toner, require larger amounts of disk space for spooling and will increase the time required to print a job. For example, a 1200 dpi x 1200 dpi print job is up to four times the size of a 600 dpi x 600 dpi print job.

Models C9200, C9200n & C9200dxn: PCL & PostScript Modes

Default is in **red bold** print.

Resolution	Use for	Speed
600 x 600 dpi	Proofing	Fast
600 x 1200 dpi	Highest quality images	Slower

Model C9400dxn: PCL Mode

Default is in **red bold** print.

Resolution	Use for	Speed
600 x 600 dpi	Proofing	Fastest
Fast 1200 (600 x 1200 dpi)	Higher quality images	Medium Fast
1200 x 1200 dpi	Highest quality images	Slowest

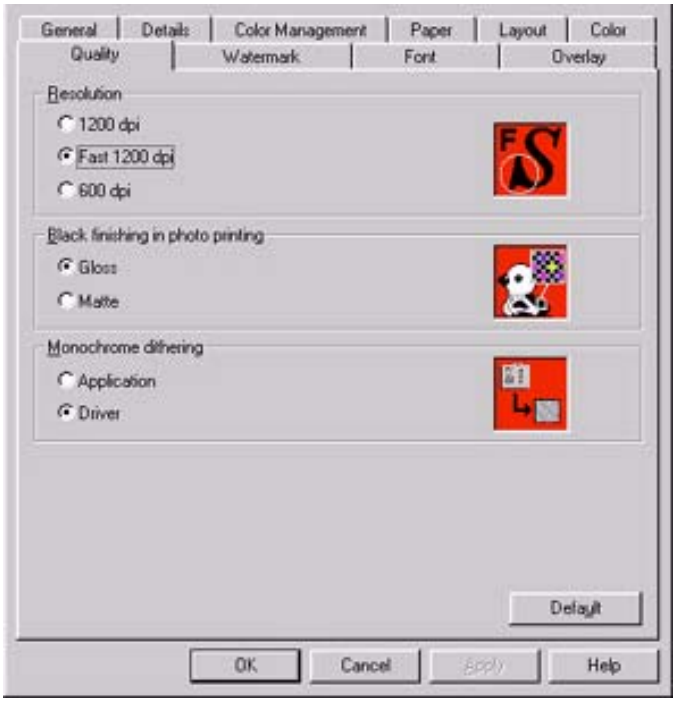
Model C9400dxn: PostScript Mode

Default is in **red bold** print.

Resolution	Use for	Speed
600 x 600 dpi	Proofing	Fastest
1200 x 1200 dpi	Highest quality images	Slowest

Setting the Default Print Resolution: Windows Me PCL

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Quality tab, then click your resolution selection under Resolution.



4. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Changing the Resolution for a Print Job: Windows Me PCL

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Quality tab, then click your resolution selection under Resolution.

5. Click OK and print the document.

Setting the Default Print Resolution: Windows Me PS

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Print Quality tab, then click your resolution selection in the Resolution drop-down list.
4. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Changing the Resolution for a Print Job: Windows Me PS

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Print Quality tab, then click your resolution selection in the Resolution drop-down list.
5. Click OK and print the document.

Watermarks: Windows Me

General Information

A watermark is an image superimposed on the pages of a printed document. Normally a watermark is a faint background image, but it can be any color, any intensity.

For example, the word "DRAFT" could be watermarked on a page:

You set the text, size, angle, font color and position of the watermark in the printer driver.

You can insert a watermark on:

- the first page of your document or
- on all pages of your document.

Watermarks: Windows Me PCL

Creating & Storing Watermarks: Windows Me PCL

To create and store a watermark in the Windows Me PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Watermark tab.
4. Type in the text, then select the Size, Angle, Font and Color.
5. Click Add.
   The text appears in the Watermark list box.
6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Using a Watermark: Windows Me PCL

To print a document with watermarks in the Windows Me PCL driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).

The OKI Properties dialog box appears.

4. Click the Watermark tab and select the watermark you wish to use from the Watermark list (or create a new one).
5. To print the watermark only on the first page of the document, click First page only. Otherwise the watermark will print on every page.
6. Click OK and print the document.

Modifying a Watermark: Windows Me PCL

To modify an existing watermark in the Windows Me PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon and click *Properties*.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Watermarks tab, then click the watermark you wish to change:
4. Make your changes, then click Apply.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Deleting a Watermark: Windows Me PCL

To delete a watermark in the Windows Me PCL driver:

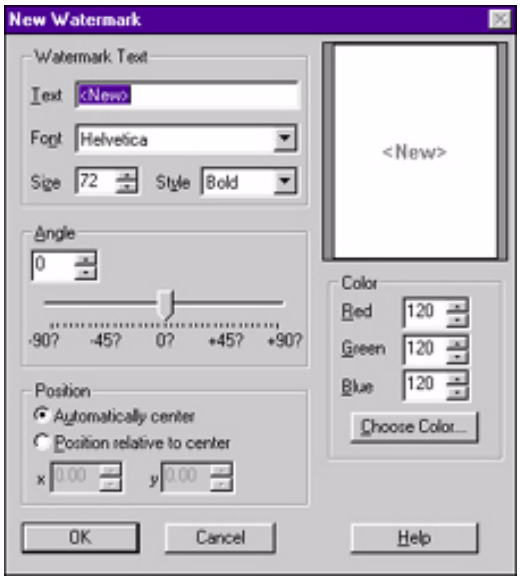
1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click *Properties*.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Watermark tab, then click the watermark you wish to delete.
4. Click Remove then confirm the deletion by clicking Yes.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Watermarks: Windows Me PS

Creating & Storing Watermarks: Windows Me PS

To create and store a watermark in the Windows Me PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Watermarks tab.
4. Click New.
   The New Watermark dialog box appears.



5. Type in the text, then select the Font, Size, Style, Angle, Position and Color.
6. Click OK twice and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Using a Watermark; Windows Me PS

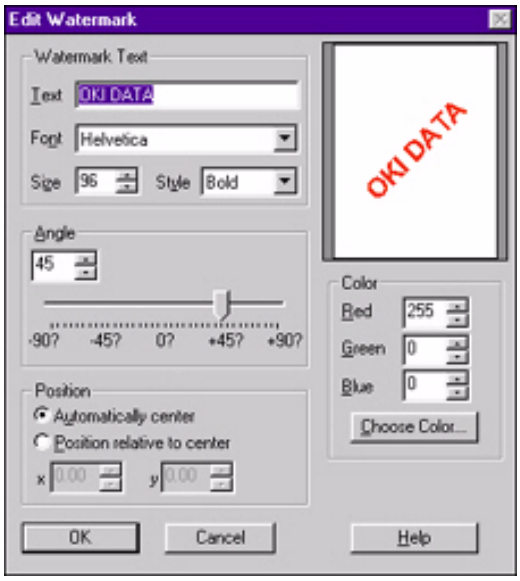
To print a document with watermarks in the Windows Me PostScript driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Watermarks tab and select the watermark you wish to use from the Watermark list (or create a new one).
5. Select where and how the watermark is to be printed under Print Watermark.
6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Modifying a Watermark: Windows Me PS

To modify an existing watermark in the Windows Me PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon and click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Watermarks tab and select the watermark you wish to modify.
4. Click Edit.
   The Edit Watermark dialog box appears.



5. Make your corrections, then click OK.
6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Deleting a Watermark: Windows Me PS

To delete a watermark in the Windows Me PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon and click *Properties*.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Watermarks tab and select the watermark you wish to delete.
4. Click Delete and confirm the deletion.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Windows 98 & 95

Booklets (Signature Printing): Windows 98/95 PCL Driver

Note: Booklet printing is available only for the PCL driver.

General Information

Important! In order to print booklets, your printer must be equipped with the duplex unit (standard on Models C9200dxn and C9400dxn, optional on Models C9200 and C9200n) and the duplex unit must be activated in the driver (see "Activate the Duplex Unit in the Driver ") and in the printer menu (see "Turning the Duplex Unit On in the Menu ").

Note: Some software applications do not support booklet printing.

Printing booklets allows you to print multiple pages on a single sheet—printing on both sides—then fold the paper in half to form a booklet.

Example

If your document pages are 5.5" x 8.5" (portrait), you can set the printer up to print four pages (landscape) per 8.5" x 11" sheet which would then be folded over to form a 5.5" x 8.5" (portrait) booklet:

Booklets, Individual Print Jobs: Windows 98 & 95 PCL

To print a file as a booklet:

1. Load paper, print side down, in Tray 1.

   Note: The Multi-Purpose Tray, Auxiliary Trays and High Capacity Feeder can *not* be used for printing booklets.

2. In your software application, open the file you wish to print.
3. Click File → Print and make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Layout tab.
5. Under Finishing Mode, select Booklet from the drop-down list.

   Note: If Booklet does not appear in the drop-down list, the duplex unit has not been activated in the driver. On the Paper tab, click Device options, then click Duplex option unit to select it and click OK.

6. If necessary, select the appropriate Signature from the drop-down list (normally No limit is used).

   Note: The term signature refers to the number of pages in the document to be included in the booklet, and does not refer to the traditional printer's signature (imposition). Generally, the setting for this should be left at No limit so that all the pages in the document will be printed.

7. Click OK and print the document.

Setting Booklets as the Printer Default: Windows 98 & 95 PCL

To set booklet printing up as the printer default:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Layout tab.
4. Under Finishing Mode, select Booklet from the drop-down list.
5. If necessary, select the appropriate Signature from the drop-down list (normally No limit is used).

   Note: The term signature refers to the number of pages in the document to be included in the booklet, and does not refer to the traditional printer's signature (imposition). Generally, the setting for this should be left at No limit so that all the pages in the document will be printed.

6. Click OK, then close the Printers dialog box.

Collating: Windows 98 & 95

General Information

Collated printing allows you to print multiple copies of a document as a series of individual documents, as opposed to printing multiple copies of each page of the document then manually collating the pages into documents.

Important! If you are using duplex printing with collating:

1. Select collated printing in your software application.

2. Select the number of copies in the driver (click Properties [or Setup or your application's equivalent] in the Print dialog box and set the number of copies in the driver for the Windows 2000 PCL driver, you must set the number of copies in the Paper tab, not the General tab).

If your software application has a collated print option, use the software to select collated printing rather than the printer driver. See your software application documentation for information on how to do this.

If your software application does not have a collated printing option, you'll need to select it using the printer driver.

Collating: Windows 98/95 PCL Driver

Printing using Collating: Windows 98/95 PCL

To print a job using collating in the Windows 98 & 95 PCL driver:

1. In your software application, open the file to be printed.
2. Click File → Print. *The Print dialog box appears.*

> **Important! If your application has a collate feature select it in the Print dialog box. If you are using duplex printing, select the number of copies in the driver (see step 4).**

3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. On the Paper tab, under Copies, enter the number of required copies.
   *If your application does **not** have the collate feature,* click Printer Collate.
5. Click OK and proceed to print the job.

Setting Collate as the Default: Windows 98/95 PCL

To set collating as the default in the Windows 98 & 95 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon and click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab.
4. Under Copies, enter the number of required copies and click Printer Collate.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Collating: Windows 98/95Post Script Driver

Printing using Collating: Windows 98/95 PS

To print a job using collating in the Windows 98 & 95 PostScript driver:

1. In your software application, open the file to be printed.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.

> **Important! If your application has a collate feature select it here. If you are using duplex printing, select the number of copies in the driver (see step 4).**

3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent)
   The OKI PS Properties dialog box appears.
4. On the Paper tab, under Copies, enter the number of required copies. If your application does *not* have the collate feature, click Collate.

5. Click OK and proceed to print the job.

Setting Collate as the Default: Windows 98/95 PS

To set collate as the default in the Windows 98 & 95 PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab.
4. Under Copies, enter the number of required copies and click Collate.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Custom Page Sizes: Windows 98 & 95

General Information

To print custom page sizes, you must:

- Use the Multi-Purpose Tray
- Use the Straight-Through Exit path
- Use a Custom Page Size defined in the printer driver:
- Width range 3 to 12.9 inches (76 to 328 mm)
- Length range 5 to 18 inches (127 to 457 mm)

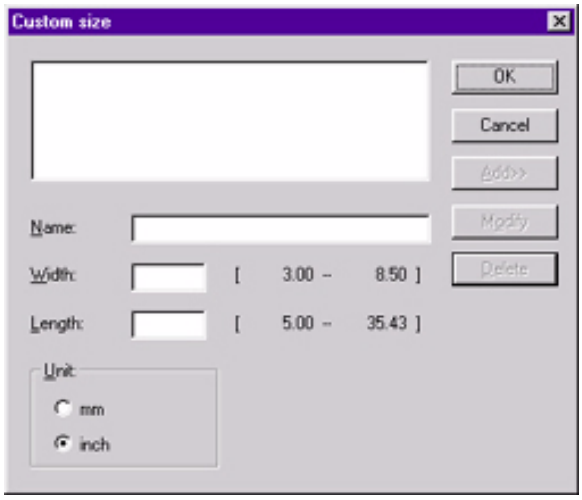
Custom Page Sizes: Windows 98/95 PCL Driver

Note: Up to 32 custom paper sizes can be defined and stored.

Setting Up a Custom Page Size: Windows 98/95 PCL

To set up a Custom Page Size in the Windows 98 & 95 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab, then click Custom Size.
   The Custom size dialog box appears.



4. Type in the Name of the custom page size.
5. Click the desired Unit of measurement, then enter the Width and Length.
6. Click Add, then click OK.
   The custom page size is added to the bottom of Size drop-down list.

> **Note:** If you want to set the custom page size as the default, click it in the drop-down list before continuing.

7. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Using a Custom Page Size: Windows 98/95 PCL

To print using a Custom Page Size in the Windows 98 & 95 PCL driver:

1. Open the file in your software application.
2. Load the custom size media in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

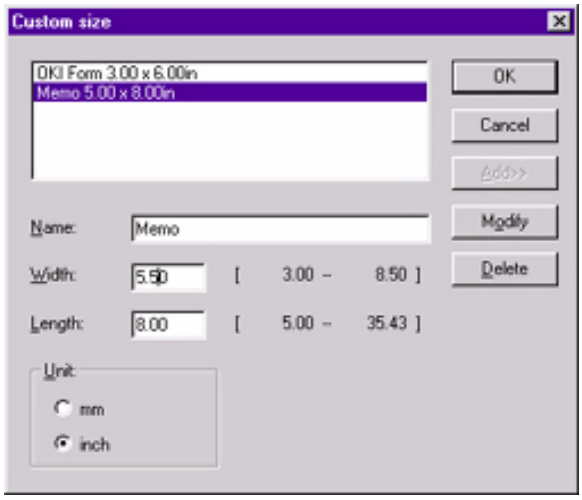
3. Make sure the straight-through exit tray is open.

4. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
5. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
6. On the Paper tab, click the M on the printer drawing (or click Multi purpose tray from the Source drop-down list).
7. Click the desired custom page size from the Size drop-down list.
8. Click OK and print the document.

Modifying a Custom Page Size: Windows 98/95 PCL

To modify a Custom Page Size in the Windows 98 & 95 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab, then click Custom Size.
   The Custom size dialog box appears.



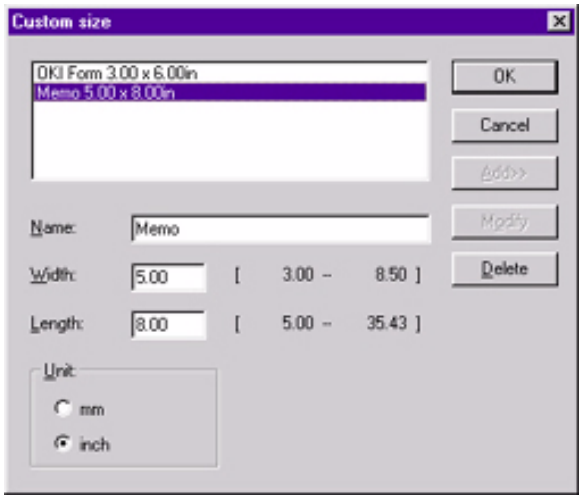
4. Click the Name of the custom page size you wish to change.
5. Enter any changes, then click Modify.

6. Click OK twice, then close the Printers dialog box.

Deleting a Custom Page Size: Windows 98/95 PCL

To delete a Custom Page Size in the Windows 98 & 95 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab, then click Custom Size.
   The Custom size dialog box appears.
4. Click the Name of the custom page size you wish to delete.



5. Click Delete, then click Yes to confirm the deletion.
6. Click OK twice, then close the Printers dialog box.

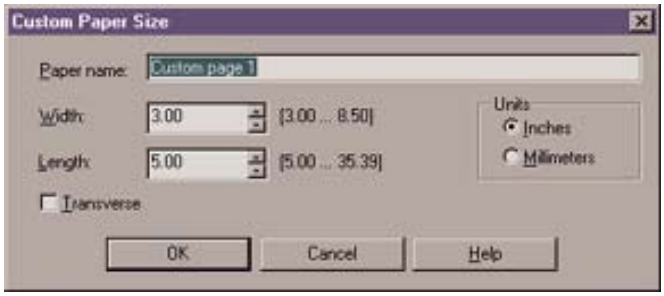
Custom Page Sizes: Windows 98/95 PostScript Driver

Setting Up a Custom Page Size: Windows 98/95 PS

Note: Three Custom Page Sizes can be defined in the PostScript driver.

To set up a Custom Page Size in the Windows 98 & 95 PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab, then select Custom page 1, Custom page 2, or Custom page 3 in the Size drop-down list.
4. Click Custom Size.



5. In the Paper name box, type in the name for the custom paper size.
6. Select a Unit of measure, then enter the Width and Length measurements.
7. Click OK.
   The new custom size will appear near the bottom of the Size drop-down list.
8. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Using a Custom Page Size: Windows 98/95 PS

To print using a Custom Page Size in the Windows 98 & 95 PostScript driver:

1. Open the file in your software application.
2. Load the custom size media in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

3. Make sure the straight-through exit tray is open.

4. Click File → Print.

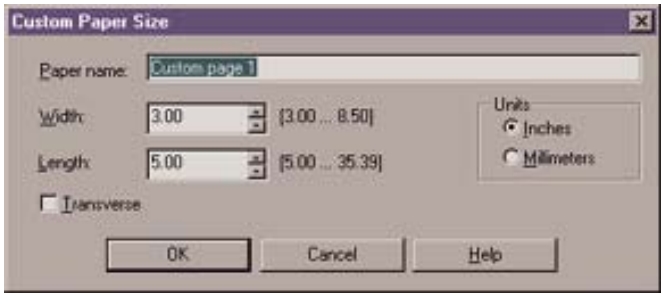
The Print dialog box appears.

5. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
6. On the Paper tab, click Multi-Purpose tray in the Source drop-down list.
7. Click the desired custom page size from the Size drop-down list.
8. Click OK and proceed to print the job.

Modifying a Custom Page Size: Windows 98/95 PS

To modify a Custom Page Size in the Windows 98 & 95 PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties(or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI PS Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Paper tab.
4. In the Size drop-down list, click the custom page size to be modified.
5. Click Custom Size.
   The Custom Paper Size dialog box appears.



6. Make any changes in Paper name, Width, and Length, then click OK.
7. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Duplex Printing: Windows 98/95

General Information

Models equipped with the duplex unit can be used to print on both sides of the paper.

Note: Models C9200dxn and C9400dxn include the duplex unit; Models C9200 and C9200n must have the optional duplex unit installed before they can be used for duplex printing.

To use duplex printing:

- The duplex unit must be activated in the driver.
- Paper must be fed from Tray 1 (or one of the optional Auxiliary Trays or the optional High Capacity Feeder trays)

- Paper weight must be 20 to 28 lb (74 to 108 g/m^2)
- Paper sizes supported:
  - Letter (long or short edge)
  - Legal-14
  - Legal-13.5
  - Legal-13
  - Tabloid
  - Tabloid Extra
  - Executive
  - A3
  - A3 Wide
  - A4 (long or short edge)
  - A5
  - B4
  - B5 (long or short edge).

Note: If you experience significant curling when printing in the duplex mode and you're using 20 or 24-lb. paper, switch to 28-lb. paper.

Duplex Printing from a Software Application: Windows 98/95

Note: If you haven't already done so, before attempting duplex printing you must activate the duplex unit in the driver (PCL, PostScript).

Duplex Printing: Windows 98/95 PCL

1. Open the document in your software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL driver is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Layout tab, then select Long edge ( ) or Short edge ( ) binding under 2-sided printing.
5. Click OK and print the document.

Duplex Printing: Windows 98/95 PS

1. Open the document in your software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript driver is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI PS Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Layout tab.
5. Under 2-sided printings, click your selection of Flip on long edge ( ) or Flip on short

edge ( ) from the drop-down list.

6. Click OK and print the document.

Setting Duplex Printing as the Default: Windows 98/95

Setting Duplex Printing as the Printer Default: Windows 98/95 PCL

To set Duplex printing as the default in the Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver:

1. Change the Duplex setting in the printer menu to ON.
2. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
3. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Layout tab.
5. Under 2-Sided printing, click Long edge ( ) or Short edge ( ) binding from the drop-down list.

   Note: If these items are grayed out, you need to turn the duplex unit on in the driver.

6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Setting Duplex Printing as the Printer Default: Windows 98/95 PS

To set Duplex printing as the default in the Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver:

1. Change the Duplex setting in the printer menu to ON.
2. Click Start → Settings → Printers. *The Printers dialog box appears.*
3. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties. *The OKI PS Properties dialog box appears.*
4. Click the Layout tab.
5. Under 2-sided printings, click your selection of Flip on long edge ( ) or Flip on short edge ( ) from the drop-down list.

   Note: If these items are grayed out, you need to turn the duplex unit on in the driver.

6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Fit to Page: Windows 98/95, PCL Only

This feature allows you to print a document on a different size media by reducing or enlarging it to fit on the page. For example, you can proof a custom-size document on standard size paper, reserving the special custom-size paper for use only for the final printing.

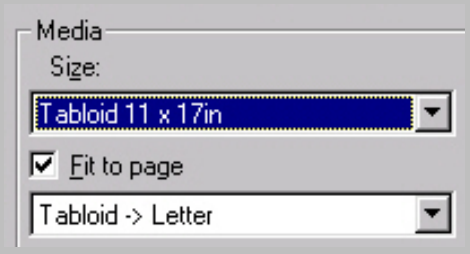
Using Fit to Page:

Note: If the document size is significantly larger than the print media, portions of the edge of the document will be cut off to fit it on the page.

1. With the document you wish to print open in your software application, click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
2. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL driver is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
3. On the Paper tab: if necessary, select the Source, then click the checkbox beside Fit to Page.
   A drop-down list appears below Fit to Page.
4. Under Size, click the paper size representing the document you wish to print, then select the size conversion you wish to use from the drop-down list.

Example

To print a tabloid size document on letter-size paper:



5. Click OK then print the document.

N-Up: Windows 98 & 95

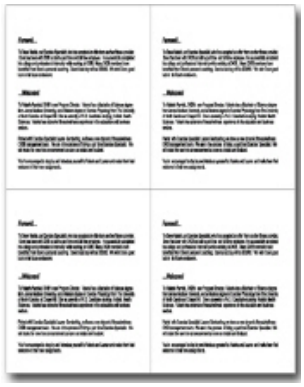
General Information

This feature is handy for saving paper when proofing a multi-page document. You can print up to 16 reduced-size pages on one sheet of paper.

Choices include:

- 2-up
- 4-up
- 6-up
- 9-up
- 16-up

For example, if you select 4-up printing:



- Each page will be reduced to 25% of its original size.
- Four pages will print on each sheet for one-sided printing; eight pages with two-sided (duplex) printing engaged.

N-Up Printing: Windows 98/95 PCL Driver

To print a job using N-Up printing in the Windows 98 & 95 PCL driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Layout tab. Under Finishing Mode, click the number of pages to be printed per sheet.
5. Click your choice from the Page Borders drop-down list
6. Click OK and print the document.

N-Up Printing: Windows 98/95 PostScript Driver

To print a job using N-Up printing in the Windows 98 & 95 PostScript driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click Properties (or Setup. or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Layout tab. Under Pages on Sheet, click the number of pages to be printed per sheet.
5. Click OK and print the document.

Print Resolution: Windows 98 & 95

General Information

The print resolution is set in units of dots per inch (dpi).

Generally, the higher the resolution, the higher the quality of the printed graphic images.

Higher resolutions use up more toner, require larger amounts of disk space for spooling and will increase the time required to print a job. For example, a 1200 dpi x 1200 dpi print job is up to four times the size of a 600 dpi x 600 dpi print job.

Models C9200, C9200n & C9200dxn: PCL & PostScript Modes

Default is in **red bold** print.

Resolution	Use for	Speed
600 x 600 dpi	Proofing	Fast
600 x 1200 dpi	Highest quality images	Slower

Model C9400dxn: PCL Mode

Default is in **red bold** print.

Resolution	Use for	Speed
600 x 600 dpi	Proofing	Fastest
Fast 1200 (600 x 1200 dpi)	Higher quality images	Medium Fast
1200 x 1200 dpi	Highest quality images	Slowest

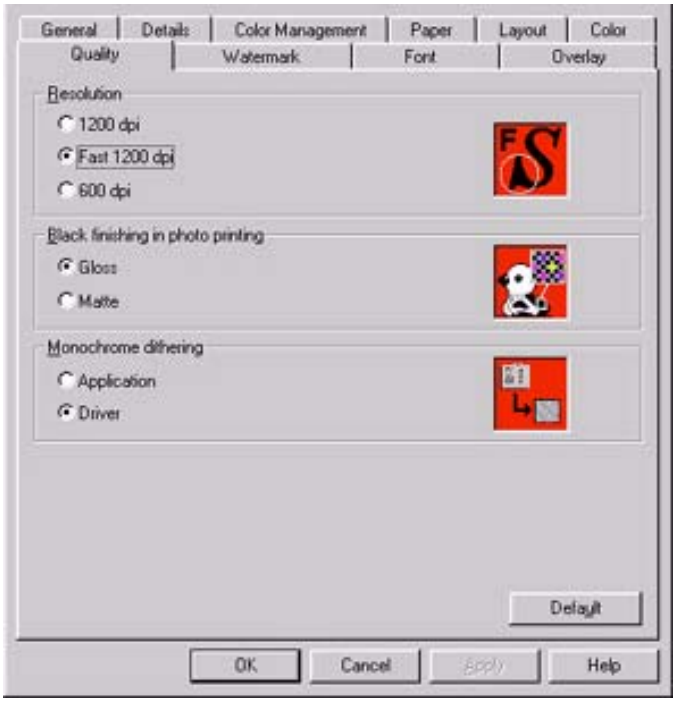
Model C9400dxn: PostScript Mode

Default is in **red bold** print.

Resolution	Use for	Speed
600 x 600 dpi	Proofing	Fastest
1200 x 1200 dpi	Highest quality images	Slowest

Setting the Default Print Resolution: Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Quality tab, then click your resolution selection under Resolution.



4. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Changing the Resolution for a Print Job: Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Quality tab, then click your resolution selection under Resolution.

5. Click OK and print the document.

Setting the Default Print Resolution: Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
   Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties. *The OKI Properties dialog box appears.*
2. Click the Print Quality tab, then click your resolution selection in the Resolution drop-down list.
3. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Changing the Resolution for a Print Job: Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Print Quality tab, then click your resolution selection in the Resolution drop-down list.
5. Click OK and print the document.

Watermarks: Windows 98 & 95

General Information

A watermark is an image superimposed on the pages of a printed document. Normally a watermark is a faint background image, but it can be any color, any intensity.

For example, the word "DRAFT" could be watermarked on a page:

You set the text, size, angle, font color and position of the watermark in the printer driver.

You can insert a watermark on:

- the first page of your document or
- on all pages of your document.

Watermarks: Windows 98/95 PCL Driver

Creating & Storing Watermarks: Windows 98/95 PCL

To create and store a watermark in the Windows 98 & 95 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon , then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Watermarks tab.
4. Type in the text, then select the Size, Angle, Font and Color.
5. Click Add.
   The text appears in the Watermark list box.
6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing using Watermarks: Windows 98/95 PCL

To print a document with watermarks in the Windows 98 & 95 PCL driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.

3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Watermarks tab and select the watermark you wish to use from the Watermark list (or create a new one).
5. To print the watermark only on the first page of the document, click First page only. Otherwise the watermark will print on every page.
6. Click OK and print the document.

Modifying a Watermark: Windows 98/95 PCL

To modify an existing watermark in the Windows 98 & 95 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon and click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Watermarks tab, then click the watermark you wish to change:
4. Make your changes, then click Apply.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Deleting a Watermark: Windows 98/95 PCL

To delete a watermark in the Windows 98 & 95 PCL driver:

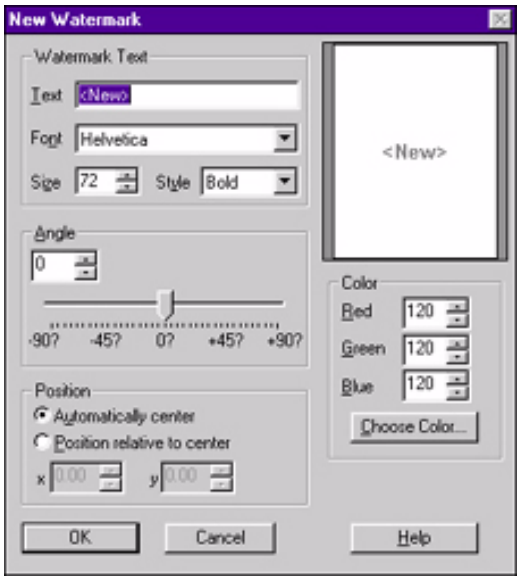
1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Watermarks tab, then click the watermark you wish to delete.
4. Click Remove then confirm the deletion by clicking Yes.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Watermarks: Windows 98/95 PostScript Driver

Creating & Storing Watermarks: Windows 98/95 PS

To create and store a watermark in the Windows 98 & 95 PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Watermarks tab.
4. Click New.
   The New Watermark dialog box appears.



5. Type in the text, then select the Font, Size, Style, Angle, Position and Color.
6. Click OK twice and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Using a Watermark: Windows 98/95 PS

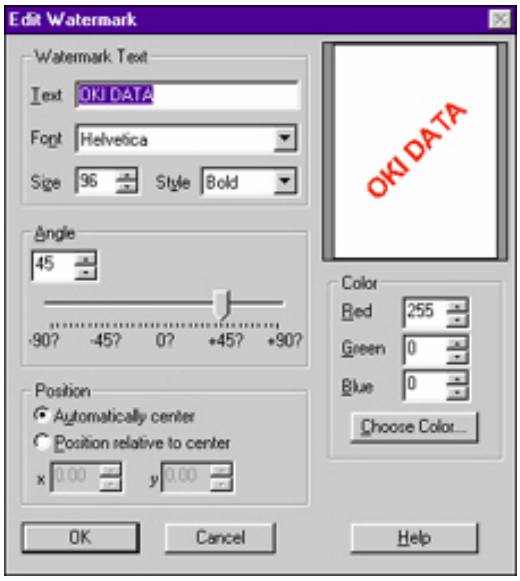
To print a document with watermarks in the Windows 98 & 95 PostScript driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Watermarks tab and select the watermark you wish to use from the Watermark list (or create a new one).
5. Select where and how the watermark is to be printed under Print Watermark.
6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Modifying a Watermark: Windows 98/95 PS

To modify an existing watermark in the Windows 98 & 95 PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon and click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Watermarks tab and select the watermark you wish to modify.
4. Click Edit.
   The Edit Watermark dialog box appears.



5. Make your changes, then click OK.
6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Deleting a Watermark: Windows 98/95 PS

To delete a watermark in the Windows 98 & 95 PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon and click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Watermarks tab and select the watermark you wish to delete.
4. Click Delete and confirm the deletion.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Windows NT 4.0

Booklets (Signature Printing): Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver

Note: Booklet printing is available only for the PCL driver.

General Information

Important! In order to print booklets, your printer must be equipped with the duplex unit (standard on Models C9200dxn and C9400dxn, optional on Models C9200 and C9200n) and the duplex unit must be activated in the driver (see "Activate the Duplex Unit in the Driver ") and in the printer menu (see "Turning the Duplex Unit On in the Menu ").

Note: Some software applications do not support booklet printing.

Printing booklets allows you to print multiple pages on a single sheet—printing on both sides—then fold the paper in half to form a booklet.

Example

If your document pages are 5.5" x 8.5" (portrait), you can set the printer up to print four pages (landscape) per 8.5" x 11" sheet which would then be folded over to form a 5.5" x 8.5" (portrait) booklet:

Booklets, Individual Print Jobs: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

To print a file as a booklet using the Windows NT 4.0 PCL driver:

1. Load paper, print side down, in Tray 1.

   Note: The Multi-Purpose Tray, Auxiliary Trays and High Capacity Feeder can *not* be used for printing booklets.

2. In your software application, open the file you wish to print.
3. Click File → Print and make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Layout tab. Under Finishing mode, select Booklet from the drop-down list.
5. If necessary, select the appropriate Signature from the drop-down list (normally No limit is used).

   Note: The term signature refers to the number of pages in the document to be included in the booklet, and does not refer to the traditional printer's signature (imposition). Generally, the setting for this should be left at No limit so that all the pages in the document will be printed.

6. Click OK and print the document.

Setting Booklets as the Printer Default: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

To set booklet printing up as the printer default in the Windows NT 4.0 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Default dialog box appears.
3. Click the Layout tab. Under Finishing mode, select Booklet from the drop-down list.
4. If necessary, select the appropriate Signature from the drop-down list (normally No limit is used).

   Note: The term signature refers to the number of pages in the document to be included in the booklet, and does not refer to the traditional printer's signature (imposition). Generally, the setting for this should be left at No limit so that all the pages in the document will be printed.

5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Collating: Windows NT 4.0

General Information

Collated printing allows you to print multiple copies of a document as a series of individual documents, as opposed to printing multiple copies of each page of the document then manually collating the pages into documents.

Important! If you are using duplex printing with collating:

1. Select collated printing in your software application.

2. Select the number of copies in the driver (click Properties [or your application's equivalent] in the Print dialog box and set the number of copies in the driver for the Windows 2000 PCL driver, you must set the number of copies in the Paper tab, not the General tab).

If your software application has a collated print option, use the software to select collated printing rather than the printer driver. See your software application documentation for information on how to do this.

If your software application does not have a collated printing option, you'll need to select it using the printer driver.

Collating: Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver

Printing using Collating: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

To print a job using collating in the Windows NT 4.0 PCL driver:

1. In the software application, open the file to be printed.

2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.

> **Important!**
>
> **If your application has a collate feature select it here.**
>
> **If you are using duplex printing, select the number of copies in the driver (see step 4).**

3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears:
4. On the Paper tab under Copies, enter the number of copies to be made. If your application does *not* have a collate feature, click Printer collate.
5. Click OK and print the document.

Setting Collate as the Default: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

To set collate as the default in the Windows NT 4.0 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Default dialog box appears:
3. On the Paper tab under Copies, enter the number of copies to be made and click Printer collate.
4. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Collating: Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver

Printing using Collating: Windows NT 4.0 PS

To print a job using collating in the Windows NT 4.0 PostScript driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.

> **Important! If your application has a collate feature select it here. If you are using duplex printing, select the number of copies in the driver (see step 4)**

3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Under Paper/Output, click Copy Count and enter the number of copies to be printed under Change 'Copy Count' Setting.
5. If your application does *not* have the collate feature, scroll down to Collate and click it,

then click Yes under Change 'Collate' Setting.

6. Click OK and print the document.

Setting Collate as the Default: Windows NT 4.0 PS

To set collate as the default in the Windows NT 4.0 PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon and click Document Default.
   The OKI Default dialog box appears.
3. Under Paper/Output, click Copy Count and enter the number of copies to be printed under Change 'Copy Count' Setting:
4. Click Collate, then click Yes under Change 'Collate' Setting:
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Custom Page Sizes: Windows NT 4.0

General Information

To print custom page sizes, you must:

- Use the Multi-Purpose Tray
- Use the Straight-Through Exit path
- Use a Custom Page Size defined in the printer driver:
- Width range 3 to 12.9 inches (76 to 328 mm)
- Length range 5 to 18 inches (127 to 457 mm)

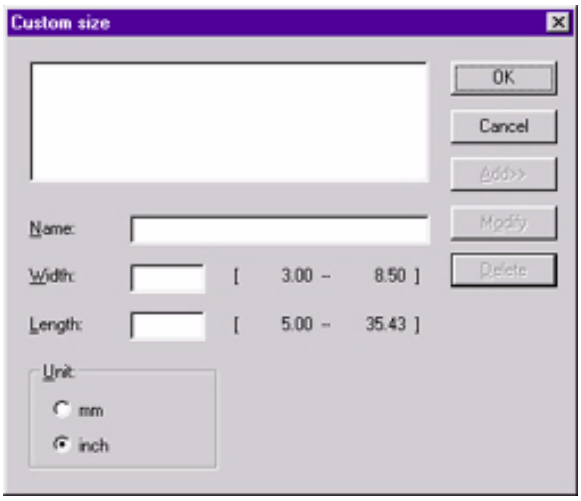
Custom Page Sizes: Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver

Creating and Storing a Custom Page Size: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

Note: You can save up to 32 Custom Page Sizes.

To set up a Custom Page Size in the Windows NT 4.0 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Default dialog box appears.
3. Click Custom size.
   The Custom size dialog box appears:



4. Select a Unit of measure, then enter the Width and Length you wish to use.
5. Enter a Name (up to 12 characters) for the custom page size, then click Add.
   The name appears in the box.
6. Click OK.
   The name you entered now appears at the end of the Media Size drop-down list.
7. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Using a Custom Page Size: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

To print using a Custom Page Size in the Windows NT 4.0 PCL driver:

1. Open the document in your software application.
2. Load the custom print media in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

3. Make sure the straight-through exit tray is open.

4. From your software application, select File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
5. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
6. On the Paper tab, click the M in the illustration (or click Multi purpose tray in the Source drop-down list).
7. Under Size, click the appropriate custom page size name.
8. Click OK and print the document.

Setting a Custom Page Size as the Default: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

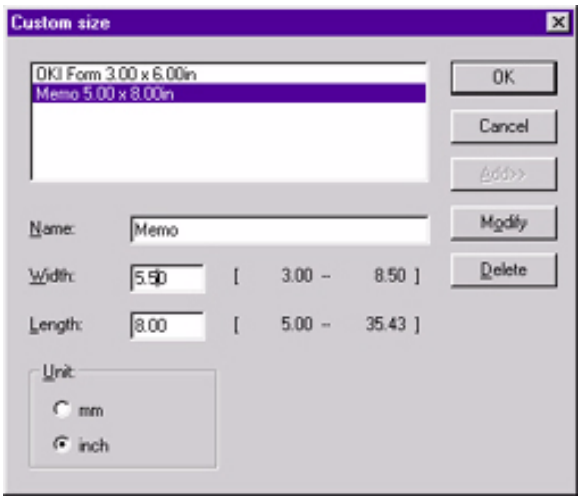
If you wish to set a Custom Page Size as the default in the NT 4.0 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Default dialog box appears.
3. Click the M in the illustration or click Multi purpose tray in the Source drop-down list.
4. Click the appropriate custom page size name from the Media Size drop-down list.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Modifying a Custom Page Size: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

To change the size or name of an established Custom Page Size in the NT 4.0 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Default dialog box appears.
3. Click Custom size.
   The Custom size dialog box appears.
4. In the box, click the name of the custom size you wish to modify, then make any changes.

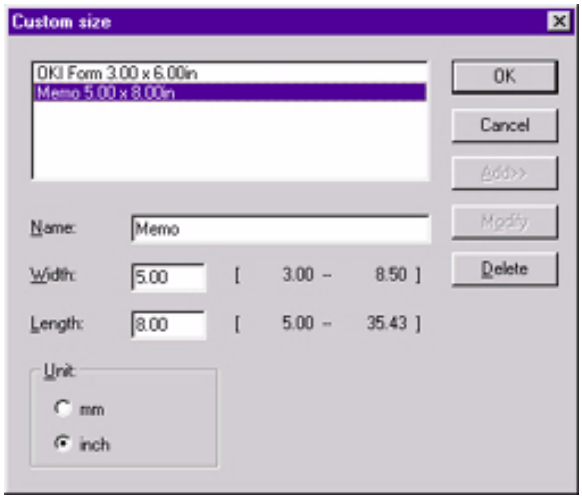


5. Click Modify.
   The changes are reflected in the box.
6. Click OK twice, then close the Printers dialog box.

Deleting a Custom Page Size: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

To delete a Custom Page Size in the Windows NT 4.0 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Default dialog box appears.
3. Click Custom size.
   The Custom size dialog box appears.
4. In the box, click the name of the custom size you wish to delete.



5. Click Delete, then click Yes to confirm the deletion.
6. Click OK twice, then close the Printers dialog box.

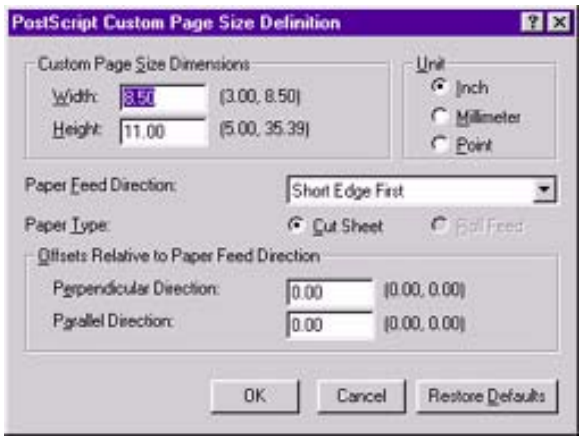
Custom Page Sizes: Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver

Creating the Default Custom Page Size: Windows NT 4.0 PS

Note: In the PostScript driver, you can set up one Custom Page Size in the driver to save for future use.

To create a Custom Page Size in the Windows NT 4.0 PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Default dialog box appears.
3. Click Paper Size, and select PostScript Custom Page Size from the Change 'Paper Size' Setting drop-down list.
4. Click Edit of Custom Paper.
   The PostScript Custom Page Size Definition dialog box appears:



5. Select a Paper Feed Direction:

   Notes

   Maximum width for Long Edge First is 12.9 inches.

   Paper length must be greater than the paper width.

   - Long Edge First = media feeds in long edge first
   - Short Edge First = media feeds in short edge first
   - Long Edge First (flipped) = Reserved for future use.
   - Short Edge First (flipped) = Reserved for future use.
6. Select a Unit of measure, then enter the Width and Height you wish to use.
7. Click OK.
8. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

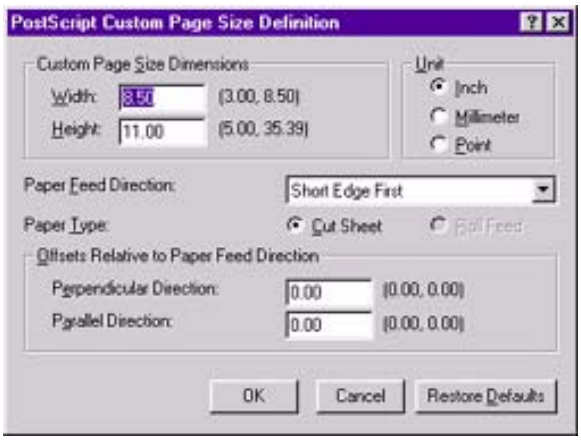
Printing Using a Custom Page Size: Windows NT 4.0 PS

To print using a Custom Page Size in the Windows NT 4.0 PostScript driver:

1. Open the document in your software application.
2. Load the custom print media in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

3. Make sure the straight-through exit is open.

4. From your software application, select File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
5. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click Properties (or Setup, or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
6. Click Paper Size, then select PostScript Custom Page Size from the Change 'Paper Size' Setting drop-down list.
7. To modify the custom page size or to view the current settings, click Edit of Custom Paper.
   The PostScript Custom Page Size Definition dialog box appears:

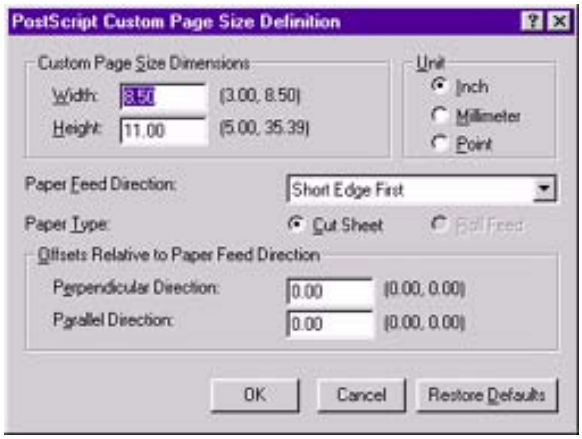


8. Make any changes, then click OK.
9. Click OK twice and print the document.

Modifying the Default Custom Page Size: Windows NT 4.0 PS

To modify the default Custom Page Size in the Windows NT 4.0 PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Default dialog box appears.
3. Click Paper Size, and select PostScript Custom Page Size from the Change 'Paper Size' Setting list.
4. Click Edit of Custom Paper.
   The PostScript Custom Page Size Definition dialog box appears:



5. Make any changes you wish to make in the settings, then click OK.
6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Duplex Printing: Windows NT 4.0

General Information

Models equipped with the duplex unit can be used to print on both sides of the paper.

Note: Models C9200dxn and C9400dxn include the duplex unit; Models C9200 and C9200n must have the optional duplex unit installed before they can be used for duplex printing.

To use duplex printing:

- The duplex unit must be activated in the driver.
- Paper must be fed from Tray 1 (or one of the optional Auxiliary Trays or the optional High Capacity Feeder trays)
- Paper weight must be 20 to 28 lb (74 to 108 g/m^2)
- Paper sizes supported:
  - Letter (long or short edge)
  - Legal-14
  - Legal-13.5
  - Legal-13
  - Tabloid
  - Tabloid Extra
  - Executive
  - A3
  - A3 Wide
  - A4 (long or short edge)
  - A5
  - B4
  - B5 (long or short edge).

Note: If you experience significant curling when printing in the duplex mode and you're using 20 or 24-lb. paper, switch to 28-lb. paper.

Duplex Printing from a Software Application: Windows NT 4.0

Note: If you haven't already done so, before attempting duplex printing you must activate the duplex unit in the driver (PCL, PostScript).

Duplex Printing: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

1. Open the document in your software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the C9200 or C9400 PCL driver is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears:
4. Click the Layout tab.

5. Select Long edge ( ) or Short edge ( ) binding under 2-sided printing.
6. Click OK and print the document.

Duplex Printing: Windows NT 4.0 PS

1. Open the document in your software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the C9200 or C9400 PostScript driver is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Scroll down to Layout and click 2-Sided Printing, then select either Long Side ( ) or Short Side ( ) binding under Change '2-Sided Printing' Setting.

   Note: If 2-Sided Printing is grayed out, you need to activate the duplex unit in the driver.

5. Click OK and print the document.

Duplex Printing as the Default: Windows NT 4.0

Setting Duplex Printing as the Default: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

To set Duplex printing as the default in the Windows NT 4.0 PCL driver:

1. Make sure duplex printing is turned on in the Printer menu.
2. Click Start → Settings → Printer.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
3. Right click the OKI C9300 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Default dialog box appears.
4. Click the Layout tab.
5. Select Long edge ( ) or Short edge () binding in the 2-sided printing drop-down list.

   Note: If these items are grayed out, you need to turn the duplex unit on in the driver.

6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Setting Duplex Printing as the Default: Windows NT 4.0 PS

To set Duplex printing as the default in the Windows NT 4.0 PostScript driver:

1. Make sure duplex printing is turned on in the printer menu.
2. Click Start → Settings → Printer.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
3. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Defaults dialog box appears.

4. Scroll down to Layout and click 2-Sided Printing, then select either Long Side ( ) or Short Side ( ) binding under Change '2-Sided Printing' Setting.

   Note: If 2-Sided Printing is grayed out, you need to activate the duplex unit in the driver.

5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Fit to Page: Windows NT 4.0, PCL Only

This feature allows you to print a document on a different size media by reducing or enlarging it to fit on the page. For example, you can proof a custom-size document on standard size paper, reserving the special custom-size paper for use only for the final printing.

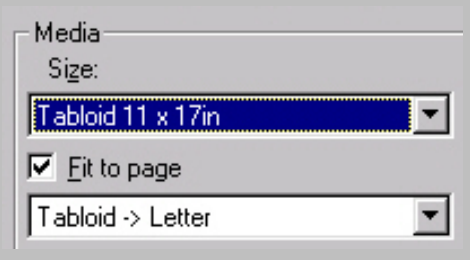
Using Fit to Page:

Note: If the document size is significantly larger than the print media, portions of the edge of the document will be cut off to fit it on the page.

1. With the document you wish to print open in your software application, click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
2. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL driver is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
3. On the Paper tab: if necessary, select the Source, then click the checkbox beside Fit to Page.
   A drop-down list appears below Fit to Page.
4. Under Size, click the paper size representing the document you wish to print, then select the size conversion you wish to use from the drop-down list.

Example

To print a tabloid size document on letter-size paper:



5. Click OK then print the document.

N-Up: Windows NT 4.0

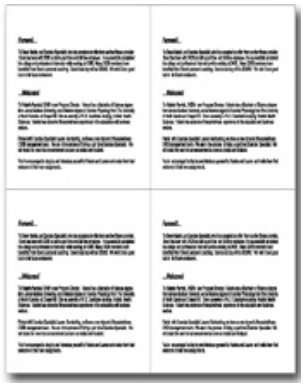
General Information

This feature is handy for saving paper when proofing a multi-page document. You can print up to 16 reduced-size pages on one sheet of paper.

Choices include:

- 2-up
- 4-up
- 6-up
- 9-up
- 16-up

For example, if you select 4-up printing:



- Each page will be reduced to 25% of its original size.
- Four pages will print on each sheet for one-sided printing; eight pages with two-sided (duplex) printing engaged.

N-Up Printing: Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver

To print a job using N-Up printing in the Windows NT 4.0 PCL driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL driver is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Layout tab. Under Finishing Mode, select the number of pages you wish to print on each sheet from the Pages per sheet drop-down list.
5. Click your choice from the Page Borders drop-down list.
6. Click OK and print the document.

N-Up Printing: Windows NT 4.0 PS

To print a job using N-Up printing in the Windows NT 4.0 PostScript driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print. *The Print dialog box appears.*
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript driver is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent). *The OKI Document Properties dialog box appears:*
4. Scroll down to Page Layout (N-up) Option, then click it. Click the number of pages you wish to print on a page under Change 'Page Layout (N-Up) Option' Setting.
5. Click OK and print the document.

Print Resolution: Windows NT 4.0

General Information

The print resolution is set in units of dots per inch (dpi).

Generally, the higher the resolution, the higher the quality of the printed graphic images.

Higher resolutions use up more toner, require larger amounts of disk space for spooling and will increase the time required to print a job. For example, a 1200 dpi x 1200 dpi print job is up to four times the size of a 600 dpi x 600 dpi print job.

Models C9200, C9200n & C9200dxn: PCL & PostScript Modes

Default is in **red bold** print.

Resolution	Use for	Speed
600 x 600 dpi	Proofing	Fast
600 x 1200 dpi	Highest quality images	Slower

Model C9400dxn: PCL Mode

Default is in **red bold** print.

Resolution	Use for	Speed
600 x 600 dpi	Proofing	Fastest
Fast 1200 (600 x 1200 dpi)	Higher quality images	Medium Fast
1200 x 1200 dpi	Highest quality images	Slowest

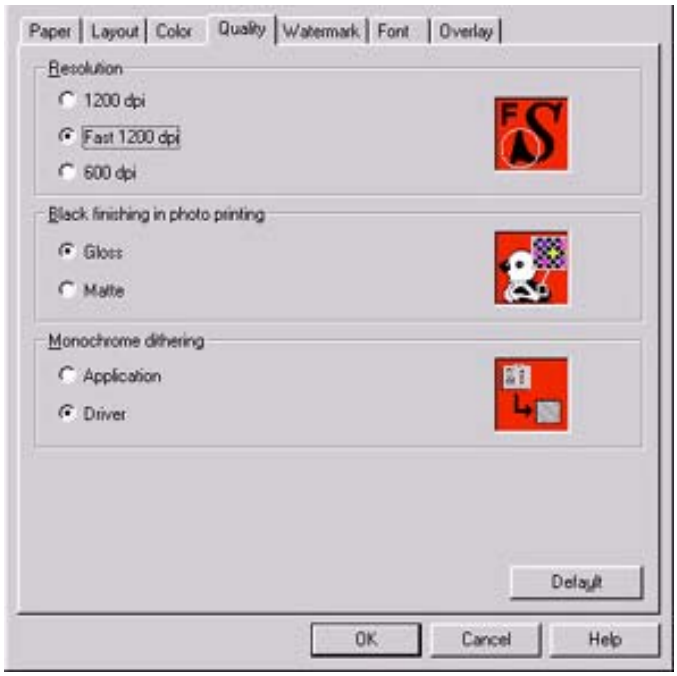
Model C9400dxn: PostScript Mode

Default is in **red bold** print.

Resolution	Use for	Speed
600 x 600 dpi	Proofing	Fastest
1200 x 1200 dpi	Highest quality images	Slowest

Setting the Default Print Resolution: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

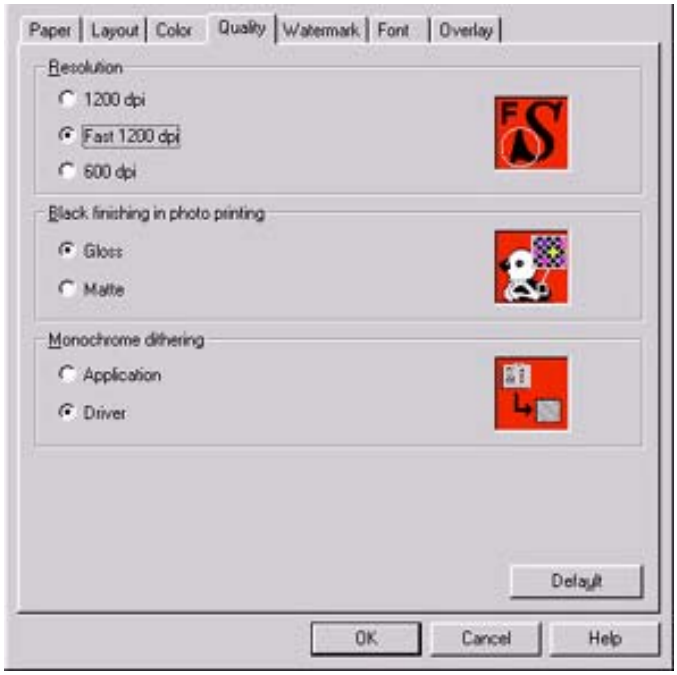
1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Default dialog box appears.
3. Click the Quality tab, then click your resolution selection under Resolution.



4. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Changing the Resolution for a Print Job: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Quality tab, then click your resolution selection under Resolution.



5. Click OK and print the document.

Setting the Default Print Resolution: Windows NT 4.0 PS

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Default dialog box appears.
3. Scroll down to Quality, then click Resolution.
4. Click your selection under Change 'Resolution' Setting.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Changing the Resolution for a Print Job: Windows NT 4.0 PS

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Scroll down to Quality, then click Resolution.
5. Click your selection under Change 'Resolution' Setting.
6. Click OK and print the document.

Watermarks: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

Note: Watermarks can only be printed in Windows NT 4.0 using the PCL driver.

General Information

A watermark is an image superimposed on the pages of a printed document. Normally a watermark is a faint background image, but it can be any color, any intensity.

For example, the word "DRAFT" could be watermarked on a page:

You set the text, size, angle, font color and position of the watermark in the printer driver.

You can insert a watermark on:

- the first page of your document or
- on all pages of your document.

Creating Watermarks: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

To create a watermark

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Default dialog box appears.
3. Click the Watermark tab.
4. Type in the text, then select the Size, Angle, Font and Color.
5. Click Add. *The text appears in the Watermark list box:*
6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Using a Watermark: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

To print a document with a watermark:

1. Open the document in the software application.

2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Watermark tab and select the watermark you wish to use from the Watermark list (or create a new one).
5. To print the watermark only on the first page of the document, click First page only. Otherwise the watermark will print on every page.
6. Click OK and print the document.

Modifying a Watermark: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

To edit an existing watermark:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Default dialog box appears.
3. Click the Watermark tab, then click the watermark you wish to change:
4. Make your changes, then click Apply.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Deleting a Watermark: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

To delete a watermark:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Default dialog box appears.
3. Click the Watermark tab.
4. Click the watermark you wish to delete, then click Remove.
5. Click Yes to confirm the removal.
6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Proof & Print

General Information

Note: Proof & Print is not available for the Macintosh®.

- Proof & Print allows printing a single copy of a document for checking before printing multiple copies of the same document.
- Proof & Print automatically collates the printed copies.
- Proof & Print requires that the printer be equipped with the internal hard disk drive (standard on Models C9200n, C9200dxn and C9400dxn; optional on Model C9200)

Important! If the software application being used has a collate option, it must be turned off. If you do not turn off the collate option in the application, it will override the Proof & Print feature and print out all the copies.

Proof & Print: Windows 2000 PCL Driver

Note: Proof & Print can only be done in the Windows 2000 PCL driver, not the Windows PostScript driver.

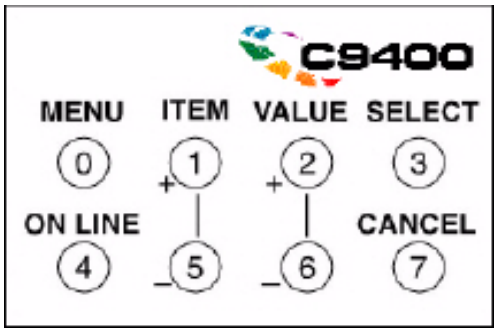
Printing a Document Using Proof & Print

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected and the application's collate feature is turned off, then click the Paper tab.
4. Under Copies, select the number of copies you wish to print, then select Proof and Print as the Job type.
   The Job PIN dialog box appears:

Note: If Job Type is grayed out, click Device options and click Printer hard disk, then click OK.

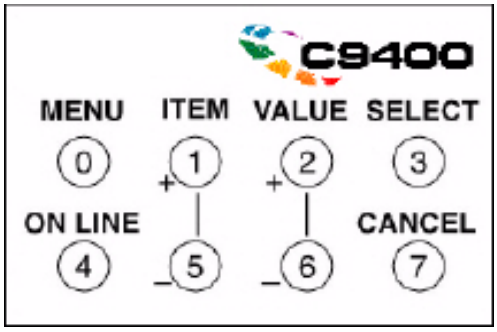
5. Under Job name setting, enter a Job name having up to 16 characters.
6. Enter the four-digit password (PIN) assigned to you by your network administrator, or create one using any combination of numeric characters 0 through 7 (8 and 9 cannot be used).
7. Click OK, then click Print.
   A proof of the document prints.

Print the Remaining Copies



1. Press MENU.
   PRINT JOBS MENU *appears on the display.*
2. Press SELECT and enter your personal ID (PIN) number using the control panel buttons.
   SELECT JOB ALL JOBS *appears on the display.*
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the name of the job you wish to print appears.
4. Press SELECT.
   The document prints and is deleted from the printer's hard drive.
5. The printer goes back on line.

To Delete a Proof & Print Document before Printing the Remaining Copies



1. Press MENU.
   PRINT JOBS MENU
   appears on the display.
2. Press SELECT and enter your personal ID (PIN) number using the control panel buttons.
   SELECT JOB ALL JOBS
   appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the name of the job you wish to delete appears.
4. Press CANCEL.
   DELETE THE JOB
   YES=SELECT/NO=CANCEL
   appears on the display.
5. To delete the job, press SELECT. Otherwise, press CANCEL.
   The printer goes back on line.

Proof & Print: Windows Me

Proof & Print: Windows Me PCL Driver

To print a proof using the Windows Me PCL driver:

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected and the application's collate feature is turned off, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. On the Paper tab, under Copies. select the number of copies you wish to print, then select Proof and Print as the Job Type.
   The Job PIN dialog box appears.

Note: If Job Type is grayed out, click Device options and click Printer hard disk, then click OK.

5. Under Job name setting, enter a Job name having up to 16 characters.
6. Enter the four-digit password (PIN) assigned to you by your network administrator, or create one using any combination of numeric characters 0 through 7 (8 and 9 cannot be used).
7. Click OK twice and print the document.

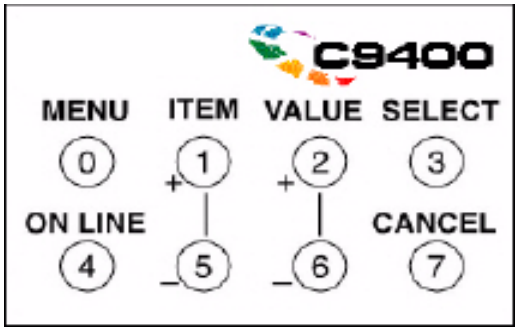
Proof & Print: Windows Me PostScript Driver

To print a proof using the Windows Me PostScript driver:

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected and the application's collate feature is turned off, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. On the Paper tab, under Copies:
   a. Select the number of copies you wish to print.
   b. If applicable, click Collate.
   c. Select Proof and print as the Job type.
   The JOB PIN dialog box appears.

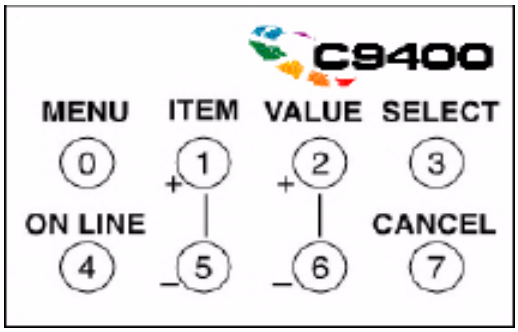
5. Under Job Name Setting, enter a Job Name having up to 16 characters.
6. Enter the four-digit password (PIN) assigned to you by your network administrator, or create one using any combination of numeric characters 0 through 7 (8 and 9 cannot be used).
7. Click OK twice and print the document.

Printing the Remaining Copies



1. Press MENU.
   PRINT JOBS MENU
   appears on the display.
2. Press SELECT and enter your personal ID (PIN) number using the control panel buttons.
   SELECT JOB ALL JOBS
   appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the name of the job you wish to print appears.
4. Press SELECT.
   The document prints and is deleted from the printer's hard drive. The printer goes back on line.

Deleting the Job without Printing the Remaining Copies



1. Press MENU.
   PRINT JOBS MENU
   appears on the display.
2. Press SELECT and enter your personal ID (PIN) number using the control panel buttons.
   SELECT JOB ALL JOBS
   appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the name of the job you wish to delete appears.
4. Press CANCEL.
   DELETE THE JOB
   YES=SELECT/NO=CANCEL
   appears on the display.
5. To delete the job, press SELECT. Otherwise, press CANCEL.
   The printer goes back on line.

Proof & Print: Windows 98 & 95

Proof & Print: Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver

To print a proof using the Windows 98/95 PCL driver:

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected and the application's collate feature is turned off, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. On the Paper tab, under Copies:
   a. Select the number of copies you wish to print.

   Note: If Job Type is grayed out, click Device options and click Printer hard disk, then click OK.

   b. Select Proof and Print as the Job Type. *The Job PIN dialog box appears.*

5. Under Job name setting, enter a Job name having up to 16 characters.
6. Enter the four-digit password (PIN) assigned to you by your network administrator, or create one using any combination of numeric characters 0 through 7 (8 and 9 cannot be used).
7. Click OK twice and print the document.

Proof & Print: Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver

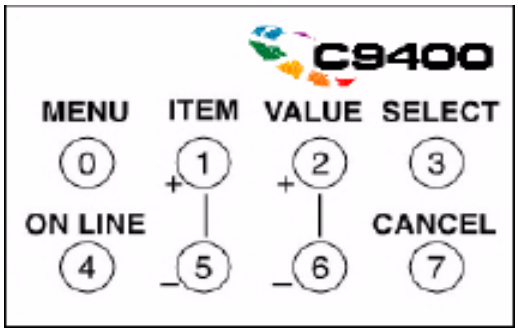
To print a proof using the Windows 98/95 PostScript driver:

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected and the application's collate feature is turned off, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. On the Paper tab, under Copies:
   a. Select the number of copies you wish to print.
   b. If applicable, click Collate.
   c. Select Proof and print as the Job type.
   The JOB PIN dialog box appears.

5. Under Job Name Setting, enter a Job Name having up to 16 characters.

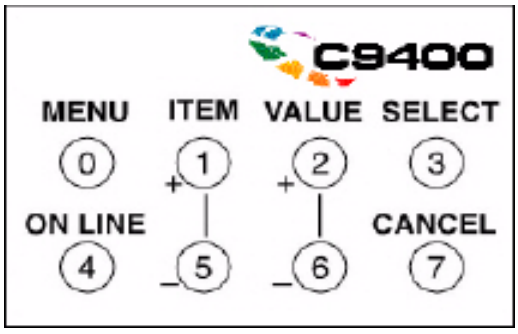
6. Enter the four-digit password (PIN) assigned to you by your network administrator, or create one using any combination of numeric characters 0 through 7 (8 and 9 cannot be used).
7. Click OK twice and print the document.

Printing the Remaining Copies



1. Press MENU.
   PRINT JOBS MENU
   appears on the display.
2. Press SELECT and enter your personal ID (PIN) number using the control panel buttons.
   SELECT JOB ALL JOBS
   appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the name of the job you wish to print appears.
4. Press SELECT.
   The document prints and is deleted from the printer's hard drive. The printer goes back on line.

Deleting the Job without Printing the Remaining Copies



1. Press MENU.
   PRINT JOBS MENU

appears on the display.

2. Press SELECT and enter your personal ID (PIN) number using the control panel buttons.
   SELECT JOB ALL JOBS
   appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the name of the job you wish to delete appears.
4. Press CANCEL.
   DELETE THE JOB
   YES=SELECT/NO=CANCE
   appears on the display.
5. To delete the job, press SELECT. Otherwise, press CANCEL.
   The printer goes back on line.

Proof & Print: Windows NT 4.0

Proof & Print: Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver

To print a proof using the Windows NT 4.0 PCL driver:

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected and the application's collate feature is turned off, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. On the Paper tab, under Copies:
   a. Select the number of copies you wish to print.

> **Note:** If Job Type is grayed out, click Device options and click Printer hard disk, then click OK.

   b. Select Proof and Print as the Job Type.
   The Job PIN dialog box appears.

5. Under Job Name Setting, enter a job name having up to 16 characters.
6. Enter the four-digit password (PIN) assigned to you by your network administrator, or create one using any combination of numeric characters 0 through 7 (8 and 9 cannot be

used).

7. Click OK twice and print the document.

Proof & Print: Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver

To print a proof using the Windows NT 4.0 PostScript driver:

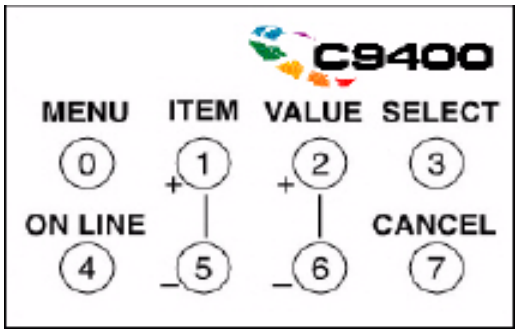
1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected and the application's collate feature is turned off, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Under Paper/Output:
   a. Click Copy Count and select the number of copies you wish to print.

> **Note:** If Job Type is grayed out, click Start → Settings → Printers; right-click the printer icon, then click Properties. Click the Device Settings tab, then scroll down to Installable Options. Click Hard Disk and select Installed, then click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

   b. Click Job Type and select Proof and print under Change 'Job Type' Setting.
   The JOB PIN dialog box appears.

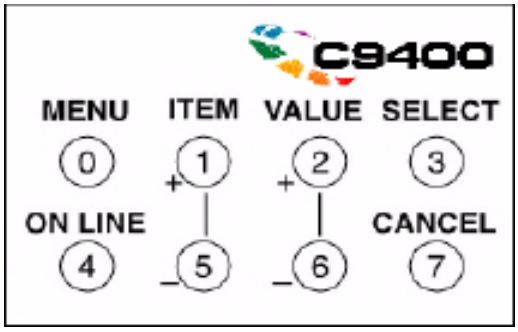
5. Under Job Name Setting, enter a Job Name having up to 16 characters.
6. Enter the four-digit password (PIN) assigned to you by your network administrator, or create one using any combination of numeric characters 0 through 7 (8 and 9 cannot be used).
7. Click OK twice and print the document.

Printing the Remaining Copies



1. Press MENU.
   PRINT JOBS MENU
   appears on the display.
2. Press SELECT and enter your personal ID (PIN) number using the control panel buttons.
   SELECT JOB ALL JOBS
   appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the name of the job you wish to print appears.
4. Press SELECT.
   The document prints and is deleted from the printer's hard drive.
5. The printer goes back on line.

Deleting the Job without Printing the Remaining Copies



1. Press MENU. PRINT JOBS MENU *appears on the display.*
2. Press SELECT and enter your personal ID (PIN) number using the control panel buttons. SELECT JOB ALL JOBS *appears on the display.*
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the name of the job you wish to delete appears.
4. Press CANCEL. DELETE THE JOB YES=SELECT/NO=CANCEL *appears on the display.*
5. To delete the job, press SELECT. Otherwise, press CANCEL. *The printer goes back on line.*

Secure Documents

General Information

Secure printing enables you to store a confidential document on the printer's internal hard disk drive, with password-only access.

When you are ready to print the document, simply go to the printer and enter your password. Once it has been printed, the document will automatically be deleted from the printer's memory.

To use Secure Printing:

- The printer must be equipped with the internal hard disk drive (standard on Models C9200n, C9200dxn and C9400dxn, optional on Model C9200)
- If the software application being used has a collate option, it must be turned off.

Note: Secure Printing is not available for the Macintosh.

Secure (Confidential) Documents: Windows 2000 PCL Driver

Note: Secure Printing can only be done in the Windows 2000 PCL driver.

Send a Confidential Document to the Printer

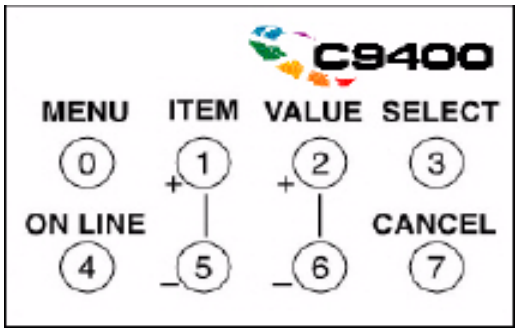
1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click the Paper tab.
4. Under Copies:
   a. Select the number of copies you wish to print.

   Note: If Job Type is grayed out, click Device options and click Printer hard disk, then click OK.

   b. Select Secure print as the Job type.
   The Job PIN dialog box appears.

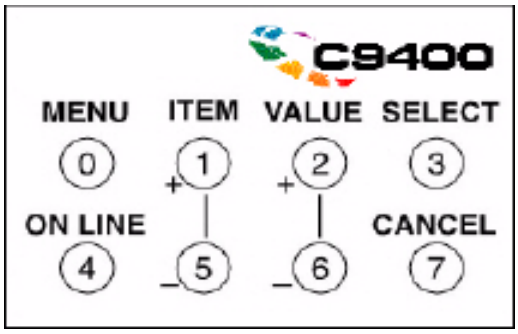
5. Under Job Name setting, enter a Job Name having up to 16 characters.
6. Enter the four-digit password (PIN) assigned to you by your network administrator, or create one using any combination of numeric characters 0 through 7 (8 and 9 cannot be used).
7. Click OK and print the document. *The document processes and downloads to the printer's hard drive.*

Print out a Confidential Document



1. Press MENU.
   PRINT JOBS MENU
   appears on the display.
2. Press SELECT and enter your personal ID (PIN) number using the control panel buttons.
   SELECT JOB ALL JOBS
   appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the name of the job you wish to print appears.
4. Press SELECT.
   The document prints and is deleted from the printer's hard drive.
5. The printer goes back on line.

To Delete a Confidential Document before Printing It



1. Press MENU.
   PRINT JOBS MENU
   appears on the display.
2. Press SELECT and enter your personal ID (PIN) number using the control panel buttons.
   SELECT JOB ALL JOBS
   appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the name of the job you wish to delete appears.
4. Press CANCEL.
   DELETE THE JOB
   YES=SELECT/NO=CANCEL
   appears on the display.
5. To delete the job, press SELECT. Otherwise, press CANCEL.
   The printer goes back on line.

Secure (Confidential) Documents: Windows Me

Confidential Documents: Windows Me PCL Driver

To send a confidential document to the printer using the Windows Me PCL driver:

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. On the Paper tab, under Copies:
   a. Select the number of copies you wish to print.

   Note: If Job Type is grayed out, click Device options and click Printer hard disk, then click OK.

   b. Select Secure print as the Job type.
   The Job PIN dialog box appears.

5. Under Job name setting, enter a Job name having up to 16 characters.
6. Enter the four-digit password (PIN) assigned to you by your network administrator, or create one using any combination of numeric characters 0 through 7 (8 and 9 cannot be used).
7. Click OK twice and print the document.
   The document processes and downloads to the printer's hard drive.

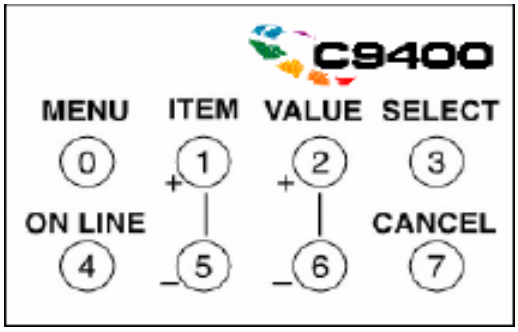
Confidential Documents: Windows Me PostScript Driver

To send a confidential document to the printer using the Windows Me PostScript driver:

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. On the Paper tab, under Copies:
   a. Select the number of copies you wish to print.
   b. If applicable, click Collate.
   c. Select Secure print as the Job type.
      The JOB PIN dialog box appears.

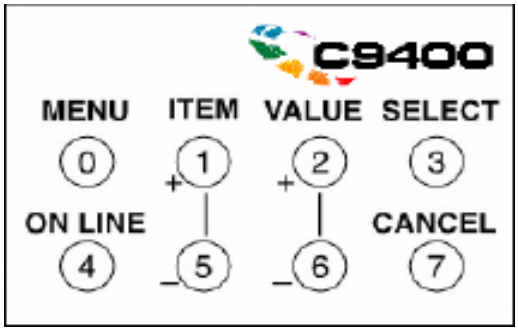
5. Under Job Name Setting, enter a Job Name having up to 16 characters.
6. Enter the four-digit password (PIN) assigned to you by your network administrator, or create one using any combination of numeric characters 0 through 7 (8 and 9 cannot be used).
7. Click OK twice and print the document.
   The document processes and downloads to the printer's hard drive.

Printing the Confidential Document



1. Press MENU.
   PRINT JOBS MENU
   appears on the display.
2. Press SELECT and enter your personal ID (PIN) number using the control panel buttons.
   SELECT JOB ALL JOBS
   appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the name of the job you wish to print appears.
4. Press SELECT.
   The document prints and is deleted from the printer's hard drive.
5. The printer goes back on line.

Deleting the Job without Printing It



1. Press MENU.
   PRINT JOBS MENU
   appears on the display.
2. Press SELECT and enter your personal ID (PIN) number using the control panel buttons.
   SELECT JOB ALL JOB
   appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the name of the job you wish to delete appears.
4. Press CANCEL.
   DELETE THE JOB
   YES=SELECT/NO=CANCEL
   appears on the display.
5. To delete the job, press SELECT. Otherwise, press CANCEL.
   The printer goes back on line.

Secure (Confidential) Documents: Windows 98 & 95

Confidential Documents: Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver

To send a confidential document to the printer using the Windows 98 & 95 PCL driver:

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. On the Paper tab, under Copies:
   a. Select the number of copies you wish to print.

> **Note:** If Job Type is grayed out, click Device options and click Printer hard disk, then click OK.

   b. Select Secure print as the Job type.
   The Job PIN dialog box appears.

5. Under Job name setting, enter a Job name having up to 16 characters.
6. Enter the four-digit password (PIN) assigned to you by your network administrator, or create one using any combination of numeric characters 0 through 7 (8 and 9 cannot be used).
7. Click OK twice and print the document. *The document processes and downloads to the printer's hard drive.*

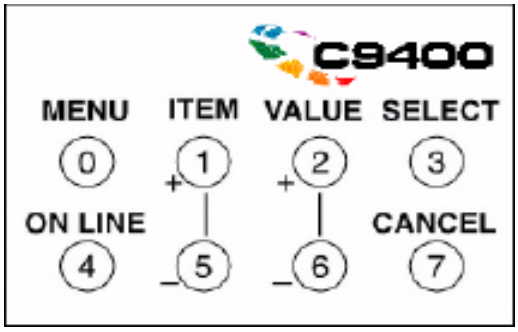
Confidential Documents: Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver

To send a confidential document to the printer using the Windows 98 & 95 PostScript driver:

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. On the Paper tab, under Copies:
   a. Select the number of copies you wish to print.
   b. If applicable, click Collate.
   c. Select Secure print as the Job type.
      The JOB PIN dialog box appears.

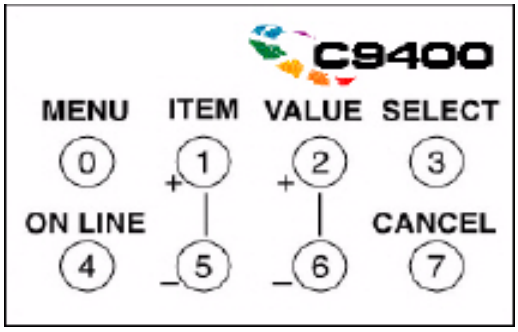
5. Under Job Name Setting, enter a Job Name having up to 16 characters.
6. Enter the four-digit password (PIN) assigned to you by your network administrator, or create one using any combination of numeric characters 0 through 7 (8 and 9 cannot be used).
7. Click OK twice and print the document
   The document processes and downloads to the printer's hard drive.

Printing the Confidential Document



1. Press MENU.
   PRINT JOBS MENU
   appears on the display.
2. Press SELECT and enter your personal ID (PIN) number using the control panel buttons.
   SELECT JOB ALL JOBS
   appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the name of the job you wish to print appears.
4. Press SELECT.
   The document prints and is deleted from the printer's hard drive.
5. The printer goes back on line.

Deleting the Job without Printing It



1. Press MENU.
   PRINT JOBS MENU
   appears on the display.
2. Press SELECT and enter your personal ID (PIN) number using the control panel buttons.
   SELECT JOB ALL JOBS
   appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the name of the job you wish to delete appears.
4. Press CANCEL.
   DELETE THE JOB
   YES=SELECT/NO=CANCEL
   appears on the display.

5. To delete the job, press SELECT. Otherwise, press CANCEL.
   The printer goes back on line.

Secure (Confidential) Documents: Windows NT 4.0

Confidential Documents: Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver

To send a confidential document to the printer using the Windows NT 4.0 PCL driver:

1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. On the Paper tab, under Copies:
   a. Select the number of copies you wish to print.
   b. If applicable, click Printer Collate.

   Note: If Job Type is grayed out, click Device options and click Printer hard disk, then click OK.

   c. Select Secure print as the Job Type.
      The Job PIN dialog box appears.

5. Under Job Name Setting, enter a job name having up to 16 characters.
6. Enter the four-digit password (PIN) assigned to you by your network administrator, or create one using any combination of numeric characters 0 through 7 (8 and 9 cannot be used).
7. Click OK twice and print the document.
   The document processes and downloads to the printer.

Confidential Documents: Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver

To send a confidential document to the printer using the Windows NT 4.0 PostScript driver:

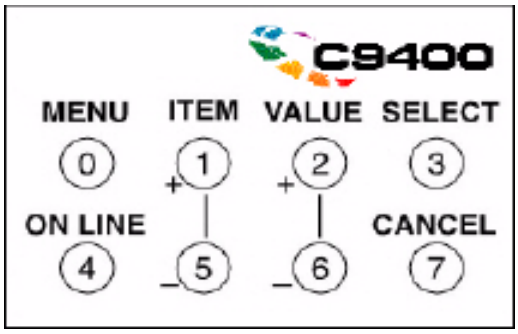
1. Open the document in the application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Under Paper/Output:
   a. Click Copy Count and select the number of copies you wish to print.
   b. If applicable, click Collate. and select Yes under Change 'Collate' Setting.

   > **Note:** If Job Type is grayed out, click Start → Settings → Printers; right-click the printer icon, then click Properties. Click the Device Settings tab, then scroll down to Installable Options. Click Hard Disk and select Installed, then click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

   c. Click Job Type and select Secure print under Change 'Job Type' Setting.
   The JOB PIN dialog box appears.

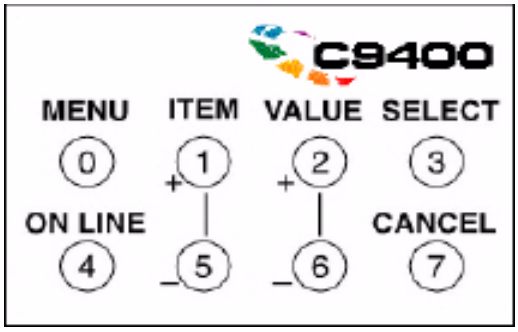
5. Under Job Name Setting, enter a Job Name having up to 16 characters.
6. Enter the four-digit password (PIN) assigned to you by your network administrator, or create one using any combination of numeric characters 0 through 7 (8 and 9 cannot be used).
7. Click OK twice and print the document.
   The document processes and downloads to the printer.

Printing the Confidential Document



1. Press MENU.
   PRINT JOBS MENU
   appears on the display.
2. Press SELECT and enter your personal ID (PIN) number using the control panel buttons.
   SELECT JOB ALL JOBS
   appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the name of the job you wish to print appears.
4. Press SELECT.
   The document prints and is deleted from the printer's hard drive.
5. The printer goes back on line.

Deleting the Job without Printing It



1. Press MENU.
   PRINT JOBS MENU
   appears on the display.
2. Press SELECT and enter your personal ID (PIN) number using the control panel buttons.
   SELECT JOB ALL JOBS
   appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + repeatedly until the name of the job you wish to delete appears.
4. Press CANCEL.
   DELETE THE JOB
   YES=SELECT/NO=CANCEL
   appears on the display.
5. To delete the job, press SELECT. Otherwise, press CANCEL.

The printer goes back on line.

Overlays (Forms)

General Information

Important! File names used in printing overlays are *case sensitive*.

You can save logos, lettterheads, etc. as overlays

- in the printer's flash SIMM or
- on the printer's internal hard disk drive

then add one or any combination of them to a file as it is being printed.

You can use overlays in place of pre-printed stationery, to add your logo or company address to a document, or to create forms from pre-stored modular pieces.

Note: Overlay printing *cannot* be done using the Windows 2000 PostScript driver or the Macintosh driver.

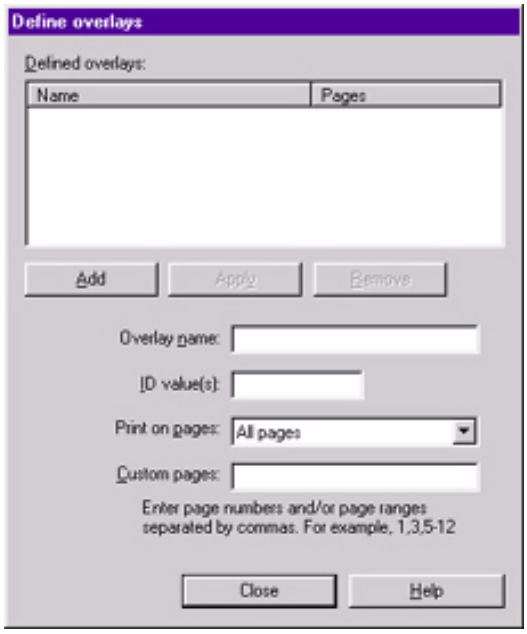
- The printer must be equipped with the hard disk drive (standard on all but Model C9200) and the OKI Storage Device Manager software must be installed.
- Overlay elements must be created in the software application of your choice, then stored on the printer's hard drive using the OKI Storage Device Manager software before they can be used.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, the message DISK FULL appears.
- If your software application has a collate print option, it must be turned OFF before you print overlays.

Printing with Overlays: Windows 2000

Note: In Windows 2000, overlays can only be printed using the PCL driver.

Defining Overlays: Windows 2000 PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. Click the Overlay tab.
4. Click Define Overlays.



5. Under Overlay Name, enter a name for the overlay.
6. Under ID Value, enter the ID number for the file saved using the Storage Device Manager software (see the File List printout).
7. In the Print on Pages drop-down list, select on which pages the overlay is to be printed, or select Custom and enter specific page numbers under Custom pages.
8. Click Add, then click Close.
   The overlay you defined appears in the Defined overlays list.
9. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Using Overlays: Windows 2000 PCL Driver

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. On the General tab, select the C9200 or C9400 PCL driver.
4. Click the Overlay tab.
5. Under Defined Overlays, click any overlays you wish to use (to select more than one, press the Ctrl key while selecting the names), then click Add.
   The name(s) appears in the Active overlays box.

Notes

To print a sample of an overlay to see what it looks like, click the name under Defined Overlays, then click Test Print.

If you wish to add more overlays to the list, click Define overlays, then fill in the appropriate information in the Define overlays dialog box and click Close.

6. Click Print using active overlays, then click Print.

Editing Defined Overlays: Windows 2000 PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. Click the Overlay tab.
4. Click Define overlays.
   The Define overlays dialog box appears.
5. Under Defined overlays, click the overlay to be edited.
6. Make your changes, then click Apply.
7. Click Close.
8. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Deleting Defined Overlays: Windows 2000 PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. Click the Overlay tab.
4. Click Define Overlays.
   The Define overlays dialog box appears.
5. Under Defined overlays, click the overlay to be deleted.
6. Click Remove, then click Close.
7. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

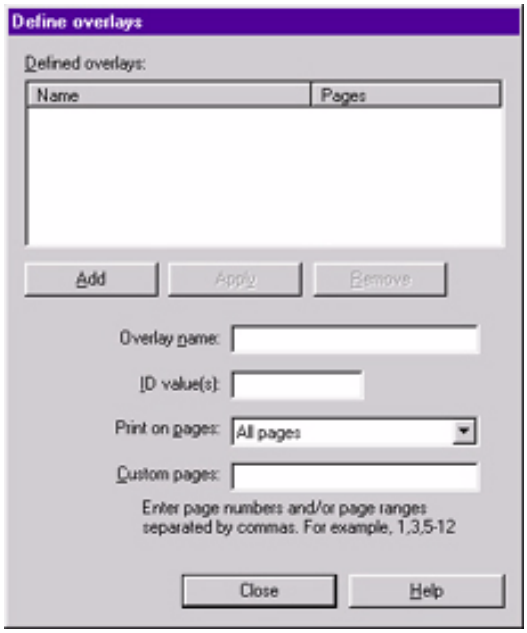
Printing with Overlays: Windows Me

Note: Before overlays can be printed, they must be created in a software application and saved as a print file, then downloaded to the printer's internal hard disk drive using the OKI Storage Device Manager software.

Defining Overlays: Windows Me PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Overlay tab.

4. Click Define overlays.



5. Under Overlay Name, enter a name for the overlay.
6. Under ID Value, enter the ID number for the file saved using the OKI Storage Device Manager software (see the File List printout).
7. In the Print on Pages drop-down list, select on which pages the overlay is to be printed, or select Custom and enter specific page numbers under Custom pages.
8. Click Add, then click Close. The overlay(s) you defined appears in the Defined overlay list.
9. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Overlays: Windows Me PCL Driver

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Overlay tab.
5. Under Defined Overlay, click any overlays you wish to use (to select more than one, press the Ctrl key while selecting the names), then click Add.
   The names you selected appear in the Active overlays box.

Notes

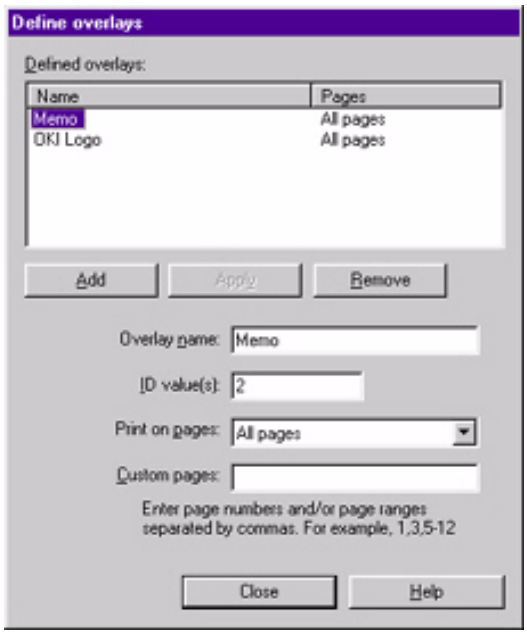
To print a sample of an overlay to see what it looks like, click it's name in the Defined overlays box, then click Test Print.

If you wish to add more overlays to the list, click Define overlays, then fill in the appropriate information in the Define overlays dialog box and click Close.

6. Click Print using active overlays, then click OK and print the document.

Editing Defined Overlays: Windows Me PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Overlay tab.
4. Click Define overlays.
   The Define overlays dialog box appears.



5. Under Defined overlays, click the overlay to be edited.
6. Make any changes, then click Apply.
7. Click Close.
8. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Deleting Defined Overlays: Windows Me PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.

The OKI Properties dialog box appears.

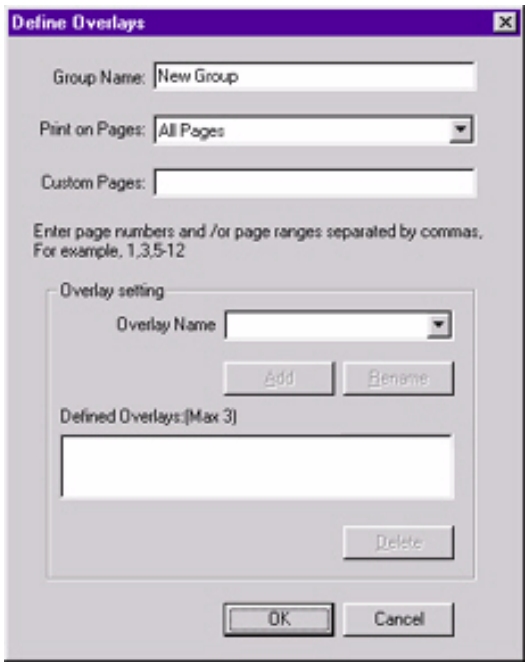
3. Click the Overlay tab.
4. Click Define overlays.
   The Define overlays dialog box appears.
5. Under Defined overlays, click the overlay to be deleted.
6. Click Remove, then Close.
7. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Defining Overlays: Windows Me PostScript Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Overlay tab.

Set up an Overlay Group:

4. Click New.
   The Define Overlays dialog box appears.



5. Under Group Name, enter a name for the group of overlays you are creating.
6. In the Print on Pages drop-down list, select on which pages the overlay is to be printed, or select Custom and enter specific page numbers under Custom pages.
7. Under Overlay Name, type in the name of the overlay file exactly as it it was stored using the OKI Storage Device Manager software (see the File List printout).

> **Note:** Overlay file names are case sensitive.

8. Click Add.
9. Repeat steps 7 and 8 to add additional overlays (maximum of three per group).
10. Click OK.

> **Note:** To create additional overlay groups (up to 32 can be defined), repeat steps 4 to 10 above.

Finish

11. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Using Overlays: Windows Me PostScript Driver

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click Properties (or Settings, or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Overlay tab.
5. Click Enable Overlay in the drop-down list.
6. Click up to four groups under Defined Overlay, then click Add.
7. Click OK and print the document.

Editing Defined Overlays: Windows Me PostScript Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Overlay tab.
4. Under Defined Overlay, click the name of the group you wish to modify, then click Edit.
   The Define Overlays dialog box appears.
5. Make your changes, then click OK twice and close the Printers dialog box.

Deleting Defined Overlays: Windows Me PostScript Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Overlay tab.

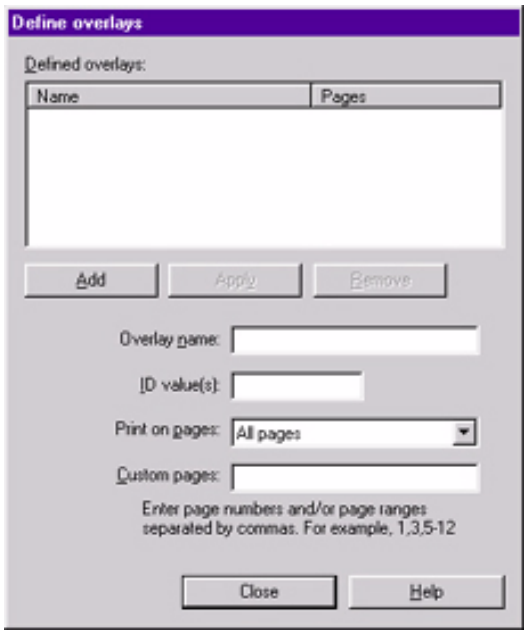
4. Under Defined Overlay, click the name of the group you wish to remove, then click Delete.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing with Overlays: Windows 98 & 95

Note: Before overlays can be printed, they must be created in a software application and saved as a print file, then downloaded to the printer's internal hard disk drive using the OKI Device Storage Manager software.

Defining Overlays: Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Overlay tab.
4. Click Define overlays.



5. Under Overlay Name, enter a name for the overlay.
6. Under ID Value, enter the ID number for the file saved using the OKI Storage Device Manager software (see the File List printout).
7. In the Print on Pages drop-down list, select on which pages the overlay is to be printed, or select Custom and enter specific page numbers under Custom pages.
8. Click Add, then click Close. The overlay(s) you defined appears in the Defined overlay list.
9. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Overlays: Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Overlay tab.
5. Under Defined Overlay, click any overlays you wish to use (to select more than one, press the Ctrl key while selecting the names), then click Add.
   The names you selected appear in the Active overlays box.

   Notes

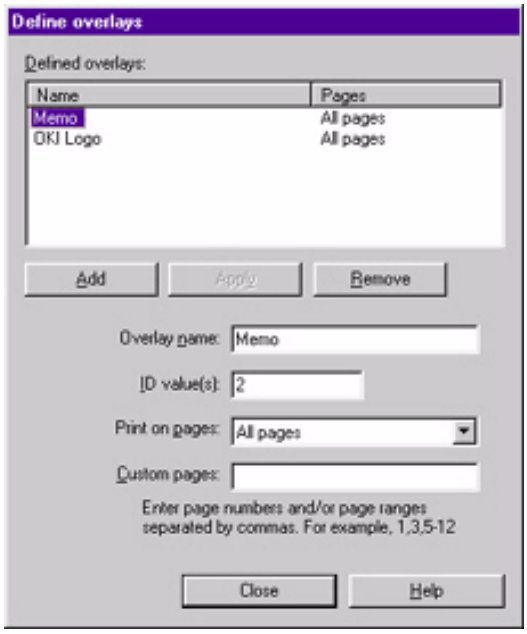
   To print a sample of an overlay to see what it looks like, click its name in the Defined overlays box, then click Test Print.

   If you wish to add more overlays to the list, click Define overlay, then fill in the appropriate information in the Define overlays dialog box and click Close.

6. Click Print using active overlays, then click OK and print the document.

Editing Defined Overlays: Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Overlay tab.
4. Click Define overlays.
   The Define overlays dialog box appears.



5. Under Defined overlays, click the overlay to be edited.
6. Make any changes, then click Apply.
7. Click Close.
8. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Deleting Defined Overlays: Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver

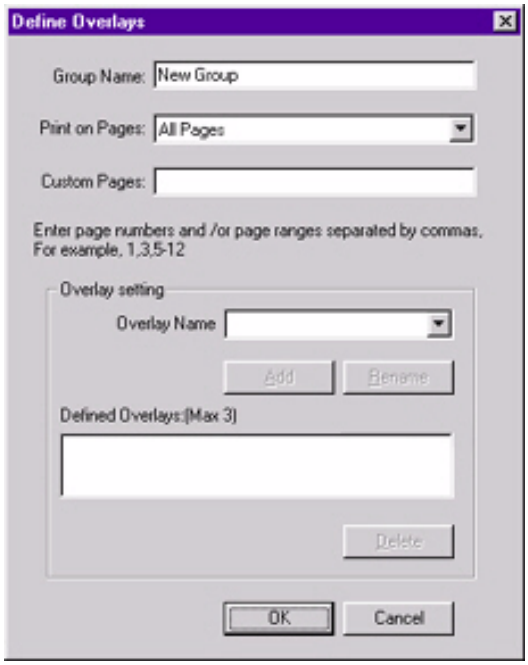
1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Overlay tab.
4. Click Define overlays.
   The Define overlays dialog box appears.
5. Under Defined overlays, click the overlay to be deleted.
6. Click Remove, then Close.
7. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Defining Overlays: Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Overlay tab.

Set up an Overlay Group:

4. Click New.
   The Define Overlays dialog box appears.



5. Under Group Name, enter a name for the group of overlays you are creating.
6. In the Print on Pages drop-down list, select on which pages the overlay is to be printed, or select Custom and enter specific page numbers under Custom pages.
7. Under Overlay Name, type in the name of the overlay file exactly as it it was stored using the OKI Storage Device Manager software (see the File List printout).

> **Note:** Overlay file names are case sensitive.

8. Click Add.
9. Repeat steps 7 and 8 to add additional overlays (maximum of three per group).
10. Click OK.

> **Note:** To create additional overlay groups (up to 32 can be defined), repeat steps 4 to 10 above.

Finish

11. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Using Overlays: Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.

The Print dialog box appears.

3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click Properties (or Settings, or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Overlay tab.
5. Click Enable Overlay in the drop-down list.
6. Click up to four groups under Defined Overlay, then click Add.
7. Click OK and print the document.

Editing Defined Overlays: Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Overlay tab.
4. Under Defined Overlay, click the name of the group you wish to modify, then click Edit.
   The Define Overlays dialog box appears.
5. Make your changes, then click OK twice and close the Printers dialog box.

Deleting Defined Overlays: Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Overlay tab.
4. Under Defined Overlay, click the name of the group you wish to remove, then click Delete.
5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

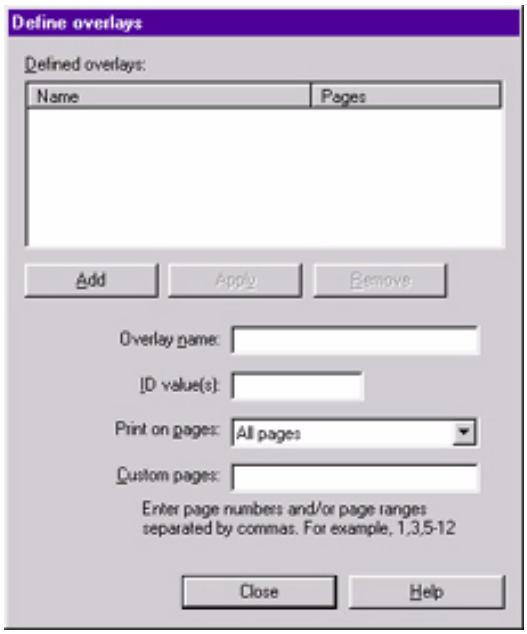
Printing with Overlays: Windows NT 4.0

Defining Overlays: Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Document Defaults.

The OKI Default dialog box appears.

3. Click the Overlay tab.
4. Click Define overlays.
   The Define overlays dialog box appears



5. Under Overlay Name, enter a name for the overlay.
6. Under ID Value, enter the ID number for the file saved using the OKI Storage Device Manager software (see the File List printout).
7. In the Print on Pages drop-down list, select on which pages the overlay is to be printed, or select Custom and enter specific page numbers under Custom pages.
8. Click Add, then click Close.
   The overlays you defined will appear in the Defined overlays window.
9. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Overlays: Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL driver is selected, then click Properties (or Settings, or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Overlay tab.
5. Under Defined Overlays, click any overlays you wish to use (to select more than one, press the Ctrl key while selecting the names), then click Add.
   The name(s) appears in the Active overlays box.

Notes

To print a sample of an overlay to see what it looks like, click its name in the Defined Overlays box, then click Test Print.

If you wish to add more overlays to the list, click Define overlays, then fill in the appropriate information in the Define overlays dialog box and click Close.

6. Click Print using active overlays, then click OK and print the document.

Editing Defined Overlays: Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Defaults dialog box appears.
3. Click the Overlay tab.
4. Click Define Overlays.
   The Define overlays dialog box appears.
5. Under Defined overlays, click the overlay to be edited.
6. Make your changes, then click Apply.
7. Click Close.
8. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Deleting Defined Overlays: Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Defaults dialog box appears.
3. Click the Overlay tab.
4. Click Define Overlays.
5. Under Defined overlays, click the overlay to be deleted.
6. Click Remove, then Close.
7. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Defining Overlays: Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver

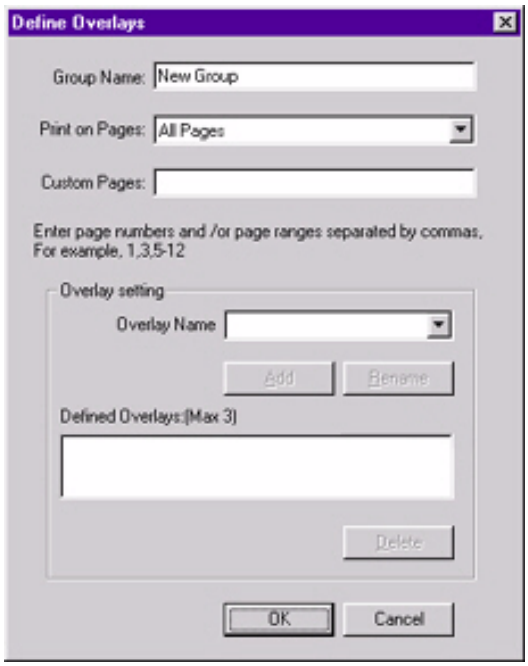
1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Document Defaults.

The OKI Default dialog box appears.

3. Scroll down to Layout, and click Overlay.
4. Under Change 'Overlay' Setting, click Use Overlay.
5. Click Setting of Overlay.
   The Setting of Overlay dialog box appears.

Set up an Overlay Group:

6. Click New.
   The Define Overlays dialog box appears.



7. Under Group Name, enter a name for the group of overlays you are creating.
8. In the Print on Pages drop-down list, select on which pages the overlay is to be printed, or select Custom and enter specific page numbers under Custom pages.
9. Under Overlay Name, type in the name of the overlay file exactly as it it was stored using the OKI Storage Device Manager software (see the File List printout).

> **Note:** Overlay file names are *case sensitive*.

10. Click Add.
11. Repeat steps 9 and 10 to add additional overlays (maximum of three per group).
12. Click OK.

> **Note:** To create additional overlay groups (up to 32 can be defined), repeat steps 6 to 11 above.

Save Your Settings

13. Click OK twice and close the Printers dialog box.

Printing Using Overlays: Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Scroll down to Layout, then click Use Overlay.
5. Click Setting of Overlay.
   The Setting of Overlay dialog box appears.
6. Click the Overlay group(s) you wish to print, then click Add.
   The group will appear in the Active Overlay Groups list.
7. Click OK twice and print the document.

Editing Defined Overlays: Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Defaults dialog box appears.
3. Scroll down to Layout, and click Overlay.
4. Click Setting of Overlay.
   The Setting of Overlay dialog box appears.
5. Under Defined Overlay Groups, click the name of the group you wish to modify, then click Edit.
   The Define Overlays dialog box appears.
6. Make your changes, then click OK.
7. Click OK twice and close the Printers dialog box.

Deleting Defined Overlays: Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Default dialog box appears.
3. Scroll down to Layout, and click Overlay.
4. Click Setting of Overlay.
   The Setting of Overlay dialog box appears.
5. Click the name of the Defined Overlay Group you wish to remove, then click Delete and

click Yes to confirm the deletion.

6. Click OK twice and close the Printers dialog box.

OKI Storage Device Manager (SDM)

Note: OKI Storage Device Manager is currently for operation only on Windows systems.

OKI SDM: General Information

OKI Storage Device Manager requires Microsoft Internet Explorer 4.0 or higher to run.

The OKI Storage Device Manager software provides a means of managing

- the printer's Flash memory (2 MB)
- the printer's internal hard disk drive (standard on Model C9400 dxn/HD, optional on other models): 5 GB (partitioned with 1.6 GB each allocated as Common, PCL and PostScript)

Using the OKI Storage Device Manager software improves the internal performance of the printer and provides a tool for downloading files from the computer to the printer's memory, including

- graphic files
- forms such as letterheads, invoices, etc.
- overlays such as logos, addresses, etc.

Important! The printer's internal hard drive does not communicate directly back to the OKI Storage Device Manager software; it sends any error messages to the printer display.

OKI SDM Functions

OKI Storage Device Manager functions:

- Create or modify a project
- Download files to a printer
- Add or remove printers being administered
- Manage the proof and secure spooler queues on the internal hard drive
- View the status, configuration and variables for a printer
- Print the demo page, PCL fonts list, or a PostScript font list from a printer
- Print one or more PCL format macros or a PostScript forms (Overlays)

Caution! You can also use the OKI Storage Device Manager to format the partitions on the printer's hard drive, but this will wipe out all the contents of the partition and can cause serious problems. We recommend that you use the Spooler and the Delete Form features to maintain the disk.

OKI SDM Administration

On network systems, the Administrator oversees the Storage Device Manager software and can use it to manage and monitor the printer's Flash memory and internal hard disk.

Passwords

The first thing to do is to set up your Administrative Password.

Next, assign a 4-digit PIN number for each of your clients, using any four numbers from 0 through 7 (8 and 9 cannot be used). Alternately, each client can choose their own PIN number, but the administrator will need to know these PINs in order to access client information in the Spooler.

The Spooler

The Administrator can use the Spooler to view a listing of Proof & Print and Secure Print files stored on either memory area and

- delete files, or
- print and the delete files

Administrative Functions

The Administrative Functions feature allows you to delete any PCL Macros or PostScript Forms which are stored on the printer's internal hard disk or in the Flash memory.

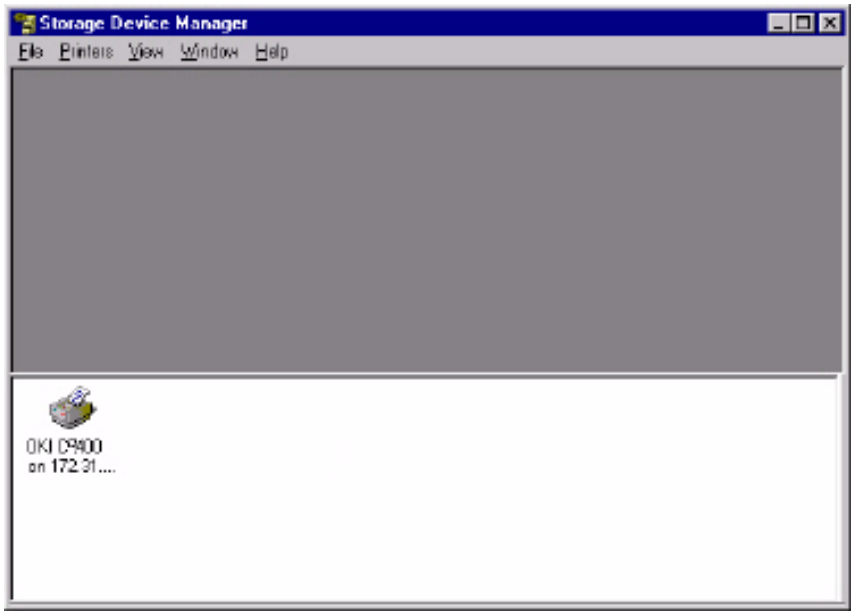
Opening OKI Storage Device Manager

1. Click Start → Programs → Oki Data Corporation → OKI Storage Device Manager → OKI Storage Device Manager.
   The StoreMan - Printer Discovery dialog box opens.

2. Click the appropriate computer connection(s), then click Start.

The printer will search for connected printers and place icons in the Printers Window at the bottom of the dialog box.

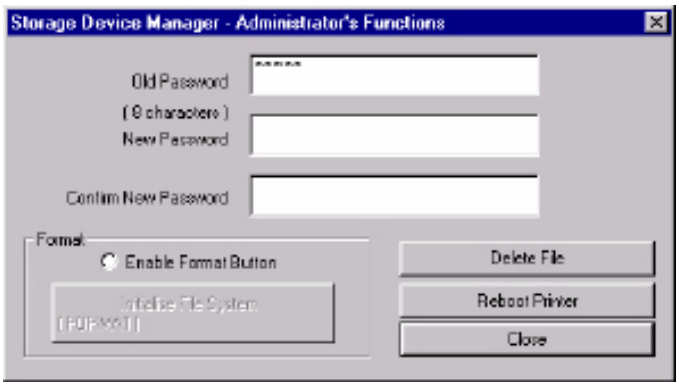
3. Click Close.
   The Storage Device Manager dialog box opens.



OKI SDM: Setting Up an Administrative Password

1. With the OKI Storage Device Manager program open, click Administrator Functions in the Printer menu.

> **Note:** Passwords consist of eight digits, letters or numbers, and are *case sensitive*.



2. Enter the default password (p1xs7d0m) under Old Password (see "Administrator Functions" in the OKI Storage Device Manager Help file for more information).
3. Type the 8-digit, alpha-numeric password of your choice under New Password.
4. Type the password again under Confirm New Password.
   New Password Accepted appears.

5. Click OK.
6. Click Close.

OKI SDM: PostScript Forms

Note: PostScript forms are the ones to use if you are not experienced with PCL Macro commands.

Creating & Downloading a PostScript Project

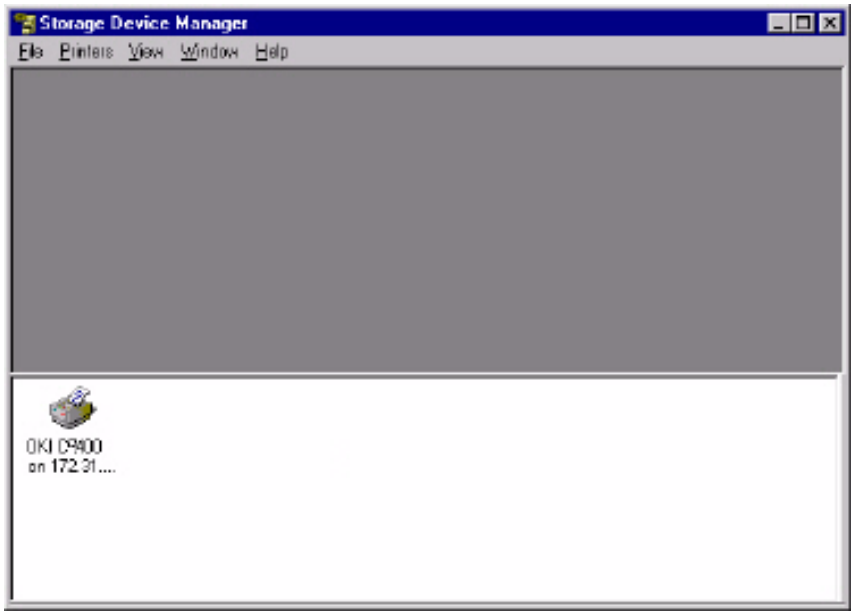
Important! **Remember that file names and paths are *case sensitive*.**

Create the Forms

1. Create the document in your software application.
2. Click File → Print and make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript driver is selected.
3. Engage the Encapsulated PostScript (EPS) output option: **Windows Me/98/95:** - Click Properties (or your application's equivalent). - Click the PostScript tab, then, if it is not already selected, click Encapsulated PostScript (EPS). **Windows NT 4.0:** - Click Properties (or your application's equivalent). - Scroll down to PostScript Options and click it, then click PostScript Output Option and select Encapsulated PostScript (EPS).
4. Click OK.
5. Print the document to a file using the extension .PRN.

Create a New Project

1. Open the OKI Storage Device Manager software.



2. Click File → New Project.
   The Project dialog box opens.
3. Click File → Save Project., enter the path/name for storing the project on your hard drive or your network, then click Save.

Add Files to the Project

1. Click File → Add File to Project.
   The Open dialog box appears.
2. Make sure PRN files(*.prn) is selected in the File name drop-down list.
3. Browse to the folder where the files are saved and select the files you wish to add to the project, then click OK.
   The Information dialog box appears.
4. Click OK.
   The files are saved as .HST.
5. Repeat steps 1 through 4 until you have added all the files you wish to add to the Project.

Note: To delete a file from the project, click the file name, then click File → Remove File from Project.

Check the Location for Storing the Files in the Printer's Memory

- If your printer is equipped with an internal hard disk drive, the Storage Device Manager will automatically save the forms to the PostScript partition on the hard drive.
- If your printer does not have the internal hard disk drive, the Storage Device Manager will automatically store the forms in the PostScript section of the Flash memory.

To store the forms in the Flash memory instead of on the hard disk drive:

1. Double-click the file name in the Project Window.
   The Edit Component Name and ID dialog box appears.
2. Under Volume, type in %Flash0%, then click OK.

Save the Project and Download it to the Printer

1. Click File → Save Project.
2. Click File → Send Project Files to Printer.
   "*Command Issued" appears.*
3. Click OK.

Test Printing a PostScript Form

1. With OKI Storage Device Manager open and the appropriate printer icon highlighted, click Printers → Test Form.
   The Test PostScript Form dialog box appears.
2. Enter the file name for the form you wish to print (you can get this from the File List printout), then click OK.
   "*Command Issued" appears.*
3. Click OK and wait for the form to print.

PCL Macros (Forms)

Important! Unless you are experienced with PCL Macro commands, it is best to stick with PostScript Forms.

Creating & Downloading a PCL Project

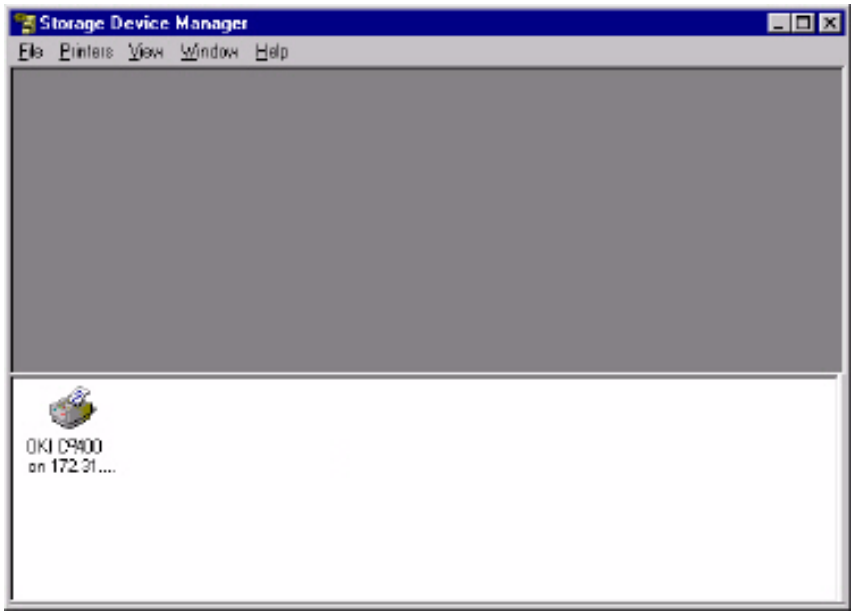
Important! Remember that file names and paths are case sensitive.

1. Create the Forms

a. Create the document in your software application.
b. Click File → Print and make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL driver is selected.
c. Print the document to a file using the extension .PRN.

2. Create a New Project

a. Open the OKI Storage Device Manager software.

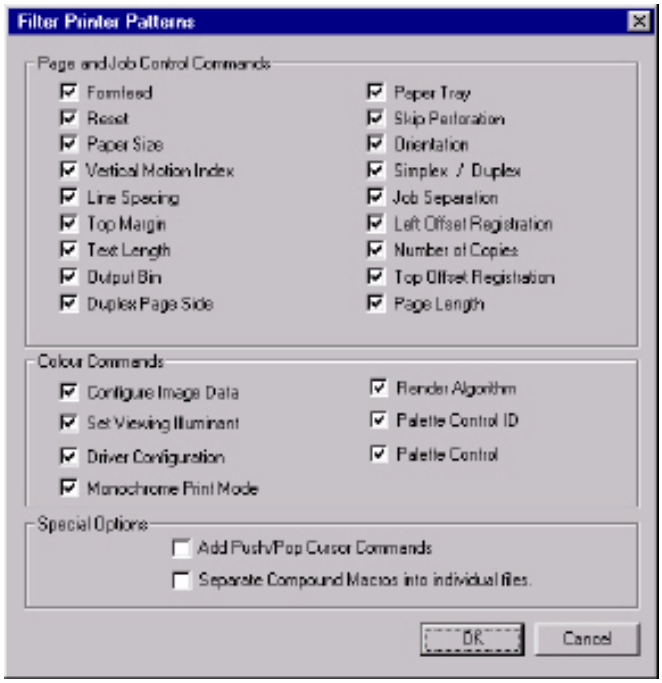


b. Click File → New Project.
The Project dialog box opens.

c. Click File → Save Project., enter the path/name for storing the project on your hard drive or your network, then click Save.

3. Convert the Files to Binary (.bin) Format

a. Click File → Filter Macro File.
The Filter Printer Patterns dialog box appears.



b. Make any desired adjustments in the settings.

Example

If you create a black oval in MS Paint and leave all the color command filters checked, the black oval will print as a black rectangle when the overlay is used. To maintain the oval shape, turn off (deselect) the "Configure Image Data," "Palette Control ID,"and "Palette Control" filters.

c. Click OK.
The Open dialog box appears.

d. Make sure Print spool files (*.prn) is selected in the File of type drop-down list.

e. Browse to the folder where the files are saved and double-click the file name.

f. Click OK.
The file is saved as a .bin file.

g. Repeat steps 1 through 5 until you have converted all the files you wish to add to the Project.

4. Add the .bin Files to the Project

a. Click File → Add File to Project.

b. Highlight the .bin files you wish to add, then click Open.
The file names appear in the Project dialog box.

> **Note:** To delete a file from the project, click the file name, then click File → Remove File from Project.

5. Check the .bin File Settings and Save the Project

a. To check the settings for the bin files, double-click the file name. *The Edit Component Name and ID dialog box appears.*

b. Here you can edit the
- file name
- ID number (the number you need to enter in the printer driver when printing overlays)
- volume: 0: = printer's disk drive PCL partition 1: = printer's disk drive Common partition %disk0%: = printer's disk drive PostScript partition 2: = Flash memory PCL %Flash0% = Flash memory PostScript
- path.

c. Click OK.

d. When you're through reviewing the settings, click File → Save Project.

6. Download the Project to the Printer

a. Click File → Send Project Files to Printer. *Command Issued appears.*

b. Click OK.

Downloading a Printer Job Language (.pjl) Command File to the Printer

Important! **Remember that file names and paths are case sensitive.**

1. Click File → Send Download File to Printer.
2. Browse to the directory with the .pjl file and click the file name.
3. Click Open.
   "*Command Issued" appears.*
4. Click OK.

Test Printing a PCL Macro

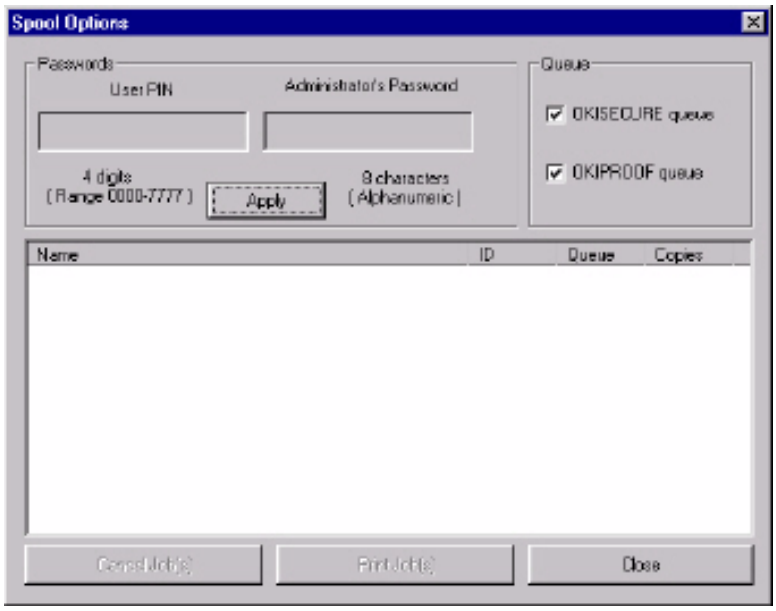
1. With OKI Storage Device Manager open and the appropriate printer icon highlighted, click Printers → Test Macro.
   The Test Macro dialog box appears.
2. Enter the ID number for the macro file you wish to print (you can get this from the File List printout), then click OK.
   Command Issued appears.
3. Click OK and wait for the macro to print.

Using the Spooler

The Spooler feature of OKI Storage Device Manager allows you to view and manage the Proof & Print and Secure Print files stored on the printer's hard disk drive.

To Open the Spooler:

1. Open the OKI Storage Device Manager software and click the icon for the printer whose contents you wish to view.
2. Click Printers → Spooler Options.
   The Spool Options dialog box appears.



3. Under Queue, click OKISECURE queue to view Secure Print jobs and/or OKIPROOF queue to view Proof & Print jobs.
4. To view the jobs stored for a particular client, type in the client's 4-digit User PIN, then press Enter.
5. To view all stored jobs, type in your Administrator's Password, then press Enter.

To Delete Files:

1. Click the file(s) to be deleted (press Shift to select a span of files; press Ctrl to select additional files).
2. Delete the files:

   Careful! You will not be prompted to confirm the deletion.

   - Click Cancel Jobs to delete the files *without printing them*.

     OR

   - Click Print Job(s) to print the files out before they are automatically deleted.
3. Click Close.

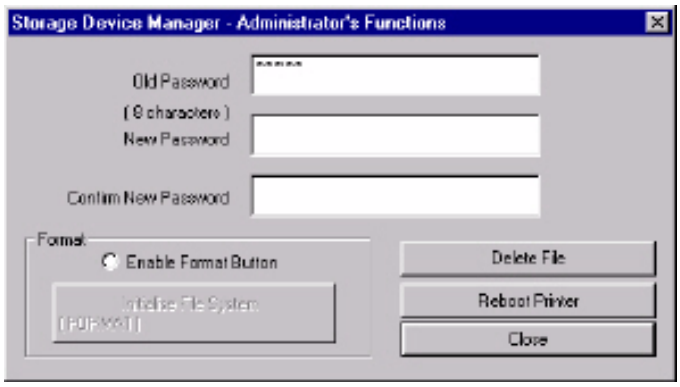
Deleting a Form

To delete a project component from the printer's hard disk drive or from the Flash memory:

1. If you don't have a current printout of the File List, print one.
2. Open the OKI Storage Device Manager software and click the icon for the printer from which you wish to delete files.
3. Click Printers → Administrator Functions.

The Storage Device Manager - Administrative Functions dialog box appears.

4. Type in your password under Old Password.



5. Click Delete File.
6. Referring to the File List, type in the complete path for the file to be deleted. (e.g., 0:\pcl\macros\50::PCLMACRO.bin), then click OK.
   "*Command Issued" appears.*

> **Important! You must be sure to type the path in *exactly* as it appears on the File List (path entry is case sensitive).**

7. Click OK, then click Close.
8. Double-click the printer icon and check to be sure the file was deleted.

Problem Solving

Paper Jams

OPEN SIDE COVER
380: PAPER JAM

1. Pull up on the handle and lift the top cover.

2. Open the side cover.

3. Pull out the jammed sheet.

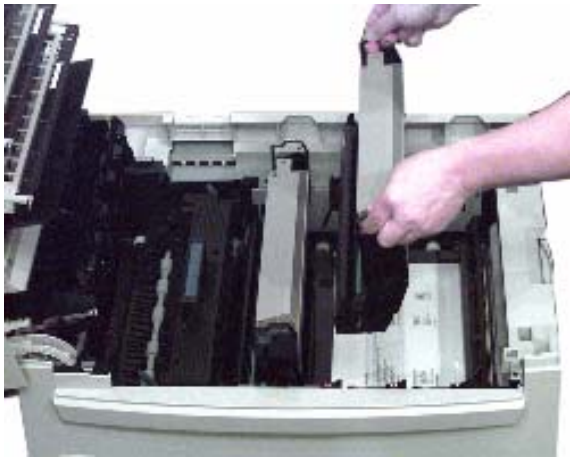
4. Close the side cover.

5. Close the top cover.

OPEN UPPER COVER
381: PAPER JAM

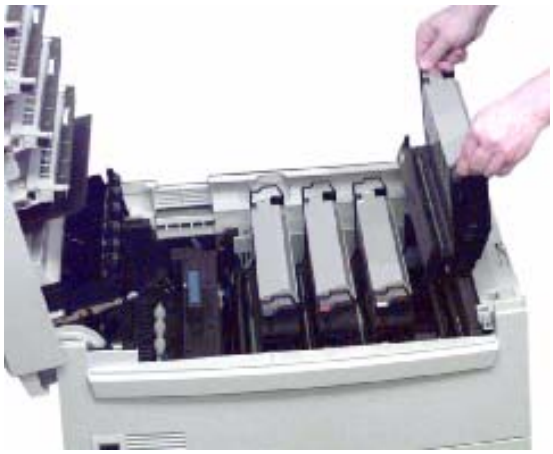
1. Pull up on the handle and lift the cover.

2. Lift out the image drums/toner cartridges to gain access to the jammed sheet.



3. Remove the jammed sheet(s).

4. Replace the image drums/toner cartridges.

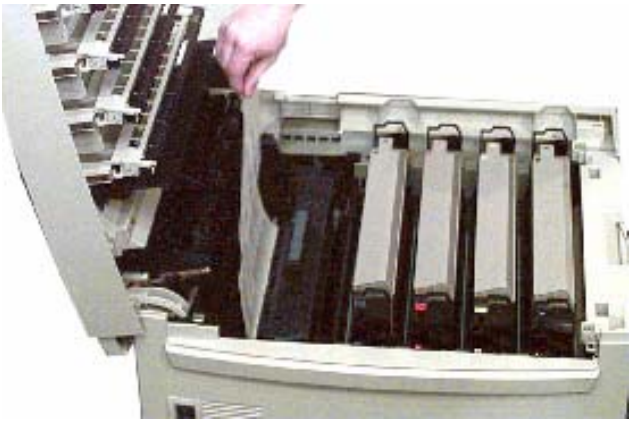


5. Close the cover.

OPEN UPPER COVER
382: PAPER JAM

1. Pull up on the handle and lift the cover.

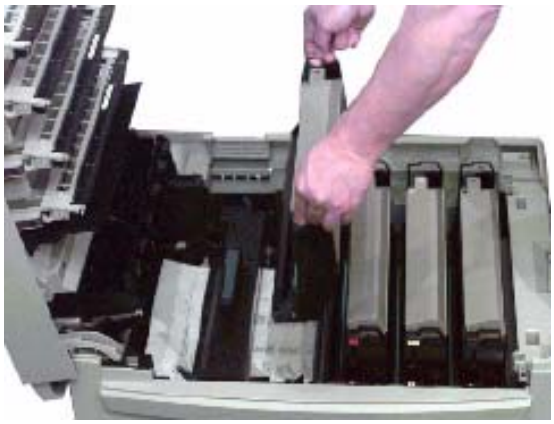
2. Remove the jammed sheet.



3. If the sheet is caught in the fuser:

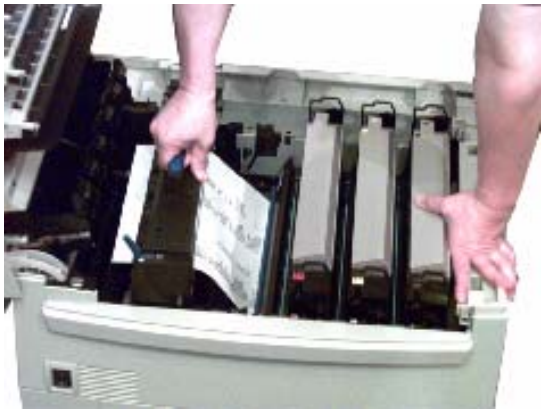
> ***Caution!*** ***The fuser may be very hot from printing.***

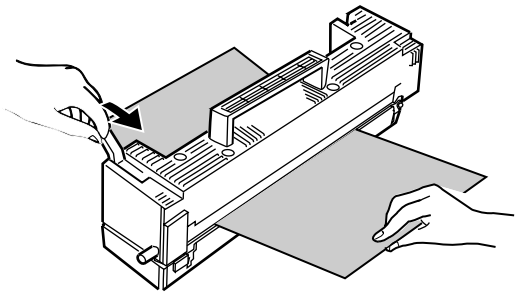
   a. Lift out the cyan image drum/toner cartridge.



b. Move the fuser lock levers to the left (toward the open cover).

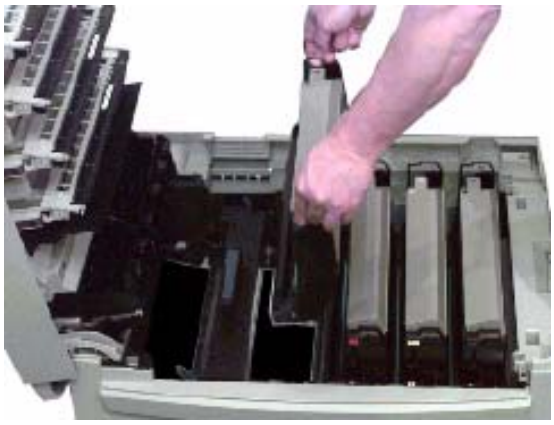
c. Lift out the fuser, then move the fuser roller release lever forward and remove the jammed sheet.





d. Move the fuser roller release (blue lever) back and reinstall the fuser.

e. Replace the cyan drum/toner.



4. Close the cover.

CHECK TRAY 1
390: PAPER JAM

1. Pull out the tray.

2. Realign the stack of print media and check to be sure that the media guides are snug against the stack.

3. Gently push the tray back in.

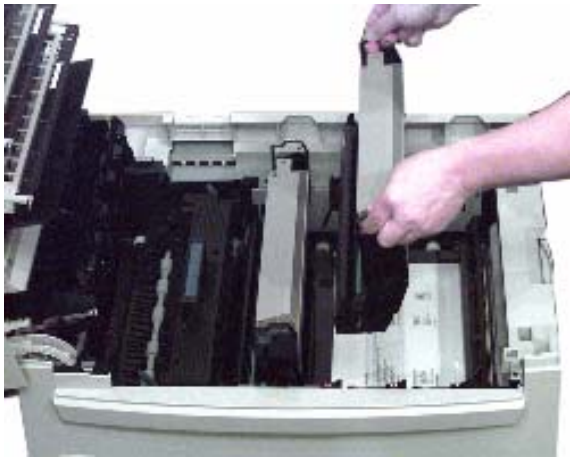
CHECK MP TRAY
391: PAPER JAM

1. Pull the jammed sheet.

CHECK DUPLEX

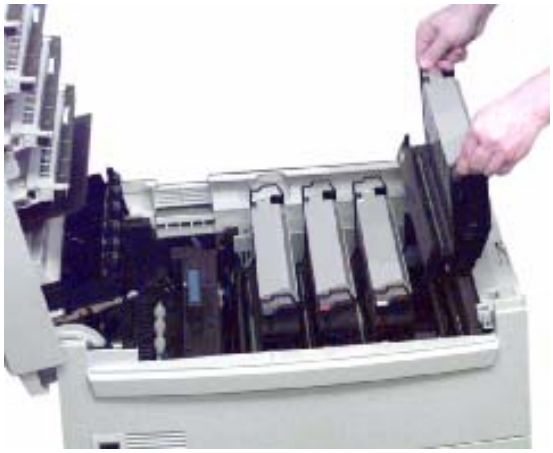
1. Pull up on the handle and lift the top cover.

2. Lift out one or two of the image drums/toner cartridges and check to see if any paper is jammed underneath.



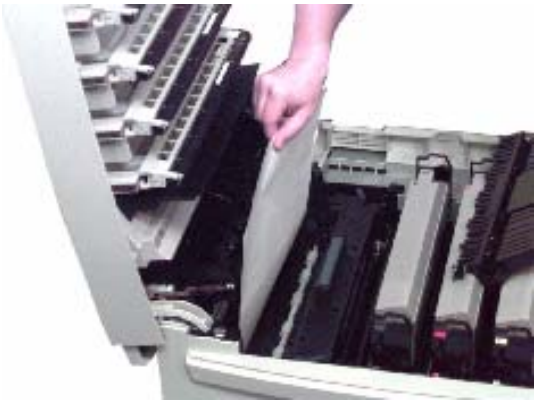
3. Remove any jammed sheets.

4. Replace the image drums/toner cartridges.



5. Lift out the separator (located to the left of the fuser, just under the open cover).

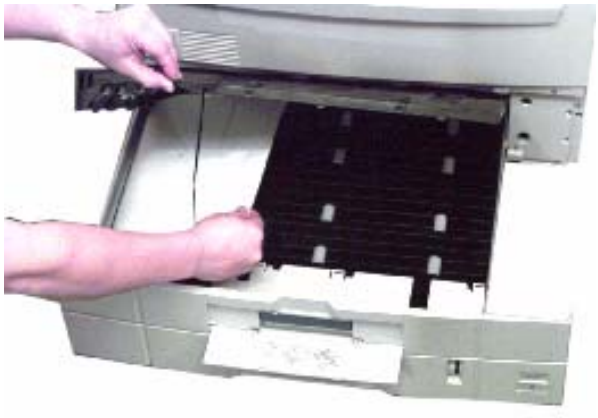
6. Remove any jammed sheets.



7. Put the separator back into the printer.

8. Open the cover on the duplex unit and pull the blue handle to access the duplex unit.

9. Open the duplex cover and remove any jammed sheets.



10. Close the duplex cover and gently push the duplex/tray back into the printer.

11. Open the side cover.

12. Remove any jammed sheets, then close the side cover.

13. Close the top cover.

Hardware Problems

Paper Problems

Paper jams are frequent.

The printer is not level.
► Place the printer on a stable, level surface.

Paper is too thin.
► Use correct type of paper.

The paper is moist or affected by static.
► Store paper within specified temperature and humidity levels.

The paper is creased or wrinkled.
► Remove the creased/wrinkled paper from the feed tray.

Paper is not aligned correctly.
► Adjust tray print guides and rear stopper or Multi-Purpose feed guides.

More than one sheet feeds at a time.

The printer is not level.
► Place the printer on a stable, level surface.

Paper is too thin.
► Use correct type of paper.

The paper is moist or affected by static.
► Store paper within specified temperature and humidity levels.

The paper is creased or wrinkled.
► Remove the creased/wrinkled paper from the feed tray.

Paper is not aligned correctly.

► Adjust tray print guides and rear stopper or Multi-Purpose feed guides.

Paper feeds at an angle.

The printer is not level.

► Place the printer on a stable, level surface.

Paper is too thin.

► Use correct type of paper.

The paper is moist or affected by static.

► Store paper within specified temperature and humidity levels.

The paper is creased or wrinkled.

► Remove the creased/wrinkled paper from the feed tray.

Paper is not aligned correctly.

► Adjust tray print guides and rear stopper or Multi-Purpose feed guides.

Paper does not feed.

Paper feed selection is incorrect in printer driver.

► Be sure to set the correct paper size and tray in the driver as you are printing the document.

Paper curls.

The paper is moist.

► Store paper within specified temperature and humidity levels.

The paper is too thin.

► For individual print jobs, make sure you set the type to match the media weight being used.

► If you will always be using this type of paper, enter the printer menu and change the default media weight setting.

► Try using a heavier paper. (If you are printing using the duplex unit and are using 20 or 24-lb. paper, try switching to 28-lb. paper)

► If you're printing presentation slides, switch to a lighter background color.

Paper jam has been cleared, but printer does not print.

The cover must be opened and closed to complete the paper jam clearing process.

► Open and close the top cover.

Printing Problems

The power is on, but the printer does not go on line.

There is a problem with the power connection.

► Turn off the printer and disconnect the power cable. Reconnect power cable and turn the printer on. If this does not clear the fault, call for service.

Print processing does not start.

An error has occurred.

► Check the control panel. If an error message is displayed, correct the problem.

Print processing cancels.

The printer interface cable is faulty.

► Replace the printer interface cable.

Time out setting is too short.

► Enter the printer menu, go to the SYSTEM CONFIG MENU group and change the setting for the WAIT TIMEOUT to a higher value.

Printer makes a strange noise.

The printer is not level.

► Place the printer on a stable, level surface.

There are scraps of paper or other foreign matter inside the printer.

► Open the top cover, lift out the drums/toners and remove any such objects, then replace the drums/toners and close the cover.

The top cover is not firmly shut.

► Press down on either side of the top cover:

It takes a long time to start printing.

The printer has to warm up returning from power save mode.

► In the printer menu settings, set power save to a higher value to increase the length of time before entering power save mode.

The image drum is carrying out a cleaning process to ensure print quality, which takes time.

► Wait for the process to finish.

The fuser unit adjusts temperature, which takes time.

► Wait for the process to finish.

The printer is processing data from another interface.

► Wait for the process to finish.

Print Quality Problems

Toner is flaking off the printed page.

The Media Weight setting is too low.

► If this happens only for a specific print job, reprint the job, changing the Media Weight setting in the driver (File → Print → Properties [or Setup, or your application's equivalent]) to the next highest value (e.g., change from Medium to Medium Heavy).

► If this happens frequently, enter the printer menu and change the media weight setting to the next highest value (see "Changing Default Media Settings" under "Print Media").

Toner is blistering on the printed page.

The Media Weight setting is too high.

► If this happens only for a specific print job, reprint the job, changing the Media Weight setting in the driver (File → Print → Properties [or Setup, or your application's equivalent]) to the next lowest value (e.g., change from Medium Heavy to Medium).

► If this happens frequently, enter the printer menu and change the media weight setting to the next lowest value (see "Changing Media Weight Settings in the Menu" under "Print Media").

In the PCL mode, the text is printing more of a dark brown than black.

The printer is set to print black using CMYK rather than black only.

► Enter the menu, go to PCL EMULATION and change the TRUE BLACK menu setting to ON.

Vertical white stripes

LED head is dirty.

► Clean the LED heads with the lens cleaner pad (one is supplied with the printer, one is supplied with each replacement toner cartridge) or a soft, lint-free cloth moistened with rubbing alcohol.

Toner is low.

► Change the toner cartridge.

Image drum is damaged.

► Change the image drum.

Vertical fading.

The LED head is dirty.

► Clean the LED heads with the lens cleaner pad (one is supplied with the printer, one is supplied with each replacement toner cartridge) or a soft, lint-free cloth moistened with rubbing alcohol.

Toner is low.

► Change the toner cartridge.

Print media is unsuitable for printer.

► Use recommended media.

Faint printing.

The toner cartridge is incorrectly installed.

► Reinstall the toner cartridge.

Toner is low.

► Change toner cartridge.

The paper is moist.

► Replace the paper with dry paper. Be sure to store paper within specified temperature and humidity levels.

The print media is unsuitable for printer.

► Use recommended media.

Fading in patches

The paper is moist.

► Replace the paper with dry paper. Be sure to store paper within specified temperature and humidity levels.

Vertical black stripes.

The black image drum is damaged.

► Replace the black image drum.

The black toner is low.

► Replace the black toner cartridge.

Periodic horizontal lines or spots.

If the lines or spots occur at intervals of approximately 3¾ inches (95 mm), the image drum is damaged or dirty.

► Remove the drum which corresponds to the color of the lines/spots and carefully wipe the shiny green drum surface with a soft, lint-free tissue. If this doesn't work, replace the image drum.

If the lines or spots occur at intervals of approximately 35 mm, there is foreign matter inside the image drum cartridge.

► Replace the image drum which corresponds to the color of the lines/spots.

If the lines or spots occur at intervals of approximately 3½ inches (88 mm), the fuser roller is damaged.

► Change the fuser unit.

The image drum has been exposed to light.

► Remove the image drum corresponding to the color of the lines/spots from the printer and store it in a dark place for several hours. If this does not work, replace the image drum.

Faint shading on unprinted sections.

Paper has been affected by static electricity.

► Replace with fresh paper. Raise the humidity level in the area of the printer. Be sure to store paper within specified temperature and humidity levels.

The paper is too thick.

► Use recommended paper.

Toner is low.

► Change toner cartridge.

Blurred letter edges.

LED is dirty.

► Clean the LED heads with the lens cleaner pad (one is supplied with the printer, one is supplied with each replacement toner cartridge) or a soft, lint-free cloth moistened with rubbing alcohol.

Cannot print desired color because toner is low.

► Replace the toner cartridge.

Black print method does not match the application.

► Go into the PCL driver (Start → Settings → Printers, right click the printer icon, then click Printing Preferences [Windows 2000], Properties [Windows Me, 98, 95] or Document Defaults [Windows NT 4.0], click the Quality tab, then select Gloss (CMYK) under Black finishing in photo printing).

Error Display Messages

Note: The Error messages below are in alphabetical sequence.

CHANGE BELT UNIT

Appears on the second line of the display to indicate that you must change the transfer belt.

CHANGE FUSER UNIT

Appears on the second line of the display to indicate that you must change the fuser unit.

CHANGE ddd IMAGE DRUM

Change the image drum (ddd indicates the drum color; e.g., CHANGE CYAN IMAGE DRUM).

CHANGE PAPER TO mmm/ppp
nnn:ttt MEDIA MISMATCH

The media in tray ttt must be changed to match the media designated in the print job (mmm/ppp indicates correct media type; nnn represents the message number).

CHANGE PAPER TO mmm/ppp
nnn:ttt SIZE MISMATCH

The size of the media in tray ttt does not match the size designated in the print job (mmm/ppp indicates correct media size; nnn represents the message number).

Either replace the paper with the appropriate size or press ON LINE to clear the message and allow the print job to continue.

CHECK BELT UNIT
330:BELT UNIT MISSING

The transfer belt is not correctly installed.

CHECK DUPLEX
nnn:PAPER JAM

Remove the jammed paper.

CHECK FUSER UNIT
320:FUSER UNIT MISSING

The fuser unit is not correctly installed. Open the top cover and push down on the fuser unit to be sure it is locked in place. If the message still appears, remove and reinstall the fuser unit.

CHECK IMAGE DRUM
nnn:ddd DRUM MISSING

Image drum ddd (e.g., 340:YELLOW DRUM MISSING) is either incorrectly installed or missing. Check for proper installation/reinstall.

CHECK ttt
nnn:PAPER JAM

Remove the paper jammed in tray ttt.

CLOSE COVER
nnn:ccc COVER OPEN

Close cover ccc (e.g., 310:UPPER COVER OPEN).

COLLATE FAIL: TOO MANY PAGES

Memory overflow. Break up the print job into two or more groups of pages. If you run into this problem often, consider installing additional memory in the printer.

DISK IS WRITE PROTECTED

An attempt was made to overwrite a read-only file.

DISK FILE OPERATION FAILED

Error with hard disk operations. Try printing the job again.

DISK FILE SYSTEM IS FULL

Hard disk/flash memory is full. Check with your System Administrator or go into the printer menu and clear out some of the Proof & Print or Secure Print jobs stored on the disk.

ttt EMPTY

Appears on the second line of the display to indicate that tray ttt is empty. Refill the tray with print media.

ERROR POSTSCRIPT

A PostScript error has occurred. The rest of the data is ignored. When the job has completed, it aborts and the message automatically clears.

Try printing the job again. This message can occur if virtual memory is used up. Reduce the size of the print job (instead of printing the whole file at once, print several pages at a time; reduce the number of graphics; print the document at a lower resolution; etc.). If you run into this problem often, consider installing additional memory in the printer.

INSTALL ADDITIONAL MEMORY
nnn:MEMORY OVERFLOW

The print job exceeded the printer's memory. Press ON LINE to clear the message and continue.

Reduce the size of the print job (instead of printing the whole file at once, print several pages at a time; reduce the number of graphics; print the document at a lower resolution; etc.). If you run into this problem often, consider installing additional memory in the printer.

INSTALL DUPLEX UNIT
360: DUPLEX UNIT OPEN

Duplex printing is enabled but there is no duplex unit installed. Install the duplex unit.

INSTALL NEW IMAGE DRUM
nnn:ddd DRUM LIFE

Replace the image drum indicated by ddd (e.g., 350: YELLOW DRUM LIFE).

INSTALL NEW TONER
nnn: ttt TONER EMPTY

Replace ttt toner cartridge (e.g., 410: YELLOW TONER EMPTY).

INSTALL PAPER CASSETTE
nnn:ttt MISSING

Tray ttt is not installed in the printer. Install the tray if it's missing.

INSTALL PAPER CASSETTE
nnn:ttt OPEN

Tray tttt is not pushed all the way in. Push the tray all the way in.

INSTALL PAPER CASSETTE
nnn:ttt MISSING

Tray tttt is not installed. Install the missing tray.

JOB OFFSET HOME ERROR

An error has occurred in the left-right shifting of successive copies of multi-copy print jobs. The offset function is disabled for the rest of the job. Stop the printing, empty the top exit, and resend

the balance of the copies.

LOAD mmm
nnn: ttt EMPTY

Tray ttt is empty. Load the requested paper (mmm) in the tray.

LOAD mmm
500: MANUAL PRINT

A manual print job has been sent and you need to load the requested paper (mmm) in the Multi-Purpose Tray, then press the ON LINE button to begin printing the job.

Note: If you do not press the ON LINE button within the time set by the MANUAL TIMEOUT item in the SYSTEM CONFIG MENU (default = 60 seconds), the job will be cancelled and the next job in the print queue will begin processing. If you do not want the printer to cancel such print jobs if the ON LINE button is not pressed soon enough, enter the menu and change the MANUAL TIMEOUT setting to OFF.

ttt NEAR END

Appears on the second line of the display to warn that print media in tray ttt is running out.

OPEN UPPER COVER
nnn:PAPER JAM

Remove the jammed paper.

OPEN UPPER COVER
401: PAPER MULTI FEED

Paper that is too long has been fed in from the Multi-Purpose Tray. Remove the partially fed paper, then load acceptable paper and resend the print job.

OPEN UPPER COVER
400:PAPER SIZE ERROR

An inappropriate media size was fed from a tray. Change the media to an appropriate size, then open and close the top cover.

POWER OFF/ON
nnn:NETWORK ERROR

A network error has occurred. Turn the printer off, then on again. Check the network to be sure it is not down.

PRESS ONLINE SW
INVALID DATA

Invalid data was received. Press ON LINE to return to normal operation.

REMOVE THE PAPER
nnn:ttt UNSUITABLE SIZE

The size media loaded in tray ttt is not usable in that tray. Switch to a usable media size, or if the size is acceptable in the Multi-Purpose Tray, switch to the Multi-Purpose Tray.

REMOVE THE PAPER
470:FINISHER STACKER FULL

Straight-through (face-up) output stacker is full. Remove the print media.

REMOVE THE PAPER
480: STACKER FULL

Top (face-down) output stacker is full. Remove the print media.

SERVICE CALL
nnn:FATAL ERROR

Try turning the printer off then on again. If the message persists, note the identifying error number (nnn) and call for service.

tttt TONER LOW

Appears on the second line of the display to warn that the specified toner is low (ttt indicates toner color; e.g. YELLOW TONER LOW). Be sure you have a replacement toner cartridge on hand.

ttt TONER SENSOR ERROR

Appears on the second line of the display to indicate that there is a problem with the toner sensor (ttt indicates toner color; e.g., CYAN TONER SENSOR ERROR). Call for service.

Status Display Messages

Note: These messages are in alphabetical sequence.

CANCELLING JOB

The printer is cancelling the current print job.

COLLATE COPY iii/jjj

The printer is printing multiple copies using collating.

- iii = number of copy being printed
- jjj = total number of copies requested

COPY kkk/lll

The printer is printing multiple copies:

- kkk = number of copy being printed
- lll = total number of copies requested

DATA ARRIVE

Data has been received, but processing has not yet started.

DATA PRESENT

Unprinted data remains in the buffer. The printer is waiting for additional data.

OFFLINE

The printer is off line.

ONLINE

The printer is on line.

PLEASE POWER OFF

Your request for a hard disk or Flash memory initialization has been processed. Turn the printer off, then on again to reinitialize the hard disk or Flash memory.

POWER SAVE

Appears on the second line of the display to indicate that the printer is in the power save mode.

PRINTING

Data is being printed.

PROCESSING

Data is being processed.

RAM CHECK

RAM is being checked as part of the printer's initialization process.

WARMING UP

The printer is warming up.

Problem Solving: Macintosh Systems

Print job is garbled or fails to print

The time set for the printer to wait for additional data is too short.

► Press MENU to enter the printer menu and go to SYSTEM CONFIG MENU, then change the WAIT TIMEOUT setting to a minimum of 40 seconds.

Cannot configure after USB connection.

Interface is disabled.

► Check that USB interface is set to enable.

MacOS version incorrect.

► Use MacOS version 9.0 or higher that supports USB connection. For earlier versions, connect printer via a network.

USB cable does not meet specifications.

► Switch to a specification Ver.1.1 USB cable.

Configuration procedure was not correctly followed or cancelled.

► Configure again from the beginning.

USB cable is disconnected or faulty.

► Reconnect or try another cable.

A USB hub is being used.

► Connect the printer and computer directly.

Cannot print.

Printer is switched off.

► Turn the printer on.

USB cable is disconnected or faulty.

► Reconnect or try another cable.

A USB hub is being used.

► Try connecting the printer and computer directly.

There is a Hand icon on the desktop printer.

► Select Start printer queue in the Printer menu.

Configuration procedure was not correctly followed or cancelled.

► Configure again from the beginning.

Memory error occurs.

Desktop print monitor or print monitor memory is insufficient.

► Increase memory size.

Printing is slow.

Print processing is carried out by the computer.

► Use a computer with faster print processing.

► Set lower print resolution in the printer driver.

Data is too complex.

► Simplify data.

Problem Solving: Windows Systems

Cannot configure for parallel connection.

The computer does not support bi-directional parallel interface.

► Use a computer that does.

Parallel cable does not meet specifications.

► Use IEEE-1284 compatible, bi-directional parallel cable.

Interface is disabled.

► Check that parallel interface is set to enable in the printer menu.

Configuration procedure was not correctly followed or was cancelled.

► Configure again from the beginning.

Parallel cable is disconnected or faulty.

► Check the connections; if okay, try another cable.

A converter, buffer or extension cable is being used.

► Connect the printer directly to the computer.

Cannot configure for USB connection.

Windows NT4.0 does not support USB.

► Use parallel connection instead.

Windows 95 or 3.1 systems which have been upgraded to Windows 98 are not guaranteed to work with USB.

► Use parallel connection instead.

Computer does not support USB interface.

► Check if there is USB controller in device manager. If not, use parallel connection instead.

USB cable does not meet specifications.

► Use USB cable which meets specification Ver.1.1.

Interface is disabled.

► Check that USB interface is set to Enable.

Configuration procedure was not correctly followed or cancelled.

► Configure again from the beginning.

USB cable is disconnected or faulty.

► Check the connections; if okay, try another cable.

A USB hub is being used.

► Try connecting the printer directly to the computer.

Printout is garbled or incorrect with parallel connection.

Possible mismatch on parallel connection between computer and printer.

► Disable ECP.

Cannot print.
LPT write error.
PRNUSBx write error.

Interface is disabled.

► In the printer menu settings, enable Parallel or USB interface.

Printer is switched off.

► Turn the printer on.

Printer interface cable is disconnected.

► Reconnect the printer interface cable.

A converter, buffer, extension cable or USB hub is being used.

► Connect the printer directly to the computer.

Printer driver output port is incorrect.

► Set the correct output port for the printer (Click Start → Settings → Printers; right click the printer icon, then click Sharing → Ports).

Printer is not selected.

► Be sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 driver is selected when printing a document, or set it as the default printer (Click Start → Settings → Printers; right click the printer icon, then click Set as Default).

Problem with the printer driver.

► Reinstall the printer driver.

Application error or general protection fault.

Application is not suitable for the Windows version being used.

► Upgrade the application.

Memory is insufficient for the number of applications running.

► Close all other applications.

Print file is corrupted.

► Correct or recreate the file.

Memory is insufficient for the application.

► Increase computer’s memory.

Insufficient free space on computer's hard disk.

► Delete unnecessary files (start with Temporary files).

Problem with the printer driver.

► Reinstall the printer driver.

Collated printing is selected, but all the pages are printing as one long duplexed job instead of printing as individually collated duplexed jobs.

If you are using collating with duplex printing, you must select the number of copies in the printer driver.

► In the Print dialog box, click Properties (or your application's equivalent) and set the number of copies in the driver, then click OK and print the document. If you are printing using the Windows 2000 PCL driver, be sure to set the number of copies in the Paper tab, *not* the General tab.

Insufficient memory.

Memory is insufficient for number of applications running.

► Close all other applications.

Printing is slow.

Print processing is carried out by the computer.

► Use a computer with a faster processor.

► Set lower print resolution in the printer driver.

Data is too complex.

► Simplify data.

Maintenance

Toner Cartridges

Replacing the Toner Cartridges

XXX TONER LOW

or

INSTALL NEW TONER
NNN: XXX TONER EMPTY

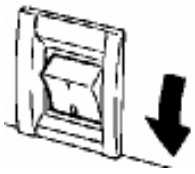
Back

Left
(Straight-Through Paper Path)

Right
(MP Tray)

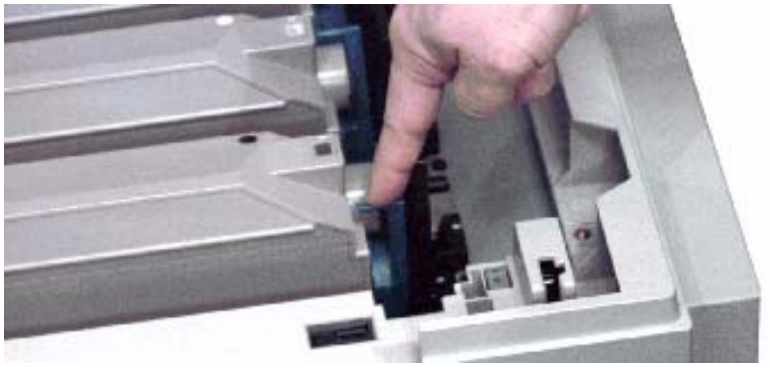
Front

1. Turn the printer off.

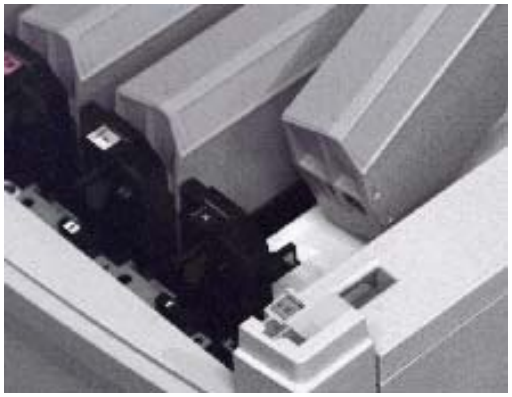


2. Pull up on the handle and open the top cover.

3. Locate the cartridge (XXX, e.g., BLACK) to be changed and move the blue lock lever to the right (away from the open cover) *as far as it will go*.



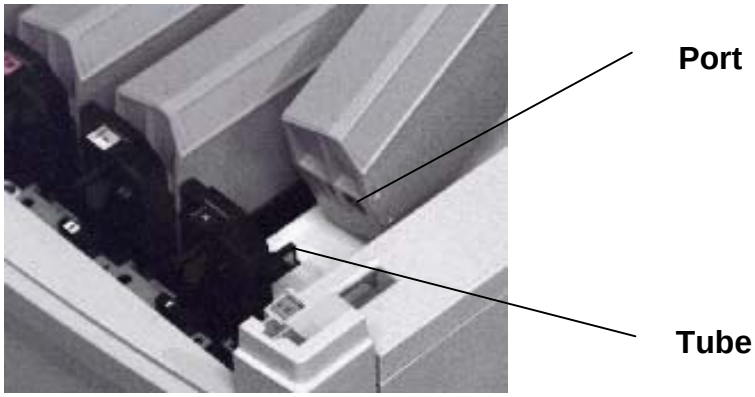
4. Lift the cartridge then slide it toward the back (to clear the tube) and lift it out.



5. Unpack the new toner cartridge and shake it ***back and forth*** to distribute the toner.

6. Hold the cartridge in a horizontal position and remove the tape.

7. Hold the cartridge in a vertical position, then lower the port end into the image drum, sliding the port onto the tube on the drum.

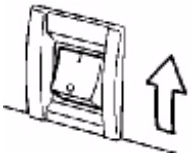


8. Press the cartridge toward the tube, then lower the opposite end, aligning the white tab on the toner cartridge with the groove in the drum. Push the toner cartridge lock lever to the left (toward the open cover) *as far as it will go*.

Caution! Be sure to push the lock lever all the way back. If it is not pushed back and you close the cover, the lever could damage the LED printhead.

9. Remove the LED lens cleaner (supplied with the toner) from its packet and use it to wipe the corresponding LED head clean.

10. Close the cover and turn the printer back on.



Important! After the new toner cartridge is installed, the TONER LOW or TONER EMPTY message should disappear from the display. If it doesn't, try printing a page. If it still doesn't disappear, reinstall the toner cartridge.

Toner Cartridge Life

Toner cartridge life depends on the page density, the percentage of each page that is printed with toner. An average business letter prints at between 3% and 5% density; graphics density is usually higher. The higher the print density, the more toner is used.

On the average, the toner cartridge will produce approximately 15,000 sheets at 5% print density. *This can vary greatly depending on the relative amount of a particular toner color used in your print jobs.*

Important! The first toner cartridges you place in your printer will only produce about half as many sheets. This is normal, as the new image drum reservoirs and developing roller system must saturate with toner.

Be sure you have a replacement toner cartridge on hand after the XXX TONER LOW message (e.g., BLACK TONER LOW) appears on the second line of the display. At this point, the printer will print about 100 more sheets.

You must replace the toner cartridge when the

INSTALL NEW TONER nnn: XXXXX TONER EMPTY

message appears.

For example:

INSTALL NEW TONER 413: BLACK TONER EMPTY

At this point the printer will stop printing. Printing will not resume until the empty toner cartridge is replaced.

Image Drums

Replacing Image Drums

CHANGE XXX IMAGE DRUM

Note: You will need both a new image drum and a new toner cartridge to replace an image drum.

Caution! ***The image drum can be damaged by too much exposure to light. Leave the image drum in the package until you are ready to install it in the printer.***

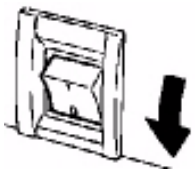
Back

Left
(Straight-Through Paper Path)

Right
(MP Tray)

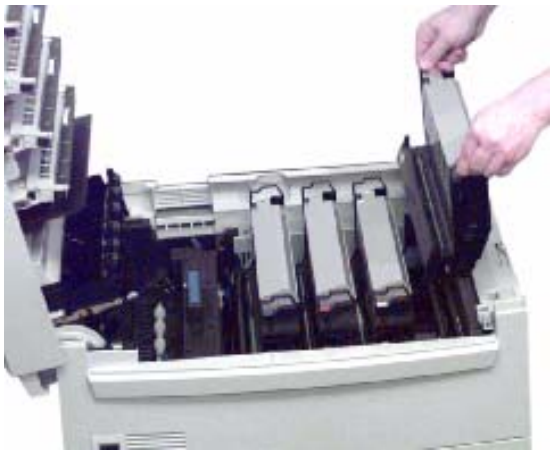
Front

1. Turn the printer off.



2. Pull up on the handle and lift the cover.

3. Lift out the appropriate image drum (corresponding to XXX on the display) and discard it and the toner cartridge in accordance with local regulations.



Caution!

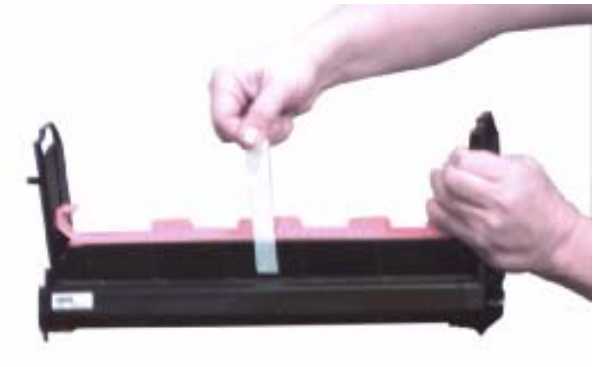
Avoid touching the green surface of the image drum.

Be careful not to set the cartridge down on anything that might scratch the green surface.

Keep the drum from exposure to direct sunlight and don't let it sit in room light for more than 5 minutes.

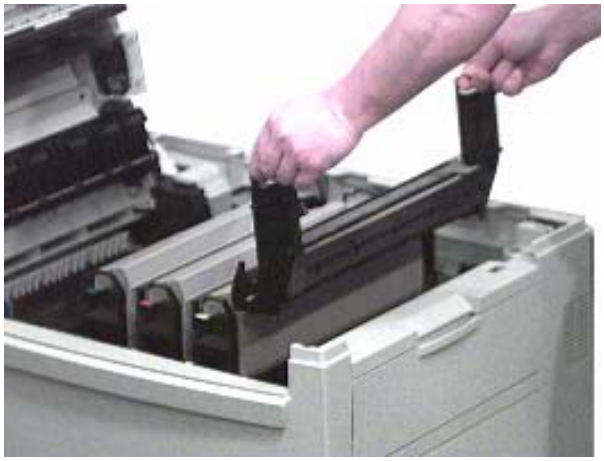
4. Unpack the new drum, then remove the protective sheet.

5. Remove the tape.

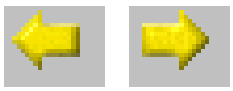


6. Unlock the blanking plate by pushing in the direction of the molded-in arrow, then remove the blanking plate from the drum.

7. Lower the new image drum into the printer, aligning the pins on the ends of the drum with the slots (indicated by arrows) in the printer.

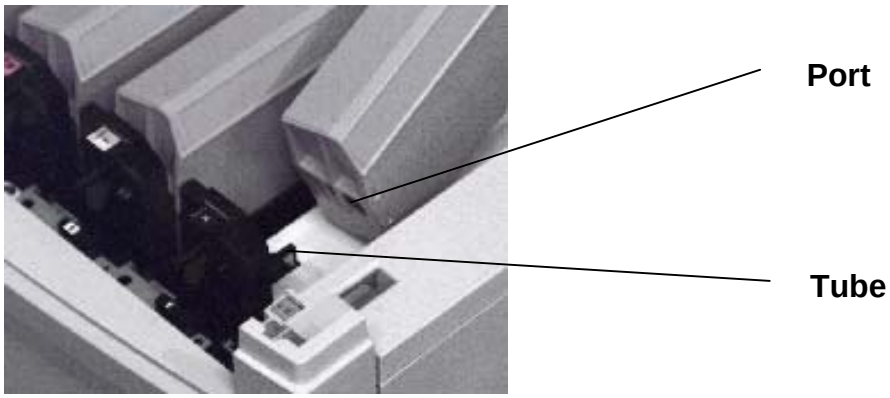


8. Unpack the new toner cartridge and shake it ***back and forth*** to distribute the toner.



9. Carefully remove the tape.

10. Hold the cartridge in a vertical position and lower the port end into the image drum, sliding the port onto the tube on the drum.

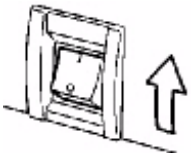


11. Press the cartridge toward the tube, then lower the opposite end, aligning the white tab on the toner cartridge with the groove in the drum. Push the toner cartridge lock lever to the left (toward the open cover) *as far as it will go*.

Caution! ***Be sure to push the lock lever all the way back. If it is not pushed back and you close the cover, the lever could damage the LED printhead.***

12. Remove the LED lens cleaner (supplied with the toner) from its packet and use it to wipe the corresponding LED head clean.

13. Close the cover and turn the printer back on.



Important! **After the drum/toner is installed, the CHANGE XXX IMAGE DRUM message should disappear from the display. If it doesn't, try printing a page. If it still doesn't disappear, reinstall the drum.**

Image Drum Precautions

The image drums are fragile. *To avoid damage to new drums*, take these precautions while handling the new image drum cartridges:

- Avoid touching the green drum surface.
- Be careful not to set the cartridge down on anything that might scratch the green drum surface.
- Keep the drum from exposure to direct sunlight and don't let it sit in room light for more than 5 minutes.
- Leave the image drum in the package until you are ready to install it in the printer.

Image Drum Life

The life of the image drums depends on a number of factors, including

- operating temperature
- humidity
- type of paper you use
- number of pages per job.

Each time you print or turn the printer on/off, the drums have to rotate to start up and to wind down. Frequent one-page print jobs will age your drums more quickly than multiple-page print jobs.

For simplex (one-sided) printing with 5% area coverage, the image drums should normally last:

- about 26,000 pages at 3 pages per job, or
- about 39,000 pages, continuous printing

Important! These numbers are approximate since you won't print the same number of pages each time, the amount of color will vary from page to page, and environmental conditions and print media used may vary.

When an image drum nears the end of its life, the CHANGE DRUM message appears on the display. You should have a new image drum cartridge and a new toner cartridge on hand at this point. Replace the image drum when the print becomes faint or begins to deteriorate.

Cleaning the LED Arrays

When to Clean the LED Arrays

- Clean the corresponding LED array every time you install a new toner cartridge.
- If faded vertical stripes appear on your printed pages between toner changes, clean the LED arrays.

To clean the LED arrays:

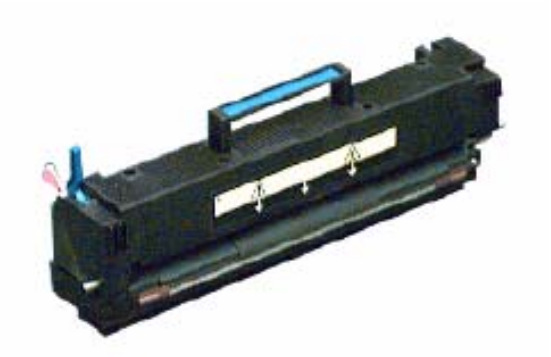
1. Pull up on the handle and lift the cover.

2. Remove the LED Lens Cleaner Pad from the package and carefully run it along each LED array, folding it over to a fresh surface before cleaning each additional array.

> **Note:** If you do not have a lens cleaner pad, you can use a lint-free cloth with a little rubbing alcohol on it to clean the LED arrays.

3. Close the printer cover.

Replacing the Fuser Unit



When the CHANGE FUSER UNIT message appears on the display, it's time to replace the Fuser Unit.

***Caution!** The fuser unit may be **HOT**. Be sure to let it cool down before attempting to replace it.*

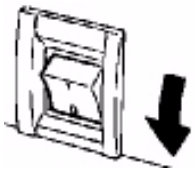
Back

Left
(Straight-Through Paper Path)

Right
(MP Tray)

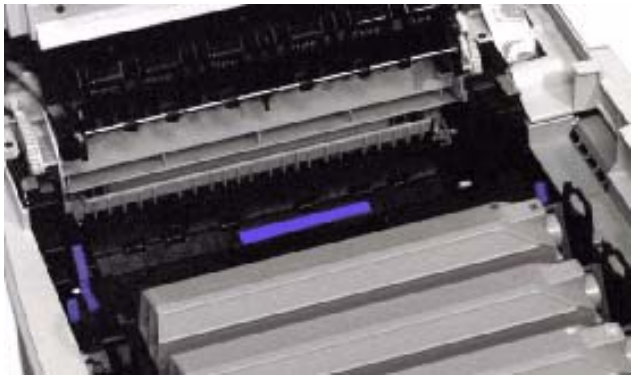
Front

1. Turn the printer off.



2. Pull up on the handle and lift the cover.

3. Push the blue lock levers at either end of the fuser unit to the left (toward the open printer cover) to release the fuser.



4. Grab the handle and lift the fuser out."

5. Unpack the replacement fuser and lower it into the printer, pushing down until you feel it snap into place.

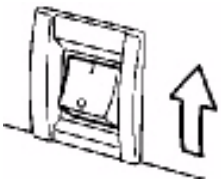
Note: Make sure the blue lock levers at either end of the fuser have snapped back locking the fuser unit in place. If not, push them to the right (away from the open cover).

6. If present, remove the orange fuser transport lock:
   a. Move the fuser roller lock lever to the right (away from the open cover) and remove the lock.

   b. Move the fuser roller release lever to the left (toward the open cover) to re-lock the

roller.

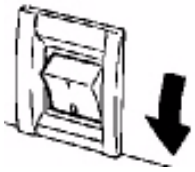
7. Close the printer cover and turn the printer back on.



Replacing the Transfer Belt

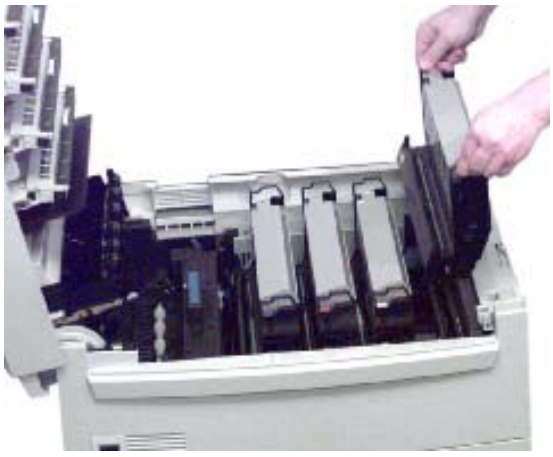
When the message CHANGE BELT UNIT appears on the display, it's time to replace the transfer belt unit.

1. Turn the printer off.

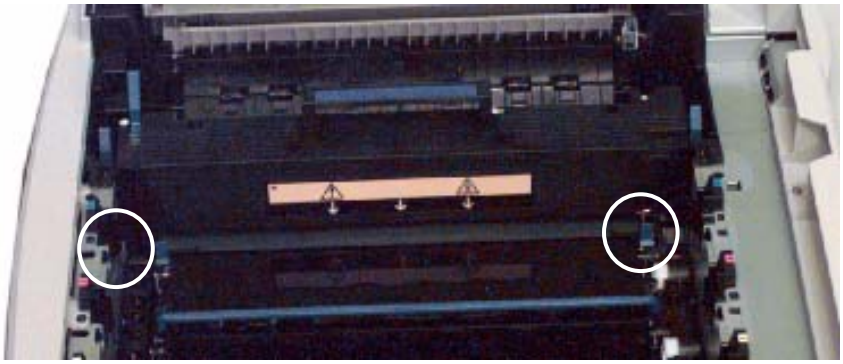


2. Pull up on the handle and open the top cover.

3. Remove the four image drums/toner cartridges.



4. Press the blue transfer belt lock levers (circled) to the left (toward the open cover).



5. Lift the end of the transfer belt unit up by the blue handle.

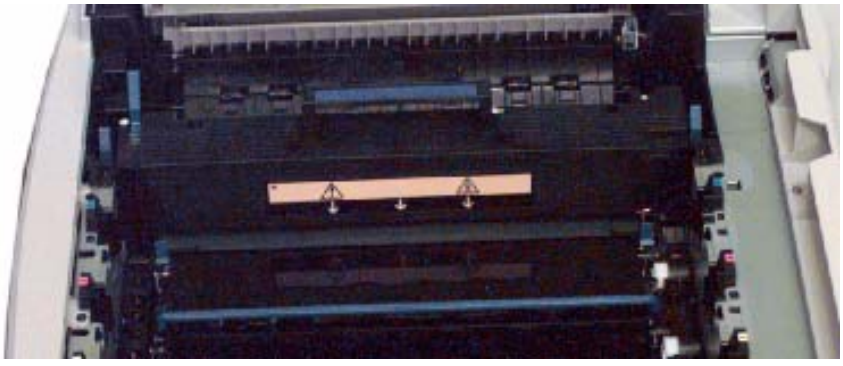
6. Grasp both handles and lift the transfer belt unit out of the printer.

7. Unpack the new transfer belt unit.

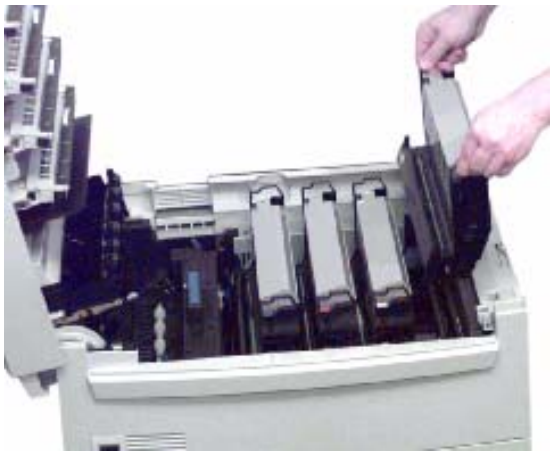
Caution! Avoid touching the shiny black surface of the transfer belt.

8. Hold the transfer belt by the handles and lower it into the printer.

9. Move the blue lock levers to the right (away from the open cover) to lock the transfer belt in place.



10. Put the image drums/toner cartridges back into the printer.



11. Close the cover and turn the printer back on.

Setting the Color Registration

Normally the printer is programmed to automatically set the Color Registration:

- every time the printer is turned on
- whenever the cover is closed
- after every 200 printed pages

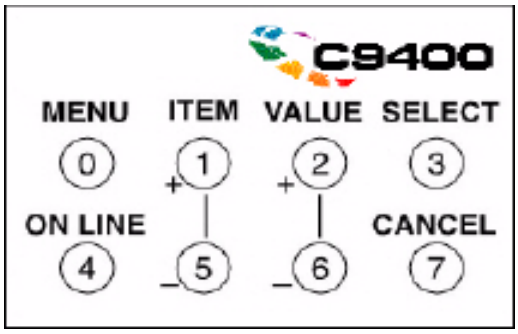
You can also initiate the automatic registration manually or you can disengage the automatic registration feature and set the color registration manually.

Initiating the Auto Registration Manually

To ensure optimum printer performance, you should perform a Color Registration whenever you

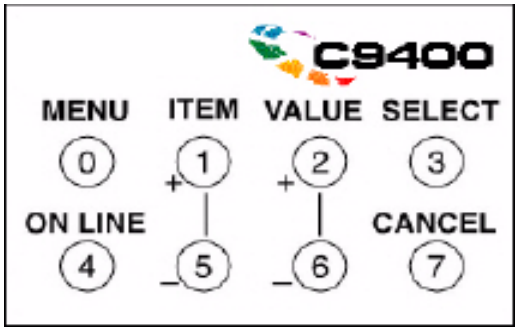
- remove and replace the drum/toner cradle
- replace an image drum
- lift out an image drum, then put it back

You can initiate automatic registration by shutting the printer off and turning it back on, but it's quicker to enter the menu and execute the color registration from there. To do this:

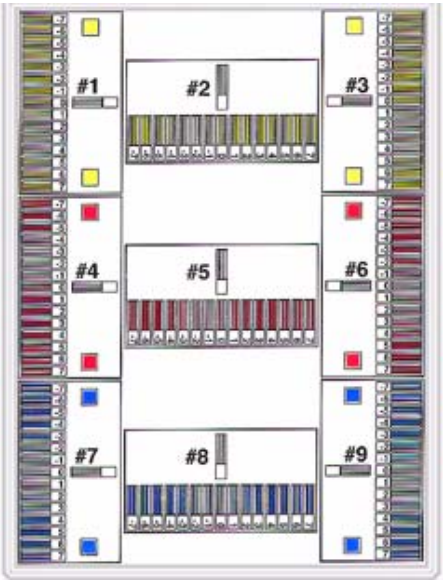


1. Press MENU repeatedly until COLOR MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until AUTO REGISTRATION EXECUTE appears on the display.
3. Press SELECT.
   ON LINE COLOR ADJUSTING
   flashes on the display.
4. When the automatic registration is complete, the printer goes back on line.

To Set the Color Registration Manually:



1. Press MENU repeatedly until COLOR MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until AUTO REGISTRATION ON * appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + to change the setting to OFF.
4. Press SELECT to engage the setting.
   An asterisk appears next to OFF.
5. Press ITEM +.
   ADJUST REGISTRATION PRINT PATTERN
   appears on the display.
6. Press SELECT and wait for the registration pattern to print:



7. Examine the page. The test pattern page has nine sections, each with a series of lined boxes in it. Beginning with section #1, find the box which shows no color in the spaces between the black lines, and make a note of its number.

   Here's what you're looking for:

   Not this:

8. Press ITEM +.

   ADJUST REGISTRATION #1
   0*

   appears on the display.

9. Press VALUE + or VALUE - until the number corresponding to the box which shows no color in the spaces appears on the second line of the display.
10. Press SELECT.
    An asterisk appears next to the number.
11. Press ITEM +.

    ADJUST REGISTRATION #2
    0*

    appears on the display.

12. Repeat steps 9 through 11 until you have entered the appropriate numbers for all nine test pattern sections.
13. Press ITEM + several times until AUTO REGISTRATION PRINT PATTERN appears on

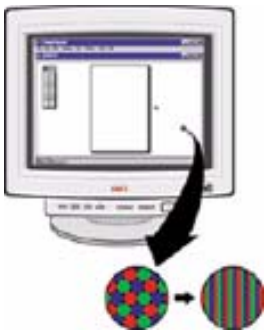
the display.

14. Press SELECT and wait for the pattern to print.
15. Re-examine the test page. The boxes with no color in the spaces should all now correspond to 0. If not, repeat steps 9 through 11 for those that don't, then follow step 13 to reprint the test pattern.
16. Press ON LINE to save the settings and exit the menu.

Working with Color

Glossary

Additive Primaries



Red, Green and Blue (RGB) are the additive primaries and the basis for forming other colors in displays such as computer monitors or televisions.

Brightness

The relative lightness or darkness of a color, is usually measured as a percentage from 0% (black) to 100% (white).

CIE

In 1931, the Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage (CIE) devised a color system based on the human visual system which is now an accepted standard. This system is not linear and is therefore difficult to interpret. There have been modifications to the system that have given rise to CIELab and CIELuv.

Cluster-dot Screening

This is a halftoning method that uses multiple pixels that vary from small to larger dots as the color gets darker. It is characterized by a polka-dot look.

CMY(K)

Cyan, magenta, yellow and black are the toners used in the four color print process. Due to the imperfections in toners, black is added rather than produced by mixing the other three inks. Black is identified as 'K' to avoid confusion with other colors such as blue.

Color Gamut

The range of colors that a device can produce is known as its color gamut. Devices are unable to produce all colors that occur in nature so their color gamut is a subset of this.

Color Management System (CMS)

A system used to communicate color fidelity across devices such as input, display and output to ensure that the best color rendition possible is given at all times.

Color Mapping

The translation of color representation from one device (or system) to another. For example, from computer screen colors to printed colors.

Color Models

A color model is a system that allows colors to be arranged or identified. There are various models in existence, with some more suitable to specific applications than others.

Color Separations

Each of the process colors are printed separately and must therefore be specified individually, as the color is needed. Image data is therefore split into the primary colors (plus spot colors) before printing.

Color Space

This is a method of describing color. Some systems are device-dependent such as RGB and CMYK. The CIE system is a device independent color space. Note that all color models are not color spaces in their own right.

Colorants

These are the colors used by a device to reproduce color. A printing press uses the CMYK (cyan, magenta, yellow, black) colorants.

Density

In this context, density bears no relation to the mass and volume of the object. Rather, it is the ability of the object to absorb light. The more light absorbed, the higher the object density.

Dithering

A technique where pixels of different colors are placed in close proximity to give the illusion of another color as perceived by the human visual system.

Dot Gain

During the printing process, toners may spread causing dots on a page to print larger than intended. This results in darker tones and colors. The problem can be compensated for by careful adjustment.

Error Diffusion

This is usually associated with halftoning, but can also be used with dither. The error between a pixel and its intended value is propagated to adjacent pixels to produce a balanced overall effect. Results may sometimes appear grainy.

Grayscale

Differing shades of gray ranging from black to white. Eight bits of data will produce 256 shades of gray.

Halftoning

A printed image is composed of dots (or pixels). The spacing of these pixels can give the illusion of shades or tone. Increasing the spacing of dots lightens the shade so that it tends towards white (color of the page).

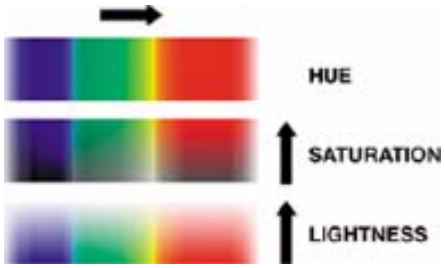
Highlight

This is the lightest part of an image. In the extreme, this would be white.

HSB Model

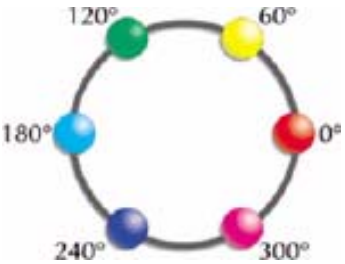
Colors are defined by hue, saturation and brightness. The dimensions are similar to the HSL model but the HSB model is related to the RGB system.

HSL Model



Colors are defined by hue, saturation and lightness.

Hue



Hue is the color reflected from or transmitted through an object. It is measured as a location on the standard color wheel, expressed as a degree between 0° to 360°. In common use, hue is identified by the name of the color such as red, green, orange, etc.

Indexed Color

Color pixels are represented by 8-bits. This gives the possibility of 256 colors which are contained in a lookup table.

Lightness

This describes the intensity of a color and determines whether a color is closer to black or white.

Moiré Pattern

This is an undesirable pattern that occurs due to pixel (or) dot placement. The eye is able to pick up repetitive patterns that exist within an image.

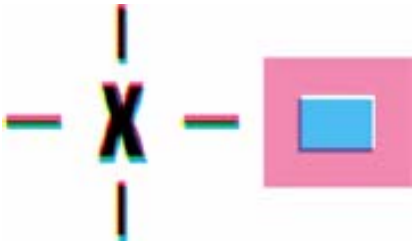
Pixel

This is the smallest addressable dot or PICture ELement. This has been abbreviated as PIXEL rather than PICEL.

Primary Color

All colors can be produced by mixing a limited set of colors. There are two different sets of primary colors associated with the video and printing industries: Additive Primaries (RGB) and Subtractive Primaries (CMYK).

Registration



This describes the alignment of the various colors when printing. As each of the process primaries are specified separately and printed individually, it is important that the color is placed in precise locations or the colors will not align to produce the desired result.

RGB

Computer monitors, for example, use red, green and blue phosphors to display images. These colors are specified using the RGB model.

Saturation

Saturation, sometimes called chroma, is the strength or purity of the color. It represents the amount of grey in proportion to the hue and is measured as a percentage from 0% (grey) to 100% (fully saturated). On the standard color wheel, saturation increases from the center to the edge.

Secondary Color

Mixing two primary colors in equal amounts will produce a secondary color (e.g., Red + Green = Yellow).

Spot Color

A term used in offset printing. These are additional colors used in printing that are not a part of the process ink set and are specified individually. These colors are required when the end result is of paramount importance (such as within a corporate logo) as there is a substantial increase in cost. A separate plate is also required.

Subtractive Primaries

Cyan, Magenta and Yellow (CMY) are the subtractive primaries and are the basis for toners used in color printing. Color is produced because the toners are designed to absorb certain wavelengths of light and transmit others.

YCC

This system was developed by Kodak for encoding color images for display on video monitors. RGB values are converted to a luminance component (Y) and chromatic components (C1) and (C2).

Additive versus Subtractive

Primary colors can be categorized as either additive or subtractive.

Computer monitors use additive primaries.

The printing process uses subtractive primaries.

How do the two differ?

Additive Primaries

The additive primaries are Red, Green and Blue (RGB). Video technology such as computer monitors and television screens uses additive primaries.

Starting from black (lack of color) and adding red, green and blue in equal quantities will generate shades of gray. A full, balanced mixture of all three colors produces white. Mixing the three colors in different quantities will generate intermediate colors.

Subtractive Primaries

The subtractive primaries are Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow (CMY). Printing processes use subtractive primaries.

With subtractive primaries, we start with a white background (usually paper) and add translucent inks of cyan, magenta and yellow to subtract certain wavelengths of light.

For example, cyan ink on a page appears as cyan because the ink removes components of red light and reflects green and blue, which we perceive as cyan.

In theory, a combination of the three subtractive primaries should produce black. In practice, pigments used in toner are not perfect and the combination usually gives rise to a dark green/brown instead of black. For this reason, in many color output devices, a separate black toner is used to produce grays and black (in shadows and black text for example). This is the CMYK (Cyan / Magenta / Yellow / Black) model and is the method most widely used in the color printing and printer industry.

The OKI® C9000 Series Printers use separate cyan, magenta, yellow and black toner cartridges to generate high definition color images.

Color Adjustments

Certain images such as bitmaps sometimes print with a strong hint of a particular color. Images that look fine when viewed on a monitor may not necessarily print that way.

The color that appears to dominate the picture will vary depending on factors such as

- The scanner or other input device having a bias towards a particular color.
- The monitor's inability to represent certain colors on-screen.

Color Adjustment Using the Software Application

Many software packages provide a way to reduce the amount of any of the process colors put on the page in relation to the others.

Example

You find that all of your graphics have a tendency to contain too much blue. To compensate for this, reduce the amount of cyan or magenta, which combine to produce blue (if you do this, bear in mind that other colors containing cyan or magenta will also be affected). An alternative would be to increase the amount of yellow. This has the advantage of increasing

color saturation while balancing the image.

Changing the Lightness & Saturation Settings in the OKI PCL Driver

Another method of decreasing strong colors is to increase the lightness setting. To compensate for this, the saturation setting must be stepped down accordingly. As a rule, the saturation should be stepped down an equal number of steps to the level that the lightness has been stepped up.

This can be done in the OKI® C9000 Series PCL printer driver as you are printing the document:

1. Click Properties or Printer Setup or the equivalent button in your Print dialog box.
2. Click the Color tab.
3. Select Manual color.
4. Adjust the Lightness and Saturation settings at the bottom of the screen.
5. Click OK.

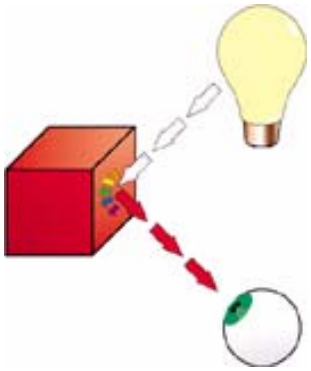
Color Perception

Color perception depends on the presence of

- A light source
- An object
- An observer

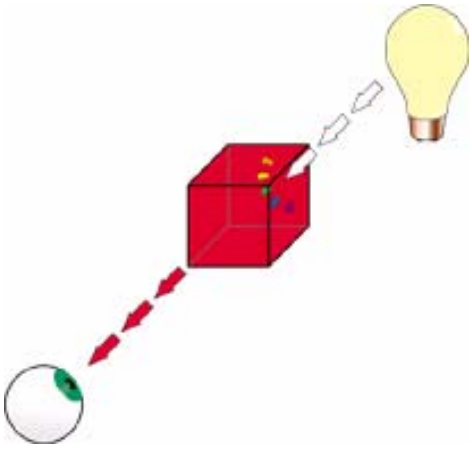
Our perception of color involves light from a source interacting with an object and entering the eye. The composition of the light and its interaction with the object will define the color we see.

Reflected Light



A reflective object absorbs some sections of the visible spectrum and reflects the rest. What we see is the reflected portion. An object removing wavelengths at the ultra violet end of the spectrum, for example, will appear red.

Transmitted Light



A transmissive object allows light to pass through it and may absorb a section of the spectrum. The color of the object in this case will depend on the wavelengths of light that are allowed to pass through.

Emitted Light

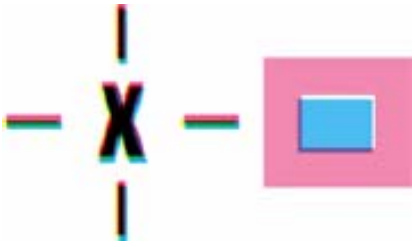
An emissive object emits light. The appearance of the light will depend on the wavelengths emitted.

Color Registration

The CMYK printing process uses overlapping toner of cyan, magenta and yellow. To produce the best possible output, the colors must print in specific positions so that overlaps and dithering are accurate. If the colors are not aligned, the resulting print will have color shifts (colors produced where incorrect colors overlay to produce an undesired color) or appear blurred.

Using black to print gray tints and black text eliminates the problem when printing gray and black, but not when color is constructed from two or more of the process primaries.

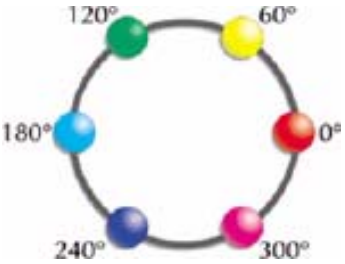
The illustration shows how registration problems can cause undesired affects.



Color Wheel

The relationship between colors can be best shown on what is known as a color wheel. The hue value of a particular color is expressed in degrees. For example, the additive primaries are displaced by 120° from each other: red at 0°, green at 120° and blue at 240°. The subtractive

primaries, yellow, cyan and magenta, are located at mid points between these.



The color wheel shows the following relationships:

- Each color is a secondary color of the two colors on either side of it. For example, mixing equal quantities of yellow and magenta will produce red.
- A color is directly opposite its complement.

We can add another set of neighboring colors on the color wheel to produce additional intermediate colors. The numbers on the color wheel doubles to twelve:

Repeating the procedure a number of times produces a color wheel with subtle changes of hue from neighbor to neighbor.

Dithering & Halftones

No matter how colors are specified, the printer is only able to use a combination of three colors plus black to generate an image on paper. To achieve this the printer uses processes known as dithering and halftoning.

Dithering

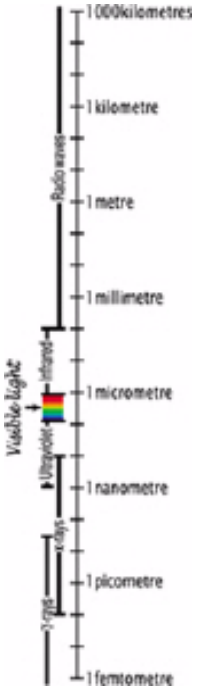
Each addressable picture element (pixel) on a monitor screen or printed output contributes to what we see in the final image. The pixels are placed in close proximity so the eye is unable to resolve individual dots. Colors of adjacent pixels appear to merge and produce a new color. Using dot patterns of a given set of colors to generate new colors is known as dithering.

Halftoning

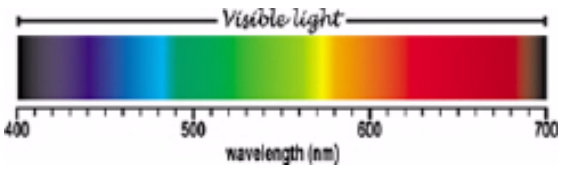
Shades of gray can be generated by using a similar method of black dot placement. This technique is known as halftoning and gives rise to what we perceive as a continuous tone image.

The entire printing area is split into sections known as cells (much like a grid). The patterns within the cell are then altered to obtain the required amount of grayscale. An area of an image containing 50% gray will contain cells that have half of the dots within the cell printed with black and the other half left empty.

The Electromagnetic Spectrum



Visible Light



Visible light comprises a minute portion of the electromagnetic (EM) spectrum. Although we are "blind" to the rest of the EM spectrum, the part we do see has a significant impact on our

perception of everything around us.

White Light

White light contains light from all visible wavelengths in balanced quantities.

Black Light

Black light is the absence of all wavelengths.

Perceived Light

Different individual wavelengths in the spectrum give rise to what we perceive as color. For example, a wavelength around 700 nm (0.0007 mm wavelength) in interpreted by our eyes as red, while the other end of the scale, 400 nm, is interpreted by our eyes as violet.

Neutral Colors

Although the term color is used, neutral colors do not have properties of hue or saturation. They are described in terms of lightness only.

The neutral colors are black and white and all shades of gray in between. A balanced mix of the subtractive primariescyan, magenta and yellowyields the neutral color or black (in theory). The same effect can be achieved with the additive primaries by having an equal mix of red, green and blue light.

Primary & Secondary Colors

In theory, all colors can be made up from a very small group of color elements.

Primary Colors

There are three primary colors: blue, red and yellow. All other colors can be obtained by mixing the primary colors in varying proportions.

Secondary Colors

Mixing two primary colors in equal proportions produces what is known as a secondary color. For example, mixing blue and yellow produces the secondary color green.

Problems Using Color

Computer monitors and printers use different methods to generate colors. Computer monitors

use RGB (additive primaries) while printers use CMYK (subtractive primaries, plus black).

In addition, there is a limit on how many colors a monitor or printer can generate. This is known as a device's color gamut:

Some colors can be reproduced on both devices, while others can be displayed on a monitor but cannot be printed, or vice versa. In practice this may lead to a printed page not matching the original on-screen image. What has happened?

Images can be captured:

- through scans
- through digital photography
- through direct input via application programs

But however the original image is obtained, it will be displayed and manipulated on-screen in RGB color, then converted to CMYK for printing. Each of these processes requires data conversion and manipulation.

An image seen on a computer monitor relies on the monitor's ability to reproduce the image and represent colors within it. Adjustments such as brightness, color and contrast also tailor the image to the preference of the viewer rather than a display of true color. The data sent to the printer may not be adjusted to allow for imperfections in the toners used.

These differences in monitors and printers can to a large extent be reconciled through the use of Color Management Systems.

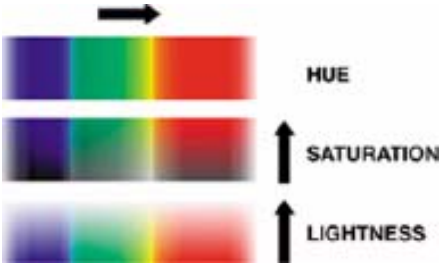
Specifying Color

There are many ways to specify color and many models to use, including:

- HSL
- RGB
- HSB
- CMY[K]
- CIE Yxy
- CIELAB and CIELUV
- YCC

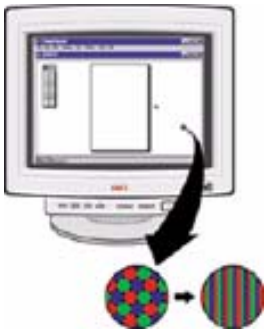
Each of these models have their advantages and disadvantages and are useful in particular situations. We will only discuss the first two here.

The HSL Model



The color wheel, described above, is a two-dimensional view of the HSL model. The HSL model is based on Hue, Saturation and Lightness as components for specifying color. The third dimension in this case is lightness, which describes the tendency towards black or white.

The RGB Model



Most applications support the RGB model which (along with CMYK) is perhaps the simplest to use. This model is used to specify colors by varying the proportions and levels of the red, green and blue components.

The amount of red, green and blue in a color is usually expressed as a number from 0 to 255. Less commonly it may expressed as a number between 0 and 65535 or as a percentage. Converting between systems is straightforward.

Example

To achieve a color that is described as 100% red, 50% green and 40% blue:

255 Color Scale

100/100 x 255 = 255 red

50/100 x 255 = 128 green

40/100 x 255 = 102 blue

65535 Color Scale

100/100 x 65535 = 65535 red

50/100 x 65535 = 32768 green

40/100 x 65535 = 26214 blue

The printout from this set of numbers should produce a color close to the original. However, it may be necessary to make minor adjustments until the right combination is found.

Once a color match is obtained, the RGB component numbers should be entered regardless of the colors displayed on-screen.

To maintain color consistency it is recommended that OKI® consumables be used since they are manufactured specifically for the OKI C9000 Series Printer and will produce the best color results.

Using the Color Swatch Utility

Note: The Color Swatch Utility is not available for the Windows 95 PostScript Driver. It can be accessed in the Windows 95 PCL driver.

Differences in the way colors are represented on the computer screen (RGB) and the way they appear on the printed document (CMYK) can result in undesired colors in the printed document. Use the Color Swatch Utility to set your application's RGB values to produce the color you want regardless of what you see on the screen.

The OKI® Color Swatch Utility prints a series of sample colors each with RGB values listed below. To ensure that a particular color prints true, pick the appropriate color from the swatch and use its RGB values to designate that color in your software application (ignore the color's appearance on your screen).

1. Click Start → Programs OKI C Series → Color Swatch Utility.
   The Swatch Utility dialog box appears.

2. To set custom values for Hue, Saturation and Lightness, click File → Custom Swatch, then make your changes in the Customize Color dialog box and click OK.
3. Click File → Print.
4. Make sure that the OKI C9200 or C9400 printer is selected, then print the swatch.
5. Find the color on the swatch that most closely matches the color you want, then use the RGB values listed for the color to designate that color in your software application.

Accessing the Color Swatches in the Windows 95 PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Properties.
   The OKI PCL Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Color tab.
4. Click Print color swatch, then make your selection of swatches to print and click OK.

Windows ICM (Image Color Matching)

Note: Windows ICM is not available for Windows NT 4.0.

If you prefer, you can use Windows Image Color Matching to provide consistency between the color of images displayed on the screen and the color of images generated by the printer.

Note: For additional information on Windows color management, see http://www.microsoft.com/hwdev/devdes/icmwp.htm.

ICM: Windows 2000

Activating the ICM Files in the Windows 2000 PCL Driver

To activate the OKI ICM files in the Windows 2000 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon then click Properties.
3. Click the Color Management tab.
4. Click Add, then go to the Windows\System32\Color directory.
5. Select the OKI C9200 or C9400 ICM files and click Add.
6. Click Apply, then click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Activating the OKI ICM Files in the Windows 2000 PostScript Driver

To activate the OKI ICM files in the Windows 2000 PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon then click Properties.
3. Click the Color Management tab.

4. Click Add, then go to the Windows\System32\Color directory.
5. Select the OKI C9200 or C9400 ICM files, then click Add.
6. Click Apply.
7. Click OK.
8. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon then click Printing Preferences.
9. On the Layout tab, click Advanced, then select your choice for ICM Method from the Image Color management drop-down list.
10. Click OK twice, then close the Printers dialog box.

ICM: Windows Me/98/95

Activating the OKI ICM Files in the Windows Me/98/95 PCL Driver

To activate the OKI ICM files in the Windows Me/98/95 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon then click Properties.
3. Click the Color Management tab.
4. Click Add, then select the OKI C9200 or C9400 ICM files (e.g., Ok9400l1.icm and Ok9400l2.icm).
5. Click Add.
6. Click Apply, then click OK.

Activating the OKI ICM Files in the Windows Me/98/95 PostScript Driver

To activate the OKI ICM files in the Windows Me/98/95 PostScript printer driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
3. Click the Color Management tab.
4. Click Add, then select the OKI C9200 or C9400 ICM files (Ok9400l1.icm and Ok9400l2.icm).
5. Click Add.
6. Click Apply, then click OK.
7. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
8. Click the Color tab.
9. Click Windows ICM to select it, then click Options.
   The Image Color Matching dialog box appears.
10. Select you preferences for Image color matching method and Rendering intent, then click OK.
11. Click OK, then close the Printers dialog box.

Color Management

Color Management Systems

Color Management Systems (CMS), such as those found in the OKI® C9000 Series printer drivers, help correct mismatches that may occur during the RGB and CMYK conversion process.

Color Management Systems ensure a better match between the input data and the printed result, but cannot always allow for monitor adjustment or variations in paper stock.

Effects of Paper

Color. Paper can sometimes appear blue or cream in hue. This will have an effect on the light reflected from the page which can change the appearance of some colors.

Texture. The texture of the paper used will affect the way that light is scattered and may also result in patches of light or dense color.

You should experiment with a variety of papers to find and adopt a paper that provides the best results for your print jobs.

Potential Problems with Color: Plan, plan, plan!

- Watch the amount of color you use: too much color can have a negative affect on the overall document
- Be careful when using colors considered garish. These will definitely affect the way the document is perceived and should be used only to create an intentional special affect.
- Consider the result when colors are placed in close proximity: make sure they complement one another and enhance the document rather than detracting from it.

Planning ahead with care should greatly minimize any of these problems.

Experiment for Best Results

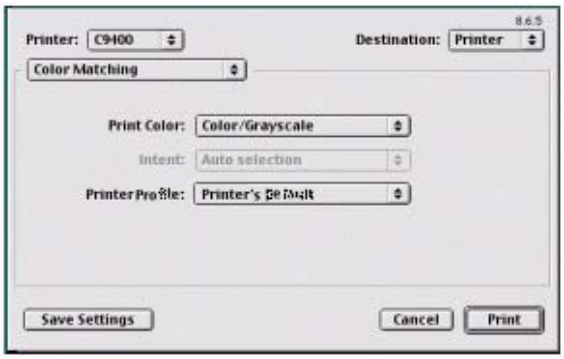
If specific colors are of paramount importance, such as those in your company logo, use the OKI Color Swatch Utility to determine the RGB values to use in your application software to give the closest match to the required color.

Color Management: Macintosh®

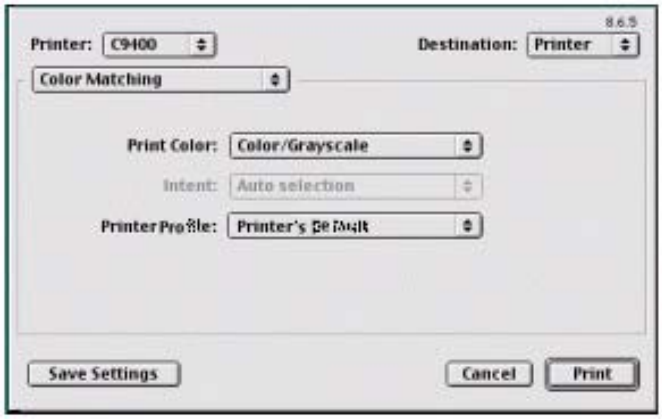
Software applications generally have their own color matching and management facilities for display and printing. Please refer to the documentation for the software application on how to carry out color matching and management from within the software.

Important! Please note that some software applications may overwrite the settings in the printer driver.

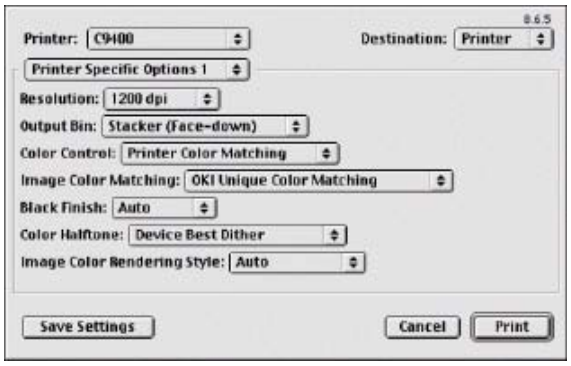
1. Double click on the printer icon to open the printer dialog.
2. Click File → Print Window.



3. Select Color Matching from the drop down list.
4. Select the color printing required under Print Color.
5. Select the printer profile required under Printer Profile.



6. Select Printer Specific Options 1 from the drop down list, then select the settings from the various options for color printing.



7. Click Save Settings to save the printer driver settings or click Print to print the document.

Color Management: Windows 2000

Software applications generally have their own color matching and management facilities for display and printing. Please refer to the software application's documentation for information on color matching and management from within the software.

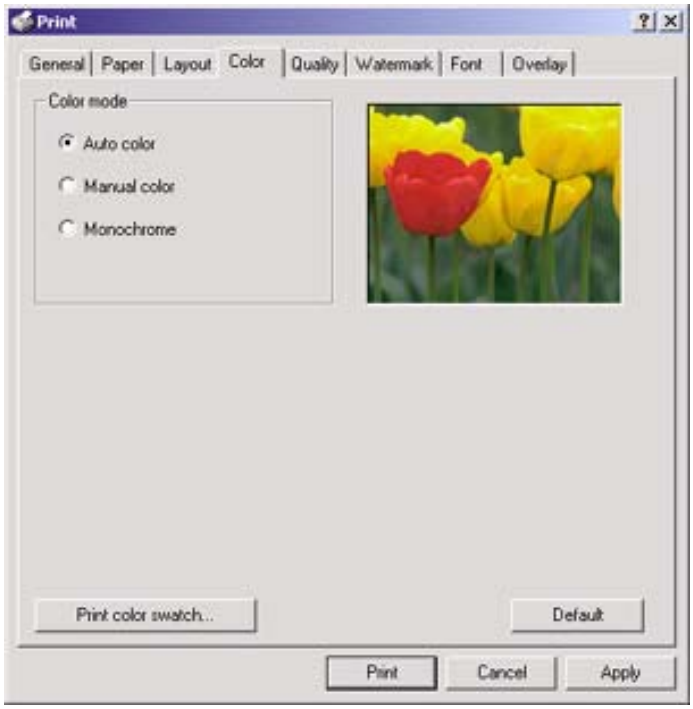
Important! Please note that some software applications may overwrite the settings in the printer driver.

Windows 2000 PCL Driver

Color Management for an Individual Print Job: Windows 2000 PCL

To set the color management options manually for a print job using the Windows 2000 PCL driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click the Color tab.



Note: If you select Manual Color, you can adjust each item of the Color Setting.

We recommend Manual Color only for users who have a lot of experience with color printing. When these adjustments are made, sometimes the printed colors differ greatly from the colors on the screen. Continue to adjust settings, changing one setting at a time, until the desired colors are achieved.

4. To make the color settings manually, click Manual color under Color mode.

Note: For additional information on the various manual color parameters, see the help for the OKI C Series PCL printer driver (click ? at the top of the dialog box).

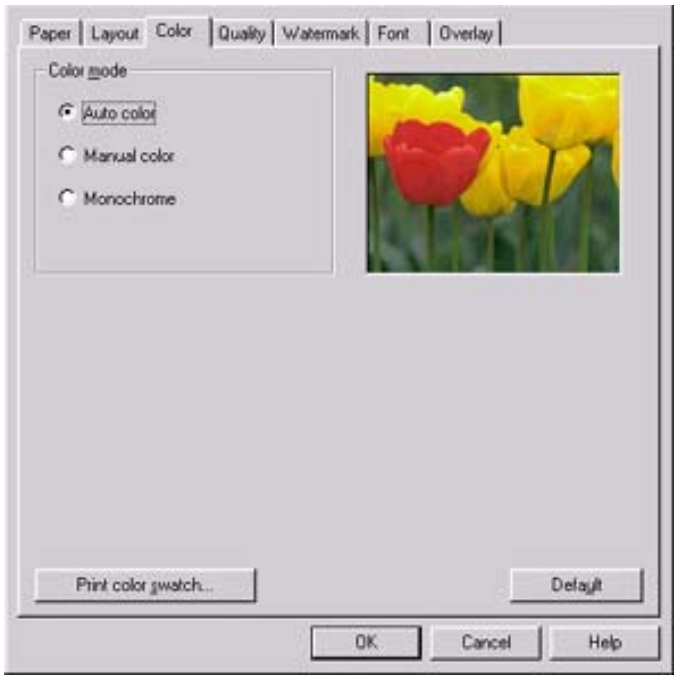
   a. Under Halftone type, select the dithering method.
   b. Under Color setting, select how the color will be determined.
   c. Under Manual adjustment, adjust the Lightness and Saturation.

5. For black only printing, click Monochrome, then set the Lightness and Contrast under Manual adjustment. For more information, see the help for the OKI C Series PCL printer driver.
6. Click Print.

Changing the Color Management Defaults: Windows 2000 PCL

To set the color management defaults in the Windows 2000 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. Click the Color tab.



Notes

If you select Manual Color, you can adjust each item of the Color Setting.

We recommend Manual Color only for users who have a lot of experience with color printing. When these adjustments are made, sometimes the printed colors differ greatly from the colors on the screen. Continue to adjust settings, changing one setting at a time, until the desired colors are achieved.

4. To make the color settings manually, click Manual color under Color mode.

Note: For additional information on the various manual color parameters, see the help for the OKI C Series PCL printer driver (click ? at the top of the dialog box).

   a. Under Halftone type, select the dithering method.
   b. Under Color setting, select how the color will be determined.
   c. Under Manual adjustment, adjust the Lightness and Saturation (vividness)

5. For black only printing, click Monochrome, then set the Lightness and Contrast under Manual adjustment. For more information, see the help for the OKI C Series PCL printer driver.
6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Activating the OKI ICM Files: Windows 2000 PCL

For information on activating the OKI ICM files see " Activating the ICM Files in the Windows 2000 PCL Driver."

ICM: Windows 2000 PostScript Driver

Color Management for an Individual Print Job: Windows 2000 PS

To set the color management options manually for a print job using the Windows 2000 PostScript driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click the Paper/Quality tab.
4. Click Advanced.
5. Scroll down to Printer Features, then click Color Control.
6. Make your selection in the drop-down list:
   a. Printer Color Matching (color management performed by the printer driver using the parameters you set)
   b. No Color matching (color management performed by your software application)
   c. Print in Grayscale (monochrome printing)
7. Click Image Color Matching and select the type of color matching to use from the drop-down list:
   a. OKI Unique Color Matching (Performs color matching using ASIC built into the printer to convert RGB data to CMYK)
   b. PostScript CRD Color Matching (Performs color matching using the PostScript Color Rendering Dictionary)
8. Click Black Finish and select the method for printing black from the drop-down list:
   a. Auto
   b. Matte (100% black toner used)
   c. Glossy (CMYK)
9. Click Image Color Rendering Style and select from the drop-down list:
   a. Auto (automatically determines the best color settings for each print job)
   b. Perceptual (emphasis on contrast)
   c. Vivid (emphasis on brightness)
10. Click OK, then click Print.

Changing the Color Management Defaults: Windows 2000 PS

To set the color management defaults in the Windows 2000 PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon then click Printing Preferences.
   The OKI Printing Preferences dialog box appears.
3. On the Layout tab, click Advanced.
4. Scroll down to Printer Features, then click Color Control.
5. Make your selection from the drop-down list:
   a. Printer Color Matching (color management performed by the printer driver using the

parameters you set)

b. No Color matching (color management performed by your software application)

c. Print In Grayscale (monochrome printing)

6. Click Image Color Matching, select the type of color matching from the drop-down list:
   a. OKI Unique Color Matching (Performs color matching using ASIC built into the printer to convert RGB data to CMYK)
   b. PostScript CDR Color Matching (Performs color matching using the PostScript Color Rendering Dictionary)
7. Click Black Finish and select the method for printing black from the drop-down list:
   a. Auto
   b. Matte (100% black toner used)
   c. Glossy (CMYK)
8. Click Image Color Rendering Style and select from the drop-down list:
   a. Auto (automatically determines the best color settings for each print job)
   b. Perceptual (emphasis on contrast)
   c. Vivid (emphasis on brightness)
9. Click OK twice and close the Printers dialog box.

Activating the OKI ICM Files: Windows 2000 PS

For information on activating the OKI ICM files see " Activating the ICM Files in the Windows 2000 PostScript Driver."

Color Management: Windows Me

Software applications generally have their own color matching and management facilities for display and printing. Please refer to the software application's documentation for information on color matching and management from within the software.

Important! Please note that some software applications may overwrite the settings in the printer driver.

ICM: Windows Me PCL Driver

Color Management for an Individual Print Job: Windows Me PCL

To set the color management options manually for a print job using the Windows Me PCL driver:

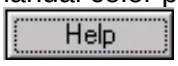
1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or Setup, or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Color tab.

Notes

If you select Manual Color, you can adjust each item of the Color Setting.

We recommend Manual Color only for users who have a lot of experience with color printing. When these adjustments are made, sometimes the printed colors differ greatly from the colors on the screen. Continue to adjust settings, changing one setting at a time, until the desired colors are achieved.

5. To make the color settings manually, click Manual color under Color mode.

Note: For additional information on the various manual color parameters, see the help for the OKI C Series PCL printer driver (click the 

button or click at the top of the dialog box).

   a. Under Halftone type, select the dithering method.
   b. Under Color setting, select how the color will be determined.
   c. Under Manual adjustment, adjust the Lightness and Saturation.

6. For black only printing, click Monochrome under Color mode, then set the Lightness and Contrast under Manual adjustment. For more information, see the help for the OKI C Series PCL printer driver.
7. Click OK and print the document.

Changing the Color Management Defaults: Windows Me PCL

To set the color management defaults manually for the Windows Me PCL driver:

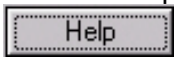
1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Color tab.

Notes

If you select Manual Color, you can adjust each item of the Color Setting.

We recommend Manual Color only for users who have a lot of experience with color printing. When these adjustments are made, sometimes the printed colors differ greatly from the colors on the screen. Continue to adjust settings, changing one setting at a time, until the desired colors are achieved.

4. To make the color settings manually, click Manual under Color mode.

Note: For additional information on the various manual color parameters, see the help for the OKI C Series PCL printer driver (click the 

button or click at the top of the dialog box).

   a. Under Halftone type, select the dithering method.

b. Under Color setting, select how the color will be determined.

c. Under Manual adjustment, adjust the Lightness and Saturation (vividness)

5. For black only printing, click Monochrome under Color mode, then set the Lightness and Contrast under Manual adjustment. For more information, see the help for the OKI C Series PCL printer driver.
6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Activating the OKI ICM Files: Windows Me PCL

For information on activating the OKI ICM files see " Activating the ICM Files in the Windows Me/98/95 PCL Driver."

Windows Me PostScript Driver

Color Management for an Individual Print Job: Windows Me PS

To set the color management options manually for a print job using the Windows Me PostScript driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Color tab.
5. Make your selection under Color Control:
   a. Printer Color Matching (color management performed by the printer driver using the parameters you set)
   b. Windows ICM (color management performed by Windows Image Color Matching)
   c. No Color matching (color management performed by your software application)

   Note: You can also select Print in Grayscale (monochrome printing) or Print Color separations (print each color separately).

6. To set the parameters for Printer Color Matching, click Options.

   Note: For additional information on the various manual color parameters, see the help for the OKI C Series PostScript driver (click ? at the top of the dialog box).

7. Under Image Color Matching, select the type of color matching to use.
   a. OKI Color Matching (Uses color matching built into the printer to convert RGB data to CMYK)
   b. PostScript Color Matching (Performs color matching using the PostScript Color Rendering Dictionary [CRD])
8. Under Black Finish, select how black will be printed:
   a. Auto (selects the best method for the document)

b. Matte (100% black toner used—best for text and graphics)
c. Glossy (CMYK—best for photographs)

9. Under Image Color Rendering Style, select:
   a. Auto (automatically determines the best color settings for each print job)
   b. Perceptual (emphasis on contrast)
   c. Vivid (emphasis on brightness)
10. Under Color Halftone, select:
    a. Device Best Dither (emphasis on resolution)
    b. Cluster Ordered Dither (emphasis on smooth gradation)
11. Click OK twice and print the document.

Changing the Color Management Defaults: Windows Me PS

To set the color management defaults manually for the Windows Me PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon then click Properties.
   The OKI PS Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Color tab.
4. Make your selection under Color Control:
   a. Printer Color Matching (color management performed by the printer driver using the parameters you set)
   b. Windows ICM (color management performed by Windows Image Color Matching)
   c. No Color matching (color management performed by your software application)

   Note: You can also select Print in Grayscale (monochrome printing) or Print Color separations (print each color separately).

5. To set the parameters for Printer Color Matching, click Options.

   Note: For additional information on the various manual color parameters, see the help for the OKI C Series PostScript driver (click ? at the top of the dialog box).

6. Under Image Color Matching, select the type of color matching to use.
   a. OKI Color Matching (Uses color matching built into the printer to convert RGB data to CMYK)
   b. PostScript Color Matching (Performs color matching using the PostScript Color Rendering Dictionary)
7. Under Black Finish, select how black will be printed:
   a. Auto (selects the best method for the document)
   b. Matte (100% black toner used—best for text and graphics)
   c. Glossy (CMYK—best for photographs)
8. Under Image Color Rendering Style, select:
   a. Auto (automatically determines the best color settings for each print job)
   b. Perceptual (emphasis on contrast)

c. Vivid (emphasis on brightness)

9. Under Color Halftone, select:
   a. Device Best Dither (emphasis on resolution)
   b. Cluster Ordered Dither (emphasis on smooth gradation)
10. Click OK twice and close the Printers dialog box.

Activating the OKI ICM Files: Windows Me PS

For information on activating the OKI ICM files see " Activating the ICM Files in the Windows Me/98/95 PostScript Driver."

Color Management: Windows 98 & 95

Software applications generally have their own color matching and management facilities for display and printing. Please refer to the software application's documentation for information on color matching and management from within the software.

Important! Please note that some software applications may overwrite the settings in the printer driver.

Windows 98 & 95 PCL Driver

Color Management for an Individual Print Job: Windows 98/95 PCL

To set the color management options manually for a print job using the Windows 98/95 PCL driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Color tab.

> **Note:** If you select Manual Color, you can adjust each item of the Color Setting.
>
> We recommend Manual Color only for users who have a lot of experience with color printing. When these adjustments are made, sometimes the printed colors differ greatly from the colors on the screen. Continue to adjust settings, changing one setting at a time, until the desired colors are achieved.

5. To make the color settings manually, click Manual color under Color mode.

> **Note:** For additional information on the various manual color parameters, see the help for the OKI C Series PCL printer driver (click the Help button or click ? at the top of the dialog box).

   a. Under Halftone type, select the dithering method.

b. Under Color setting, select how the color will be determined.

c. Under Manual adjustment, adjust the Lightness and Saturation.

6. For black only printing, click Monochrome under Color mode, then set the Lightness and Contrast under Manual adjustment. For more information, see the help for the OKI C Series PCL printer driver.
7. Click OK and print the document.

Changing the Color Management Defaults: Windows 98/95 PCL

To set the color management defaults manually for the Windows 98/95 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon then click Properties.
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
3. Click the Color tab.

> **Note:** If you select Manual Color, you can adjust each item of the Color Setting.
>
> We recommend Manual Color only for users who have a lot of experience with color printing. When these adjustments are made, sometimes the printed colors differ greatly from the colors on the screen. Continue to adjust settings, changing one setting at a time, until the desired colors are achieved.

4. To make the color settings manually, click Manual under Color mode.

> **Note:** For additional information on the various manual color parameters, see the help for the OKI C Series PCL printer driver (click the Help button or click ? at the top of the dialog box).

   a. Under Halftone type, select the dithering method.

   b. Under Color setting, select how the color will be determined.

   c. Under Manual adjustment, adjust the Lightness and Saturation (vividness)

5. For black only printing, click Monochrome under Color mode, then set the Lightness and Contrast under Manual adjustment. For more information, see the help for the OKI C Series PCL printer driver.
6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Activating the OKI ICM Files: Windows 98/95 PCL

For information on activating the OKI ICM files see " Activating the ICM Files in the Windows Me/98/95 PCL Driver."

Windows 98 & 95 PostScript Driver

Color Management for an Individual Print Job: Windows 98/95 PS

To set the color management options manually for a print job using the Windows 98/95 PostScript driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Color tab.
5. Make your selection under Color Control:
   a. Printer Color Matching (color management performed by the printer driver using the parameters you set)
   b. Windows ICM (color management performed by Windows Image Color Matching)
   c. No Color matching (color management performed by your software application)

   Note: You can also select Print in Grayscale (monochrome printing) or Print Color separations (print each color separately).

6. To set the parameters for Printer Color Matching, click Options.

   Note: For additional information on the various manual color parameters, see the help for the OKI C Series PostScript driver (click ? at the top of the dialog box).

7. Under Image Color Matching, select the type of color matching to use.
   a. OKI Color Matching (Uses color matching built into the printer to convert RGB data to CMYK)
   b. PostScript Color Matching (Performs color matching using the PostScript Color Rendering Dictionary [CRD])
8. Under Black Finish, select how black will be printed:
   a. Auto (selects the best method for the document)
   b. Matte (100% black toner used—best for text and graphics)
   c. Glossy (CMYK—best for photographs)
9. Under Image Color Rendering Style, select:
   a. Auto (automatically determines the best color settings for each print job)
   b. Perceptual (emphasis on contrast)
   c. Vivid (emphasis on brightness)
10. Under Color Halftone, select:
    a. Device Best Dither (emphasis on resolution)
    b. Cluster Ordered Dither (emphasis on smooth gradation)
11. Click OK twice and print the document.

Changing the Color Management Defaults: Windows 98/95 PS

To set the color management defaults manually for the Windows 98/95 PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon then click Properties.
   The OKI PS Properties dialog box appears.

3. Click the Color tab.
4. Make your selection under Color Control:
   a. Printer Color Matching (color management performed by the printer driver using the parameters you set)
   b. Windows ICM (color management performed by Windows Image Color Matching)
   c. No Color matching (color management performed by your software application)

> **Note:** You can also select Print in Grayscale (monochrome printing) or Print Color separations (print each color separately).

5. To set the parameters for Printer Color Matching, click Options.

> **Note:** For additional information on the various manual color parameters, see the help for the OKI C Series PostScript driver (click ? at the top of the dialog box).

6. Under Image Color Matching, select the type of color matching to use.
   a. OKI Color Matching (Uses color matching built into the printer to convert RGB data to CMYK)
   b. PostScript Color Matching (Performs color matching using the PostScript Color Rendering Dictionary)
7. Under Black Finish, select how black will be printed:
   a. Auto (selects the best method for the document)
   b. Matte (100% black toner used—best for text and graphics)
   c. Glossy (CMYK—best for photographs)
8. Under Image Color Rendering Style, select:
   a. Auto (automatically determines the best color settings for each print job)
   b. Perceptual (emphasis on contrast)
   c. Vivid (emphasis on brightness)
9. Under Color Halftone, select:
   a. Device Best Dither (emphasis on resolution)
   b. Cluster Ordered Dither (emphasis on smooth gradation)
10. Click OK twice and close the Printers dialog box.

Activating the OKI ICM Files: Windows 98/95 PS

For information on activating the OKI ICM files see " Activating the ICM Files in the Windows Me/98/95 PostScript Driver."

Color Management: Windows NT 4.0

Software applications generally have their own color matching and management facilities for display and printing. Please refer to the software application's documentation for information on color matching and management from within the software.

Important! Please note that some software applications may overwrite the settings in

the printer driver.

Windows NT 4.0 PCL Driver

Color Management for an Individual Print Job: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

To set the color management options for the Windows NT 4.0 PCL driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the Color tab.

   Notes

   If you select Manual Color, you can adjust each item of the Color Setting.

   We recommend Manual Color only for users who have a lot of experience with color printing. When these adjustments are made, sometimes the printed colors differ greatly from the colors on the screen. Continue to adjust settings, changing one setting at a time, until the desired colors are achieved.

5. To make the color settings manually, click Manual color under Color mode.

   Note: For additional information on the various manual color parameters, see the help for the OKI C Series PCL printer driver (click the Help button or click ? at the top of the dialog box).

   a. Under Halftone type, select the dithering method.
   b. Under Color setting, select how the color will be determined.
   c. Under Manual adjustment, adjust the Lightness and Saturation.
6. For black only printing, click Monochrome under Color Mode, then set the Lightness and Contrast under Manual adjustment. For more information, see the help for the OKI C Series PCL printer driver.
7. Click OK and print the document.

Changing the Color Management Defaults: Windows NT 4.0 PCL

To set the color management defaults for the Windows NT 4.0 PCL driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Default dialog box appears.
3. Click the Color tab.

   Notes

If you select Manual Color, you can adjust each item of the Color Setting.

We recommend Manual Color only for users who have a lot of experience with color printing. When these adjustments are made, sometimes the printed colors differ greatly from the colors on the screen. Continue to adjust settings, changing one setting at a time, until the desired colors are achieved.

4. To make the color settings manually, click Manual color under Color mode.

Note: For additional information on the various manual color parameters, see the help for the OKI C Series PCL printer driver (click the Help button or click ? at the top of the dialog box).

   a. Under Halftone type, select the dithering method.
   b. Under Color setting, select how the color will be determined.
   c. Under Manual adjustment, adjust the Lightness and Saturation (vividness)
5. For black only printing, click Monochrome under Color mode, then set the Lightness and Contrast under Manual adjustment. For more information, see the help for the OKI C Series PCL printer driver.
6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

Windows NT 4.0 PostScript Driver

Color Management for an Individual Print Job: Windows NT 4.0 PS

To set the color management options for the Windows NT 4.0 PostScript driver:

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click File → Print.
   The Print dialog box appears.
3. Make sure the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer is selected, then click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
   The OKI Properties dialog box appears.
4. Scroll down to Color, then click Color Control.
5. Make your selection under Change 'Color Control' Setting:
   a. Printer Color Matching (color management performed by the printer driver using the parameters you set)
   b. No Color matching (color management performed by your software application)
   c. Print in Grayscale (monochrome printing)
6. To set the parameters for Printer Color Matching, click Options.
   The Printer Color Matching dialog box appears.
7. Under Image Color Matching, select the type of color matching to use:
   a. OKI Unique Color Matching (Performs color matching using ASIC built into the printer to convert RGB data to CMYK)
   b. PostScript CDR Color Matching (Performs color matching using the PostScript Color

Rendering Dictionary)

8. Under Black Finish, select how black will be printed:
   a. Auto (selects the best method for the document)
   b. Matte (100% black toner used—best for text and graphics)
   c. Glossy (CMYK—best for photographs)
9. Under Image Color Rendering Style, select:
   a. Auto (automatically determines the best color settings for each print job)
   b. Perceptual (Makes the printed colors close to those seen on the screen. Sometimes the printed colors do not match those on the screen because monitor's color characteristics [brightness, saturation and contrast] cannot be recognized.)
   c. Vivid (color setting priorities based on vividness of colors)
10. Under Color Halftone, select:
    a. Device Best Dither (emphasis on resolution)
    b. Cluster Ordered Dither (emphasis on smooth gradation)
11. Click OK twice and print the document.

Changing the Color Management Defaults: Windows NT 4.0 PS

To set the color management defaults for the Windows NT 4.0 PostScript driver:

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
   The Printers dialog box appears.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon then click Document Defaults.
   The OKI Default dialog box appears.
3. Scroll down to Color, then click Color Control.
4. Make your selection under Change 'Color Control' Setting:
   a. Printer Color Matching (color management performed by the printer driver using the parameters you set)
   b. No Color matching (color management performed by your software application)
   c. Print in Grayscale (monochrome printing)
5. To set the parameters for Printer Color Matching, click Options.
6. Under Image Color Matching, select the type of color matching to use.
7. Under Black Finish, select how black will be printed:
   a. Auto (selects the best method for the document)
   b. Matte (100% black toner used—best for text and graphics)
   c. Glossy (CMYK—best for photographs)
8. Under Image Color Rendering Style, select:
   a. Auto (automatically determines the best color settings for each print job)
   b. Perceptual (Makes the printed colors close to those seen on the screen. Sometimes the printed colors do not match those on the screen because monitor's color characteristics [brightness, saturation and contrast] cannot be recognized.)
   c. Vivid (color setting priorities based on vividness of colors)
9. Under Color Halftone, select:
   a. Device Best Dither (emphasis on resolution)

b. Cluster Ordered Dither (emphasis on smooth gradation)

10. Click OK twice and close the Printers dialog box.

Specifications

General Specifications

Print Method

- LED Array

Print Speed

- Mono Printing: 26 ppm
- Color Printing: 21 ppm
- Mono Printing on Transparencies: 16 ppm
- Color Printing on Transparencies: 6 ppm

Print Resolution

- **Model C9200** 600 x 600 dpi 600 x 1200 dpi
- **Model C9400** 600 x 600 dpi Fast 1200 dpi (600 x 1200 dpi) 1200 x 1200 dpi

RAM

- **Models C9200 & C9200n:** 128 MB, expandable to 1GB with optional memory boards
- **Model C9200dxn:** 192 MB, expandable to 1GB with optional memory boards
- **Model C9400dxn:** 320 MB, expandable to 1GB with optional memory boards

Flash Memory

- 2 MB

OKI C9000 Series Printer Configurations

Model	Hard Disk Drive	Duplex Unit	6200e Print Server	Memory Supplied
C9200				128 MB

C9200n	yes		yes	128 MB
C9200dxn	yes	yes	yes	192 MB
C9400dxn	yes	yes	yes	320 MB

Electrical Specifications

Voltage/Frequency

- 120 (102 to 127) VAC; 60 Hz, ±2Hz
- 230 (198 to 264) VAC; 50 Hz, ±2Hz

Power

- **Standby:** 1300W max.; average 200W
- **Operating:** 1400W max.; average 600W
- **Power Save Mode:** 60W max.

Physical Specifications

Dimensions

- Depth: 24.6" (626 mm)
- Width: 48" (1219 mm)
- Height: 18.1" (460 mm)

Weight

- Approx. 160 lb. (72 kg)

Interface Specifications

Parallel

- IEEE 1284 compliant, bidirectional port

USB

- Version 1.1

Network

- Ethernet 10/100 Base-T, supporting TCP/IP, IPX/SPX, NetBEUI and EtherTalk protocols

How Digital LED Technology Works

Digital LED vs Laser Technology

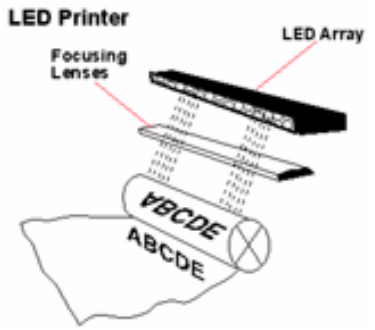
Conventional Lasers	LED Technology
Conventional laser printers use a laser beam, which is moved across the image drum by a series of lenses and spinning mirrors.	Oki Data's digital LED technology uses a fixed array of light emitting diodes mounted on a flat strip that doesn't move.

Advantages of digital LED technology

Advantage	Due to
Dramatic reduction in the size and weight of the printer.	Elimination of moving parts of the light source.
Less wear on the mechanism.	Fewer moving parts
Greater consistency in dot placement.	Fixed LED array
Crisp type resolution	Elimination of edge distortion inherent in moving optics
Higher reliability	Significantly fewer parts

The Electrophotographic Process

The electrophotographic technology used in Oki Data digital LED printers is almost identical to that employed in most toner-based copying machines. In the color printers, there are four image drums: black, yellow, magenta and cyan, and four corresponding LED arrays.



Step 1: Charging

The first step is depositing a uniform electrical charge over each image drum.

Step 2: Exposure

Next, each drum is exposed to light to create a latent image on its surface. The light source is

the LED array, which uses light emitting diodes to produce its images. The latent image retains much of the charge applied to the drum's surface during charging. The segments of the photoreceptor drum that correspond to the non-image areas have a reduced electrical change.

Step 3: Developing

In the development cycle, charged toner is attracted to the latent image by static electricity, making the image visible.

Step 4: Transfer

The paper is brought into contact with each of the four photoreceptor drums, one after the other, transferring the toner images to the paper. The transfer process applies a charge through the paper so the toner particles adhere to the paper rather than to the drum.

Step 5: Fusing

Heat and pressure fuses the toner to the paper to produce the final product.

In Summary

Oki Data's proprietary advanced digital LED technology, with fewer moving parts, assures built-in quality and reliability. Oki Data backs every digital LED technology unit with a 5-year printhead limited warranty

Service & Support

For the Latest Information

- In the U.S. and Canada, call 1-800-OKI-DATA (1-800-654-3282)
- In Brazil, check the Portuguese (http://www.okidata.com/port/html/nf/Home.html) section of the Oki Data web site.
- In Latin America, check the Spanish (http://www.okidata.com/span/html/nf/Home.html) section of the Oki Data web site.

Support: U.S. & Canada

Via the Internet

www.okidata.com

Your Gateway to OKI Products and Services

- Visit the OKI DATA Web Site at http://www.okidata.com for general information about OKI® products and services:
- Get Web-based support for all OKI products: 24 hours a day, 7 days a week—no waiting!
- Download printer drivers
- Read about other customers and how they use OKI products
- Use the Dealer Locator to find a dealer location close to you
- Find out about Oki Data's special promotional offers and breaking news
- . . . and more!

my.okidata.com

Your Personal Solutions Center

A powerful area of Oki Data's web site providing personalized, web-based support for the OKI products you own: 24 hours a day, 7 days a weekno waiting!

Log on and check for

- Product News
- What's Changed?

You can

- Register your OKI products.
- Keep track of your warranty eligibility.
- Download or view manuals online.
- Control your contact, profile and preference information.
- Get automatic e-mail notification of new drivers and key product updates.
- Track your e-mail support history.
- and more!

Just point your browser to my.okidata.com, or go to www.okidata.com and click on Support.

Via Your Oki Data Dealer

To Locate a Service Dealer

- Check with your dealer.

- Consult the store where you purchased your printer.
- *In the U.S. only*, go to the Oki Data web site (http://www.okidata.com) and click Find a Dealer or Dealer Locator, then fill in the information and click Locate My Dealer.
- Call 1-800-OKI-DATA (1-800-654-3282) for the location of the nearest Authorized OKI Service Dealer. Please have your zip code (U.S.) or area code (Canada) ready.

Via Oki Data Customer Service, U.S. & Canada Only, 24/7:

Call 1-800-OKI-DATA (1-800-654-3282)

Our customer service and technical assistance for current OKI products are available 7 days a week, 24 hours a day, 365 days a year by calling 1-800-OKI-DATA (1-800-654-3282).

Follow the menu to obtain information from the Oki Data Information System Automated Attendant or to speak to a member of the Oki Data Customer Support Team.

The Information System Automated Attendant

For immediate assistance with:

- Sales and service referrals
- Parts and supplies referrals
- Product information

The Oki Data Customer Support Team

Our Customer Support Team can answer your questions regarding:

- Locations of Sales & Service Dealers
- Installation of your OKI printer
- Usage/normal maintenance of your printer
- Availability/installation of printer drivers
- Error message interpretation/solutions
- Parts and Supplies identification
- Consumer relations

Note: Customer Support Professionals are not trained to provide assistance with the use of commercial software packages. Please consult your software users manual for times and availability of the software manufacturer's support.

Service Information: U.S. & Canada

To Locate a Service Dealer

- Check with your dealer.
- Consult the store where you purchased your printer.
- *In the U.S. only,* go to the Oki Data web site (http://www.okidata.com) and click Find a Dealer or Dealer Locator, then fill in the information and click Locate My Dealer.
- Call 1-800-OKI-DATA (1-800-654-3282) for the location of the nearest Authorized OKI Service Dealer. Please have your zip code (U.S.) or area code (Canada) ready.

Repair under Warranty

Important! Proof of purchase is required for warranty work. Be sure to retain your purchase documents.

Call your service dealer to schedule an on-site visit.

Note: Ask about available Oki Data Service Enhancement Programs.

Repairs after Your Warranty Expires

OKI Regional Service Depots: 1-800-OKI-DATA (1-800-654-3282)

Before shipping your product, call 1-800-OKI-DATA (1-800-654-3282) for a return authorization number. Select the "service" option.

After receiving your return authorization number, you will be given directions for shipping your product to one of our depot repair facilities.

- Allow 10 days for round trip shipping repair via a depot.
- Carry-in repairs (if available) must be called in first to schedule service.

Oki Data Service Depot Information: U.S. & Canada

United States	Canada
Oki Data Americas, Inc.	Oki Data Americas, Inc.
Phone: 1-800-654-3282	Phone: 1-800-654-3282
Fax: 1-856-222-5247	Fax: 1-905-238-4427

Repacking the Printer for Shipment

If you need to ship your printer to a service center, repack it in the original packing materials. If the original packaging is not available, you can obtain shipping instructions by contacting your dealer or by contacting:

- Oki Data Americas, Inc., in the U.S. and Canada, at 1-800-OKI-DATA (1-800-654-3282)
- Oki Data de Mexico, S.A. de C.V. at (525) 263-8780
- Oki Data do Brasil, Ltda., at 55 11-3444-3500

Prepare the Printer

1. Turn the printer off and remove all cords from the printer.
2. If you have a 6020e pocket print server installed, remove it as well.
3. Open Tray 1 and remove any print media.

4. Close Tray 1.

5. Remove any print media from the Multi-Purpose Tray.

6. Close the Multi-Purpose Tray.

7. Pull up on the handle and open the cover.

8. Install the LED printhead shipping restraint.

9. Move the fuser roller lock lever to the right (away from the open cover) and put the orange transport lock in the fuser.

10. Lift out the drum/toner assemblies and place each set in one of the black plastic bags provided with the printer. Store them in a cool, dry place until the printer is returned.

11. Close the cover.

12. Tape the cover and the Multi-Purpose Tray closed.

Pack the Printer for Shipment

1. Wrap the printer in the plastic shipping bag provided with the printer.

Caution! ***The printer weights 160 lbs. (72 kg).***

Use at least two people to lift the printer.

Use proper lifting techniques.

To balance the weight of the printer when lifting it, grasp the printer with one hand on the side of the unit and the other in the cutout on the back of the unit.

2. Lower the printer into the base unit on the skid.

3. Place the Styrofoam packing pieces on the printer.

4. Place the accessory tray on top.

5. Put the shipping box down over the printer.

Note: The box must be oriented properly. If the holes in the box do not line up with the holes in the base unit, lift the box off, rotate it 180° and try again.

6. Install the handle inserts on the shipping box.

7. Secure the box to the skid.

Supplies & Accessories

Purchasing Supplies & Accessories

- Consult the dealer where you purchased your printer.
- Consult an Oki Data Authorized Sales or Service Dealer.
- *U.S & Canada:* Call 1-800-OKI-DATA for the nearest Authorized Sales and Service location. Have your ZIP code ready for our Customer Support Representatives.
- *Brazil:* call Oki Data do Brasil, Ltda., 5511-3444-3500.
- *Latin America:* call Oki Data de Mexico, S.A. de C.V., (525) 263-8780.
- *U.S., Puerto Rico, Guam, and U.S. Virgin Islands only:* Order on the Internet (go to http://www.okidata.com and click Buy Online).
- *U.S. only:* Order toll-free by phone at 1-800-OKI-DATA (1-800-654-3282), using VISA, MasterCard or American Express. $10.00 minimum purchase required.
- *Canada only:* call 888-309-4570 to order parts: VISA and American Express are accepted.
- Check office supply catalogs or your local stationery store. Most carry OKI brand supplies.

Consumable & Replacement Part Order Numbers

Toner Cartridges

- For information on purchasing Toner Cartridges, see "Purchasing Supplies & Accessories."

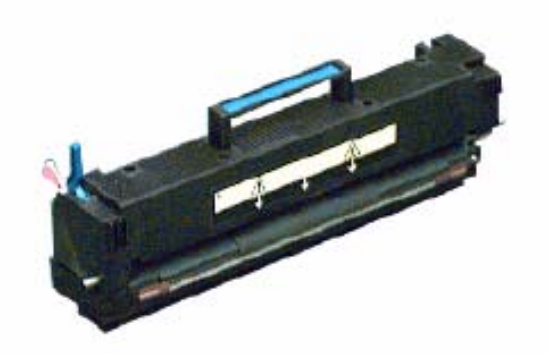
Color	OKI Part No.
Black	41515208
Cyan	41515207
Magenta	41515206
Yellow	41515205

Image Drums

- For information on purchasing Image Drums, see "Purchasing Supplies & Accessories."

Color	OKI Part No.
Black	41514708
Cyan	41514707
Magenta	41514706
Yellow	41514705

Fusers



For information on purchasing Fusers, see "Purchasing Supplies & Accessories."

Voltage	OKI Part No.
120 volts	41531401
230 volts	41531403

Transfer Belt

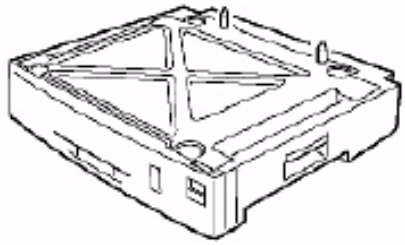
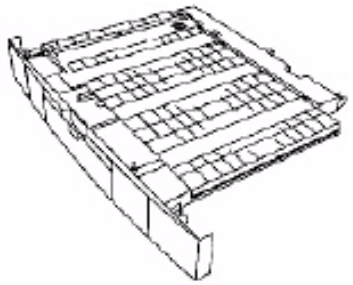
For information on purchasing a Transfer Belt, see "Purchasing Supplies & Accessories."

Item	OKI Part No.
Transfer Belt	41531501

Accessory Order Numbers

General

Item	OKI Part No.

Auxiliary Tray (up to two can be installed) 	41529701
High Capacity Feeder 	41529801
Hard Disk Drive 	70037301
Duplex Unit 	70037101

Memory: RAM Upgrades

Capacity	OKI Part No.
64 MB	70037401
128 MB	70037501
256 MB	70037601

Network Print Servers

Model	OKI Part No.
6200e	70036701
6020e	70036001

Interface Cables

Cable	OKI Part No.
Parallel, 6 ft. (1.8 m)	70000803
USB, 10 ft. (3 m)	70037901

Accessories

Memory DIMMS

64 MB, OKI P/N 70037401

128 MB, OKI P/N 70037501

256 MB, OKI P/N 70037601

Installing Memory DIMMs

The printers have four sockets for memory DIMMs.

Depending on your model, your printer comes with 128 to 320 MB of memory installed:

Model	Memory Installed
C9200	128 MB
C9200n	128 MB
C9200dxn	192 MB (64 + 128 MB)
C9400dxn	320 MB (64 + 256MB)

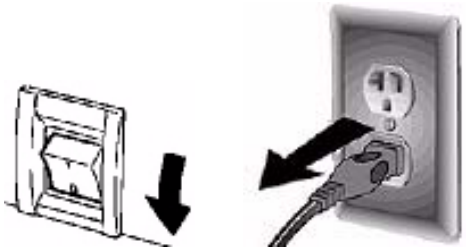
The maximum amount of memory available from DIMMs is nominal 1 GB. In order to achieve this maximum, you must have four 256-MB DIMMs installed.

To install additional DIMMs:

Caution! ***Circuit boards can be damaged by static electricity and rough handling. Keep board in packaging until you're ready to install it. DIMMs are sensitive to static electricity. To avoid damage, ground yourself before handling DIMMs.***

Step 1: Prepare The Printer

1. Turn the printer off and unplug the power cord.

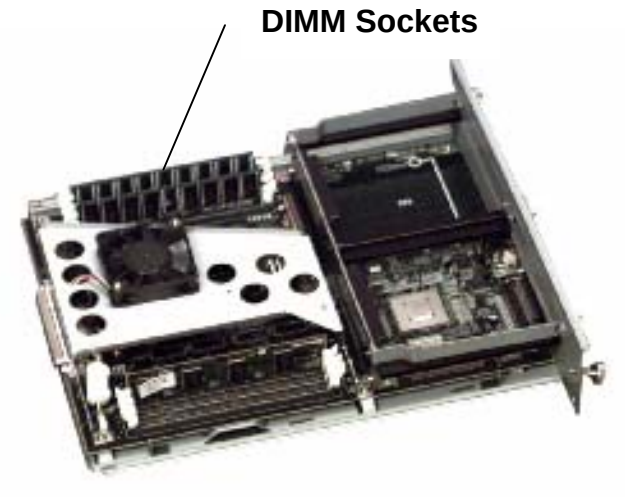


2. Detach the interface cable from the left side of the printer.
3. Remove and save the thumbscrew at the top and bottom which hold the control board in place.

4. Grasp the control board and loosen it by wiggling it back and forth, then slide it out of the printer.

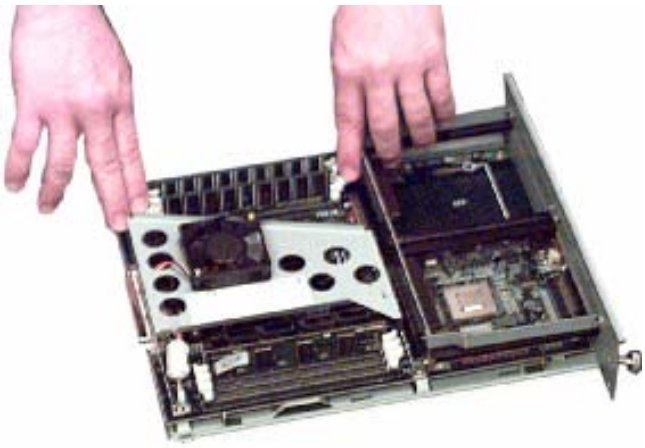
Step 2: Install the DIMM(s)

1. Locate the DIMM sockets on the control board:



Important! DIMMs must be installed in the slots in the following sequence: 1 - 3 - 2 - 4. The slot numbers are printed to the right of the DIMM sockets.

2. Push out the white lock tabs at either end of the DIMM socket.



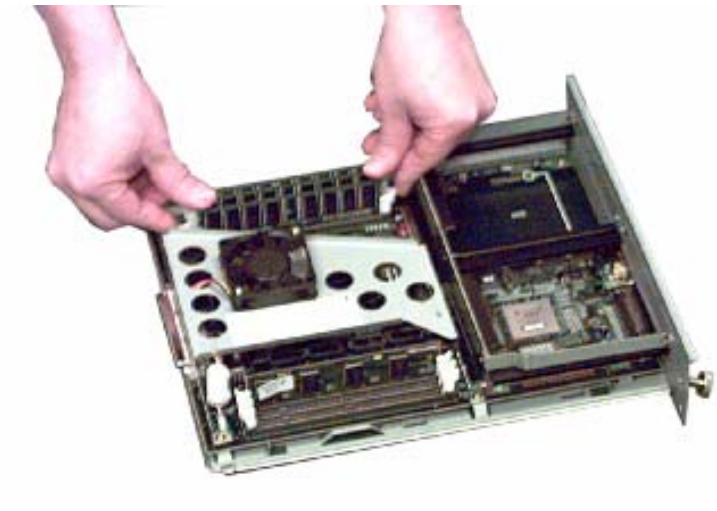
Note: To swap out an existing DIMM board for a new one, push out the white tabs at either end of the board to be replaced, then lift it out.

Caution! Circuit boards can be damaged by static electricity and rough handling. To avoid damage, ground yourself before handling DIMMs.

3. Remove the DIMM from its shipping package.
4. Align the DIMM with the narrow strip on its metallic contact edge to the right (toward the slot identifier numbers) of the control board.

Narrow Strip

5. Carefully insert the DIMM in the socket, placing either end into the slot in the lock tabs. Press down *firmly*, making sure you feel the board engage the connector, then make sure the white tabs come up to lock the DIMM in place.



6. Repeat steps 2 through 6 for each DIMM being installed.

Step 3: Complete the Installation

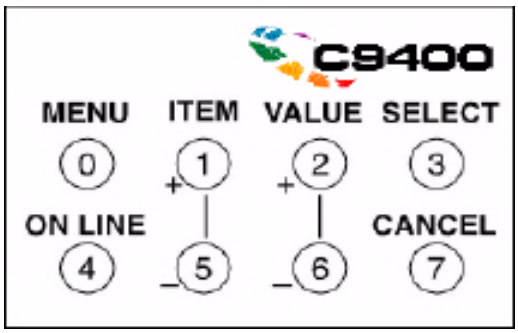
1. Align the bottom of the control board with the track in the printer and slide it back into place.

2. Reinstall the thumbscrews at the top and bottom of the board.

3. Reattach the interface cable.
4. Plug the power cord into the power outlet and turn the printer on.

Step 4: Check for Proper Installation

Check the MenuMap printout to be sure that the DIMMs are properly installed:



1. On the printer control panel, press MENU once or twice until INFORMATION MENU appears on the display.
2. Press SELECT.
   PRINT MENU MAP
   appears on the display.
3. Press SELECT.
   The MenuMap prints.
4. Check the top of the MenuMap printout to verify that the DIMMs you installed are listed.

Note: If the DIMM is not listed at the top of the MenuMap printout, open the printer back up and make sure the memory board is firmly in place, then print the MenuMap out again.

Step 5: Change the Memory Setting in the Drivers

Windows PostScript Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript driver icon, then click Properties.
3. Select the added memory:

   Windows 2000 and NT 4.0

   a. Click the Device Settings tab.
   b. Scroll down to Installable Options and click Memory Configuration.
   c. Under Change 'Memory Configuration' Setting, click the total memory installed (original plus memory you just installed).

   Windows Me, 98 and 95

   a. Click the Device Options tab.
   b. Click Memory Configuration.
   c. Under Change setting for: Memory Configuration, click the total memory installed (original plus memory you just installed).

4. Click OK, then close the Printers dialog box.

Macintosh PostScript Driver

1. Activate Chooser from the Apple menu.
2. Select LaserWriter 8.
3. Click Printer → Setup.
4. Click Configure.
5. Change the Memory Configuration setting to match the total DIMM memory installed (original plus new additional memory).
6. Click OK twice.
7. Close Chooser.

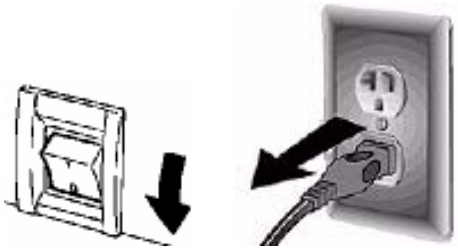
Print Servers

Model 6200e, OKI P/N 70036701

- For information on purchasing the 6200e Print Server, see "Purchasing Supplies & Accessories."

Installing the OkiLAN® 6200e Print Server

1. Record the Ethernet address number (EN) located on the print server label.
2. Turn the printer off and unplug the power cord.



3. Remove any connector cables.
4. Loosen the two screws from the bottom option slot, then remove the slot cover.

5. Insert the OkiLAN 6200e into the slot, pushing it in *firmly* until you feel it plug into the connector.

6. Tighten the two screws to secure it in place, then plug the RJ45 connector into the Ethernet port on the print server.

7. Plug the opposite end of the cable into the network.
8. Plug the power cord in and turn on the printer.
9. Press the test button on the OkiLAN 6200e to print a configuration sheet. You will need the information from this sheet when setting up your printer on the network.

For details on setting up the 6200e, see the on-line Network User's Guide.

Model 6020e, OKI P/N 70036001

Note: Not recommended for use with Macintosh systems.

- For information on purchasing the 6020e Print Server, see "Purchasing Supplies & Accessories."

Installing the OkiLAN® 6020e Print Server

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Attach the OkiLAN 6020e to the parallel port on the printer and secure it with the wire clips.
3. Plug the power adapter wire into the power jack on the OkiLAN 6020e.

4. Plug the power adapter into a 120-volt wall outlet.
5. Attach an Ethernet cable to the 10/100 BaseT port on the back of the OkiLAN 6020e.

6. Attach the other end of the cable to the network.
7. Turn the printer on.
   The red and green lights on the OkiLAN 6020e blink during the self-test. When the self-test completes successfully, the red indicator goes off and the green indicator stays on.
8. Press the test button on the front of the OkiLAN 6020e to print a configuration sheet. You will need the information from this sheet when setting up your printer on the network.

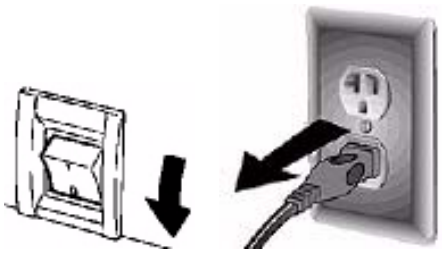
Note: The content of the configuration sheet will vary depending on your printer and system setup.

Hard Disk Drive, OKI P/N 70037301

Installing the Internal Hard Disk Drive

Step 1: Prepare The Printer

1. Turn the printer off and unplug the power cord.

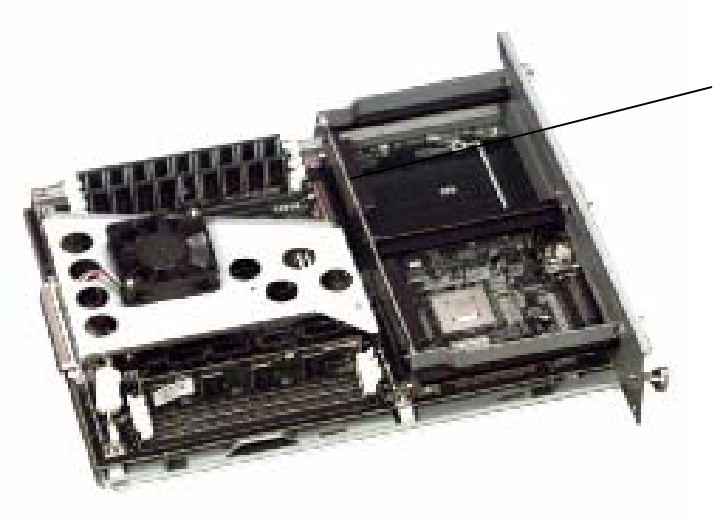


2. Detach the interface cable from the printer.
3. Remove and save the thumbscrew at the top and bottom which hold the control board in place.

4. Grasp the control board and loosen it by wiggling it back and forth, then slide it out of the printer.

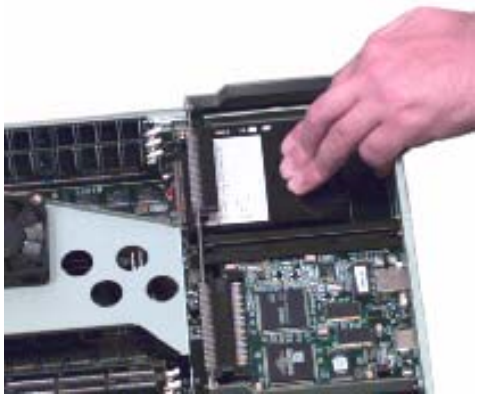
Step 2: Install the Hard Disk Drive (HDD)

1. Locate the drive connector on the control board:



2. Remove the HDD from its shipping package.
3. Lift the handle on the HDD and lower it onto the control board.

4. Insert the board firmly into the connector and press down on the handle to lock it in place.



Step 3: Complete the Installation

1. Align the bottom of the control board with the track in the printer and slide it back into

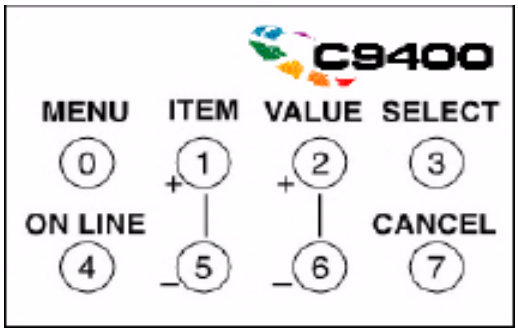
place.

2. Reinstall the screws at the top and bottom of the board.

3. Reattach the interface cable.
4. Plug the power cord into the power outlet and turn the printer on.

Step 4: Check for Proper Installation

Check the MenuMap printout to be sure that the HDD is properly installed:



1. On the printer control panel, press MENU repeatedly until INFORMATION MENU appears on the display.
2. Press SELECT.
   PRINT MENU M
   appears on the display.
3. Press SELECT.
   The MenuMap prints.
4. Check the MenuMap printout:
   - At the top of the printout you should see a line HDD:5.00 GB
   - In the right column you should see a new menu section DISK MAINTENANCE
5. If you do not see these, remove the control board, lift the hard drive handle and check to be sure that the hard drive is *firmly inserted in the connector*. Then reinstall the control board and print the Menu Map again.

Step 5: Activate the Hard Disk in the Printer Driver

Windows PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL driver icon, then click Printing Preferences, Properties or Document Defaults, depending on the Windows operating system.
3. In the Paper tab, click Device options.
4. Click Printer hard disk to select it, then click OK.
5. Click OK, then close the Printers dialog box.

Windows PostScript Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript driver icon, then click Properties.
3. Activate the hard disk drive:

   Windows 2000 and NT 4.0:

   a. Click the Device Settings tab.
   b. Scroll down to Installable Options and click Hard Disk.
   c. Under Change 'Hard Disk' Setting, click Installed.

   Windows Me, 98 and 95:

   a. Click the Device Options tab.
   b. Click Hard Disk.
   c. Under Change setting for: Hard Disk, click Installed.
4. Click OK, then close the Printers dialog box.

Duplex Unit, OKI P/N 70037101

Note: If you will be using the duplex unit to print complex documents, you also need to purchase and install 64 MB of additional memory (OKI # 70037401).

- For information on paper usable with the duplex unit, see "Duplex Unit Specifications."
- For information on purchasing the duplex unit, see "Purchasing Supplies & Accessories."

Installing the Duplex Unit

Note: If you will be using the duplex unit to print complex documents, you also need to purchase and install 64 MB of additional memory (OKI # 70037401).

Back

Step 1: Install the Duplex Unit

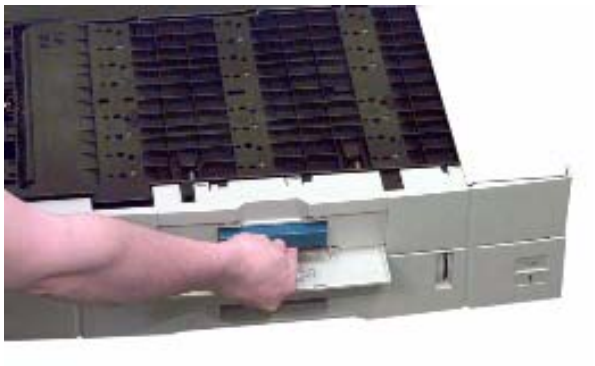
1. Unpack the duplex unit and remove any shipping materials.
2. Turn the printer off and unplug the power cable.
3. Pull out Tray 1, then remove it from the printer.

4. Remove the front cover section: grasp it at both ends, then lift and pull it off.

> **Note:** Be sure to store the front cover section. If the duplex unit is ever removed, the front cover section must be reinstalled.

5. Place the duplex unit on top of Tray 1, carefully aligning it with the tray.

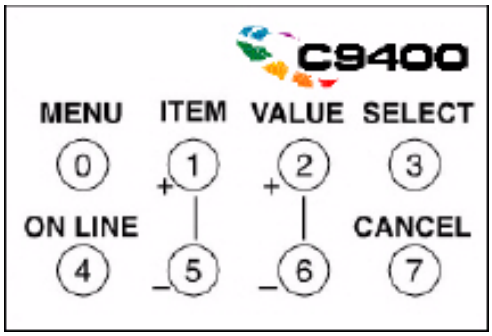
6. Open the small cover on the duplex unit and gently pull the blue handle until the duplex unit and tray are locked together.



7. Slide the tray/duplex unit back into the printer.

8. Plug the power cable back in and turn the printer on.

Step 2: Activate the Duplex Unit in the Menu



1. Press MENU repeatedly until PRINT MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until DUPLEX appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + once to change the setting from OFF to ON.
4. Press SELECT to engage the new setting.
   An asterisk will appear at the end of the second line.
5. Press ON LINE to save the setting and exit the menu.

Step 3: Activate the Duplex Unit in the Driver

Windows PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL driver icon, then click Printing Preferences (Windows 2000), Properties (Windows Me, 98, 95) or Document Defaults (Windows NT 4.0).
3. In the Paper tab, click Device options.
4. Click Duplex option unit to select it, then click OK.
5. Click OK, then close the Printers dialog box.

Windows PostScript Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript driver icon, then click Properties.
3. To engage the duplex unit:

   Windows 2000 and NT 4.0:

   a. Click the Device Settings tab.
   b. Scroll down to Installable Options and click Duplex.
   c. Under Change 'Duplex' Setting, click Installed.

   Windows Me, 98 and 95:

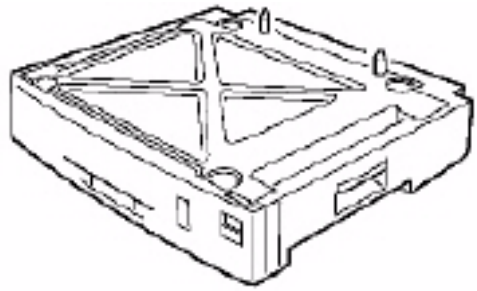
   a. Click the Device Options tab.
   b. Click Duplex.
   c. Under Change setting for: Duplex, click Installed.
4. Click OK, then close the Printers dialog box.

Macintosh Driver

1. Activate Chooser from the Apple menu.

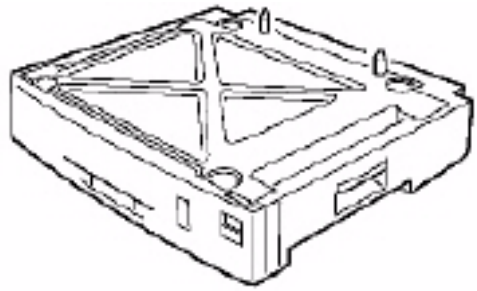
2. Select LaserWriter 8.
3. Click Printer → Setup.
4. Click Configure.
5. Change the Duplex setting to Installed.
6. Click OK twice.
7. Close Chooser.

Auxiliary Paper Trays, OKI P/N 41529701



- For media specifications, see "Print Media Specifications: Auxiliary Trays."
- For information on purchasing auxiliary paper trays, see "Purchasing Supplies & Accessories."

Installing the Auxiliary Paper Trays



Note: You can install up to two auxiliary paper trays on the printer.

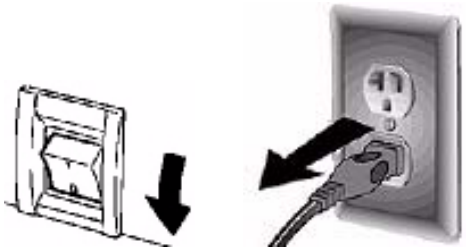
Caution! ***The printer weighs 160 lbs. (72 kg).***

Use at least two people to lift the printer.

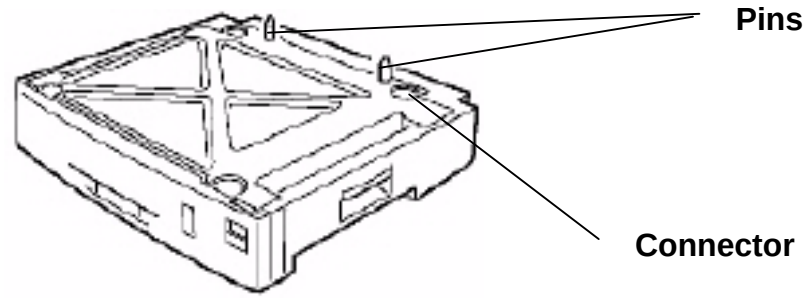
Use proper lifting techniques.

Step 1: Install the Tray(s)

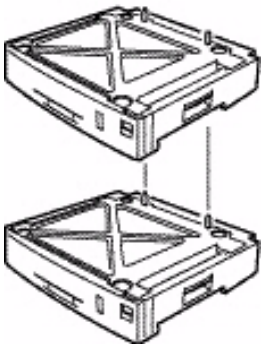
1. Unpack the auxiliary tray(s) and remove the shipping materials.
2. Turn the printer off and unplug the power cord.



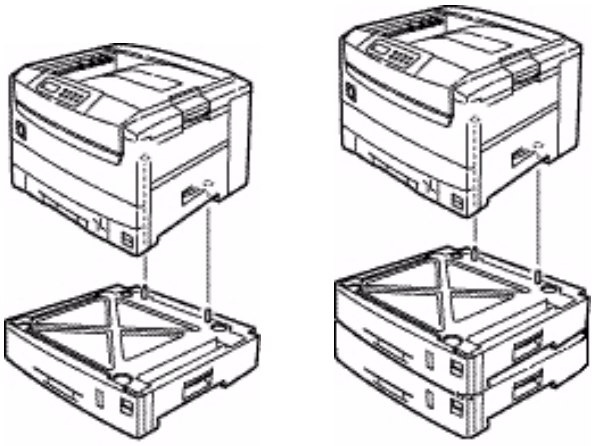
3. Remove the interface cable.
4. Move the printer aside.
5. Move the auxiliary tray into position (paper tray facing front). Note the location of the pins and connector on the tray.



6. If you are installing two trays, place the first tray on top of the second one, aligning the holes and plug in the bottom of the upper tray with the pins and socket on the lower tray.



7. Lower the printer onto the auxiliary tray(s), aligning the printer with the tray and lowering the holes/plug in the bottom of the printer onto the pins/socket on the tray.



8. Reattach the interface cable.
9. Open the cover and reinstall the fuser and drums/toners, then reinstall the paper tray.
10. Plug the power cord in and turn the printer on.

Step 2: Load Print Media

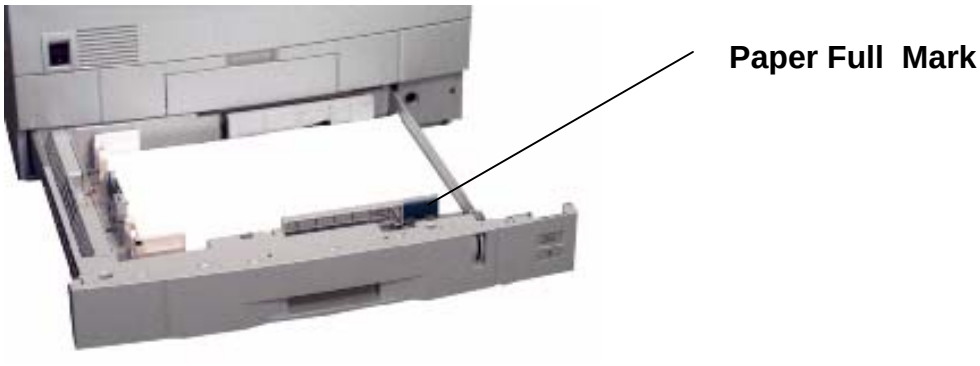
1. Pull the auxiliary paper tray out.
2. If necessary, lift out the media indicator at the right end of the tray and reposition it to correspond with the media you will normally use in that tray.

3. Position the paper guides in the tray.

For legal size and larger, position the corner supports:

4. If loading paper, fan the paper.

5. Place the print media in the tray, being sure to keep it below the PAPER FULL mark.



6. Push the paper tray back in.
7. Enter the printer menu, go to the MEDIA MENU section and set the paper size, media type and weight you will be using in the auxiliary tray(s) [Tray 2 and Tray 3].

Step 3: Activate the Auxiliary Tray(s) in the Printer Driver

Windows PCL Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PCL printer icon, then click Printing Preferences (Windows 2000), Properties (Windows Me, 98, 95) or Document Defaults (Windows NT 4.0).
3. In the Paper tab, click Device options.
4. Under Paper tray installed:, set the total number of trays installed (Tray1 + auxiliary trays), then click OK.
5. Click OK, then close the Printers dialog box.

Windows PostScript Driver

1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
2. Right click the OKI C9200 or C9400 PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
3. Click the Device Settings (Windows 2000 and NT 4.0) or Device Options (Windows Me, 98,95) tab.
4. Under Installable Options, click Additional Input Trays. and select the number of auxiliary trays installed.
5. Click OK, then close the Printers dialog box.

Macintosh PostScript Driver

1. Activate Chooser from the Apple menu.
2. Select LaserWriter 8.
3. Click Printer → Setup.
4. Click Configure.
5. Change the Additional Input Trays setting to match the number of auxiliary trays installed.
6. Click OK twice.
7. Close Chooser.

High Capacity Feeder, OKI P/N 41529801

- For paper specifications, see " Print Media Specifications: High Capacity Feeder."
- For information on purchasing the high capacity feeder, see " Purchasing Supplies & Accessories."

Installing the High Capacity Feeder

The High Capacity Feeder (HCF) consists of three paper trays in a single housing mounted on casters. Each tray takes up to 550 sheets of 20-lb. paper. The High Capacity Feeder can be combined with one Auxiliary Paper Tray to provide a total capacity of 2650 sheets of 20-lb. paper.

Note: Only one Auxiliary Paper Tray can be used with the High Capacity Feeder.

1. Turn the printer off and unplug the power cable.
2. Unplug the printer interface cable.

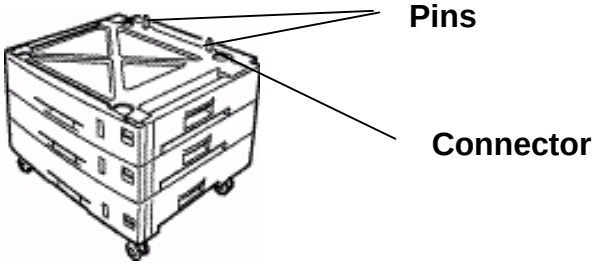
Caution! ***The printer weighs 160 lbs. (72 kg).***

Use at least two people to lift the printer.

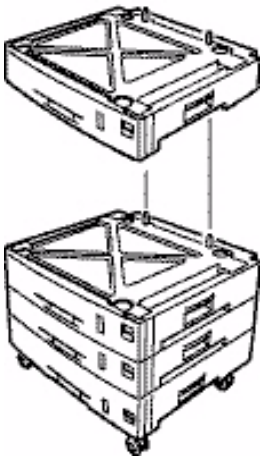
Use proper lifting techniques.

3. Unpack the High Capacity Feeder (HCF) and remove any shipping materials.
4. To prevent toner spillage and to reduce the weight of the printer, making it easier to place on the feeder, open the top cover and remove the image drums/toner cartridges, *covering them to protect them from light while they are outside the printer*.

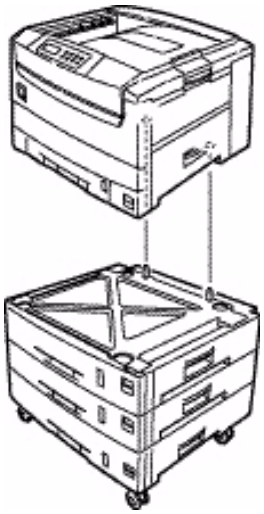
5. Move the printer aside.
6. Move the HCF into position. Note the location of the pins and connector.



7. If you are also installing an Auxiliary Paper Tray, place the tray on top of the HCF, aligning the holes and plug in the bottom of the tray with the pins and connector on the HCF.



8. Lower the printer onto the HCF (or HCF/Auxiliary Tray), lowering the holes/plug in the bottom of the printer onto the pins/connector on the HCF (or HCF/Auxiliary Tray).



9. Reattach the interface cable.
10. Open the top cover and reinstall the image drums/toner cartridges, then close the cover.

11. Plug the power cord in and turn the printer on.

Step 2: Load Paper

For each tray:

1. Pull the tray out.
2. If necessary, lift out the media indicator at the right end of the tray and reposition it to correspond with the size paper you will normally use in that tray.

3. Position the paper guides in the tray.

For legal size and larger, position the corner supports:

4. Fan the paper.

5. Place the paper in the tray, being sure to keep it below the PAPER FULL mark.

6. Push the tray back in.
7. Enter the printer menu, go to the MEDIA MENU section and set the paper size, media type and weight you will be using in the HCF tray(s) [Trays 2 /3/4 (HCF only) or 3/4/5 (HCF with auxiliary paper tray also installed].

Fonts

Selecting Fonts

The printer's default font is 10 cpi Courier.

The easiest way to select fonts is through your software program. Refer to your software documentation for information on selecting fonts.

PCL® fonts can also be selected using the printer's control panel. However, if a different font is selected in your software, it will override the font selected in the printer menu.

To print out font samples, see:

- "Printing a PCL Font List"
- "Printing a PostScript Typeface List"

PCL Fonts

Resident Bitmap PCL Fonts

Note: To see samples of the bitmap PCL fonts, print out the PCL Font List (see "Printing a PCL Font List").

Font #	Font	Pitch	Points
080	Line Printer	16.67	8.5
081	OCR-A	10.00	12.0
082	OCR-B	10.00	12.0
083	USPS PostNet	Proportional	64.8

Resident Fixed Scalable PCL Fonts

Note: To see samples of these fonts, print out the PCL Font List (see "Printing a PCL Font List").

Font # / Font	Font # / Font
Courier: 000 Roman 001 Bold 002 Italic 003 Bold Italic	Times New: 039 Roman 040 Bold 041 Italic 042 Bold Italic

CG Times: 004 Roman 005 Bold 007 Italic 007 Bold Italic	ITC Avant Garde Gothic: 043 Book 044 Demi 045 Book Oblique 046 Demi Oblique
CG Omega: 008 Roman 009 Bold 010 Italic 011 Bold Italic	ITC Bookman: 047 Light 048 Demi 049 Light Italic 050 Demi Italic
012 Coronet	CourierPS: 051 Roman 052 Bold 053 Oblique 054 Bold Oblique
013 Clarendon Condensed	Helvetica: 055 Roman 056 Bold 057 Oblique 058 Bold Oblique
Univers: 014 Medium 015 Bold 016 Medium Italic 017 Bold Italic	Helvetica Narrow: 059 Roman 060 Bold 061 Oblique 062 Bold Oblique
Univers Condensed: 018 Medium 019 Bold 020 Medium Italic 021 Bold Italic	New Century Schoolbook: 063 Roman 064 Bold 065 Italic 066 Bold Italic
Antique Olive®: 022 Roman 023 Bold 024 Italic	Palatino: 067 Roman 068 Bold 069 Italic 070 Bold Italic
Garamond®: 025 Antique 026 Halbfett 027 Kursiv 028 Kursiv Halbfett	Times: 071 Roman 072 Bold 073 Italic 074 Bold Italic
029 Marigold	ITC Zapf Chancery: 075 Medium Italic
Albertus®: 030 Medium 031 Extra Bold	076 Symbol 077 Symbol PS

Letter Gothic®: 032 Roman 033 Bold 034 Italic	078 Wingdings
Arial®: 035 Roman 036 Bold 037 Italic 038 Bold Italic	079 ITC Zapf Dingbats

Resident Proportional Scalable PCL Fonts

Font #	Font
4	CG Times
5	CG Times Bold
6	CG Times Italic
7	CG Times Bold Italic
8	CG Omega
9	CG Omega Bold
10	CG Omega Italic
11	CG Omega Bold Italic
12	Coronet
13	Clarendon Condensed
14	Univers Medium
15	Univers Bold
16	Univers Medium Italic
17	Univers Bold Italic
18	Univers Medium Condensed
19	Univers Bold Condensed
20	Univers Medium Condensed Italic
21	Univers Bold Condensed Italic
22	Antique Olive®
23	Antique Olive Bold
24	Antique Olive Italic
25	Garamond® Antique
26	Garamond Halbfett
27	Garamond Kursiv
28	Garamond Kursiv Halbfett
29	Marigold

30	Albertus® Medium
31	Albertus Extra Bold
35	Arial®
36	Arial Bold
37	Arial Italic
38	Arial Bold Italic
39	Times New®
40	Times New Bold
41	Times New Italic
42	Times New Bold Italic
43	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book
44	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi
45	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book Oblique
46	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi Oblique
47	ITC Bookman Light
48	ITC Bookman Demi
49	ITC Bookman Light Italic
50	ITC Bookman Demi Italic
55	Helvetica
56	Helvetica Bold
57	Helvetica Oblique
58	Helvetica Bold Oblique
59	Helvetica Narrow
60	Helvetica Narrow Bold
61	Helvetica Narrow Oblique
62	Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique
63	New Century Schoolbook Roman
64	New Century Schoolbook Bold
65	New Century Schoolbook Italic
66	New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic
67	Palatino Roman
68	Palatino Bold
69	Palatino Italic
70	Palatino Bold Italic
71	Times Roman
72	Times Bold
73	Times Italic

74	Times Bold Italic
75	ITC Zapf Chancery Medium Italic
76	Symbol
77	Symbol PS
78	Wingdings
79	ITC Zapf Dingbats

PCL Font Symbol Sets

Symbol Set	**Printer Display**
Bulgarian	Bulgarian
CWI Hungarian	CWI Hung
Desk Top	Desk Top
ECMA-94 Latin 1	ISO L1
Greek 437	Greek-437
Greek 437 Cyprus	Greek-437 Cy
Greek 928	Greek-928
Hebrew NC (862)	Hebrew NC
Hebrew OC	Hebrew OC
HP German	German
HP Spanish	Spanish
HP ZIP Code	HP ZIP
IBM Code Page 437	IBM-437
IBM Code Page 850	IBM-850
IBM Code Page 860	IBM-860
IBM Code Page 863	IBM-863
IBM Code Page 865	IBM-865
ISO 8859/10 Latin 6	ISO L6
ISO 8859/15 Latin 9	ISO L9
ISO 8859/2 Latin 2 (ECMA-94)	ISO L2
ISO 8859/9 Latin 5 (ECMA-128)	ISO L5
ISO Dutch	ISO Dutch
ISO Swedish 1	ISO Swedish1
ISO Swedish 2	ISO Swedish2
ISO Swedish 3	ISO Swedish3
ISO-10 Swedish/Finnish	ISO-10 S/F
ISO-11 Swedish: names	ISO-11 Swe

ISO-14 JIS ASCII	ISO-14 JASC
ISO-15 Italian	ISO-15 Ita
ISO-16 Portuguese	ISO-16 Por
ISO-17 Spanish	ISO-17 Spa
ISO-2 IRV	ISO-2 IRV
ISO-21 German	ISO-21 Ger
ISO-25 French	ISO-25 Fre
ISO-4 UK	ISO-4 UK
ISO-57 Chinese	ISO-57 Chi
ISO-6 US ASCII	ISO-6 ASC
ISO-60 Norwegian v1	ISO-60 Nor
ISO-61 Norwegian v2	ISO-61 Nor
ISO-69 French	ISO-69 Fre
ISO-84 Portuguese	ISO-84 Por
ISO-85 Spanish	ISO-85 Spa
ITC Zapf Dingbats MS	Dingbats MS
Kamenicky (MJK)	Kamenicky
Legal	Legal
Math-8	Math-8
MC Text	MC Text
MS Publishing	MS Publish
OCR-A	OCR-A
OCR-B	OCR-B
PC Extension D/N	PC Ext D/N
PC Extension US	PC Ext US
PC Set 1	PC Set1
PC Set 2 D/N	PC Set2 D/N
PC Set 2 US	PC Set2 US
PC 1004	PC-1004
PC 775	PC-775
PC-8	PC-8
PC-8 Danish/Norwegian	PC-8 Dan/Nor
PC-850	PC-850
PC-852 (East Europe Code Page 852)	PC-852
PC-855 (Cyrillic 1 Code Page 855)	PC-855
PC-857 (Turkish Code Page 857)	PC-857 TK
PC-858	PC-858

PC-866 (Cyrillic 2 Code Page 866)	PC-866
PC-869 (Greek Code Page 869)	PC-869
Pi Font	Pi Font
Polska Mazovia	Plska Mazvia
PS Math	PS Math
PS Text	PS Text
Roman Ext	Roman Ext
Roman-8	Roman-8
Roman-9	Roman-9
Serbo Croatic I	Serbo Croat1
Serbo Croatic II	Serbo Croat2
Symbol Font	Symbol
Turkish PC-8 (PC Turkish)	PC-8 TK
Ukrainian	Ukrainian
USPS FIM Bars	USPSFIM
USPS Stamp Here	USPSSTP
USPS ZIP Code	USPSZIP
Ventura International	VN Int'l
Ventura Math	VN Math
Ventura US	VN US
Windows 3.0 Latin 1	Win 3.0 L1
Windows 3.1 Cyrillic	Win 3.1 Cyr
Windows 3.1 Greek	Win 3.1 Grk
Windows 3.1 Hebrew	Win 3.1 Heb
Windows 3.1 Latin 1	Win 3.1 L1
Windows 3.1 Latin 2 (East Europe Windows 3.1)	Win 3.1 L2
Windows 3.1 Latin 5	Win 3.1 L5
Windows 3.1 Baltic	Win 3.1 Blt
Wingdings Font	Wingdings

PostScript

Resident Fixed PostScript Fonts

Note: To see samples of fixed resident PostScript fonts, print out a PostScript Typeface List (see " Printing a PostScript Typeface List ").

Fixed Type-14 Resident PostScript Fonts

- Courier
- Courier Oblique
- Courier Bold
- Courier Bold Oblique
- Letter Gothic®
- Letter Gothic Bold
- Letter Gothic Slanted
- Letter Gothic Bold Slanted

Resident Proportional PostScript Fonts

Note: To see samples of each font, print out a PostScript Typeface List (see " Printing a PostScript Typeface List ").

Type 2 Fonts

Font #	Font
1	Albertus MT®
2	Albertus MT Italic
3	Albertus MT Light
8	Apple-Chancery®
27	Carta®
32	Cooper Black®
33	Cooper Black Italic
34	Copperplate® Thirty Three BC
35	Copperplate Thirty Two BC
36	Coronet Regular
49	Gill Sans® Bold Italic
55	Goudy®
56	Goudy Bold
57	Goudy Bold Italic
58	Goudy Extra Bold
59	Goudy Italic
75	Hoefler Text Ornaments
77	Joanna® MT
88	LubalinGraph Demi Oblique
91	Mona Lisa Recut
95	New CenturySchoolbook Roman

101	Oxford
110	Symbol
111	Tekton®
134	Wingdings Regular
135	Zapf Chancery Medium Italic
136	Zapf Dingbats

Type 14 Fonts

Font #	Font
4	Antique Olive® Bold
5	Antique Olive Compact
6	Antique Olive Italic
7	Antique Olive Roman
9	Arial® Bold Italic MT
10	Arial Bold MT
11	Arial Italic MT
12	Arial MT
13	Avant Garde Book
14	Avant Garde Book Oblique
15	Avant Garde Demi
16	Avant Garde Demi Oblique
17	Bodoni
18	Bodoni Bold
19	Bodoni Bold Italic
20	Bodoni Italic
21	Bodoni Poster
22	Bodoni Poster Compressed
23	Bookman Demi
24	Bookman Demi Italic
25	Bookman Light
26	Bookman Light Italic
28	Chicago
29	Clarendon
30	Clarendon Bold
31	Clarendon Light
41	Eurostile

42	Eurostile Bold
43	Eurostile Bold Extended Two
44	Eurostile Extended Two
45	Geneva®
46	Gill Sans®
47	Gill Sans Bold
48	Gill Sans Bold Condensed
50	Gill Sans Condensed
51	Gill Sans Extra Bold
52	Gill Sans Italic
53	Gill Sans Light
54	Gill Sans Light Italic
60	Helvetica
61	Helvetica Bold
62	Helvetica Bold Oblique
63	Helvetica Condensed
64	Helvetica Condensed Bold
65	Helvetica Condensed Bold Oblique
66	Helvetica Condensed Oblique
67	Helvetica Narrow
68	Helvetica Narrow Bold
69	Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique
70	Helvetica Narrow Oblique
71	Helvetica Oblique
72	Hoefler Text Black
73	Hoefler Text Black Italic
74	Hoefler Text Italic
76	Hoefler Text Regular
78	Joanna® MT Bold
79	Joanna MT Bold Italic
80	Joanna MT Italic
81	Letter Gothic®
82	Letter Gothic Bold
83	Letter Gothic Bold Slanted
84	Letter Gothic Slanted
85	LubalinGraph Book
86	LubalinGraph Book Oblique

87	LubalinGraph Demi
89	Marigold
90	Monaco®
92	New Century Schoolbook Bold
93	New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic
94	New Century Schoolbook Italic
96	New York
97	Optima
98	Optima Bold
99	Optima Bold Italic
100	Optima Italic
102	Palatino Bold
103	Palatino Bold Italic
104	Palatino Italic
105	Palatino Roman
106	Stempel Garamond Bold
107	Stempel Garamond Bold Italic
108	Stempel Garamond Italic
109	Stempel Garamond Roman
112	Times Bold
113	Times Bold Italic
114	Times Italic
115	Times Roman
116	Times New Roman® PS Bold Italic MT
117	Times New Roman PS Bold MT
118	Times New Roman PS Italic MT
119	Times New Roman PS MT
120	Univers
121	Univers Bold
122	Univers Bold Extended
123	Univers Bold Extended Oblique
124	Univers Bold Oblique
125	Univers Condensed
126	Univers-Condensed Bold
127	Univers Condensed Bold Oblique
128	Univers Condensed Oblique
129	Univers Extended

130	Univers Extended Oblique
131	Univers Light
132	Univers Light Oblique
133	Univers Oblique

Font Management for the Macintosh

Adobe® Type Manager® (ATM®)

The OKI® C9000 Series CD contains Adobe Type Manager Light 4.6 for the Macintosh®, located under \PsFont\ATM\ATM 4.6 Installer.

Fonts Downloader Program

The OKI C9000 Series CD also includes a program which allows you to transfer fonts to the printer's RAM or to its internal Hard Disk Drive (standard on all models except C9200).

Installing the Downloader Program

To install the Downloader program:

1. Put the OKI C9000 Series CD in your CD-ROM drive.
2. Double-click the OKI CD icon that appears on the desktop.
3. Open the MAC folder (MAC\PSDRV\ENGLISH\Mac Installer).
4. Double-click the Mac Installer icon, then click Continue.
5. Select Custom Install from the drop-down list.

6. Click Fonts Downloader, then click Install and follow the on-screen instructions.
7. When the installation is complete, the Downloader utility folder will automatically open.

Using the Downloader Program

To use the Downloader program, double-click the Downloader icon on the desktop.

Warranties, Certifications, etc.

Warranties

Limited Warranty

United States & Canada

Oki Data Americas, Inc. (Oki Data) warrants this printer to be free from defects in material and workmanship and will remedy any such defect according to the terms of this *Limited Warranty*.

Oki Data will repair (or at its option, replace) at no charge, any defective component(s) of the Printer for one (1) year from the date of purchase except for the printhead (LED imaging array), which is warranted for a period of five (5) years from date of purchase. This *Limited Warranty* extends to the original purchaser only. This *Limited Warranty* does not extend to consumable items.

On-Site Repair

Note: On-Site Repair is available in the United States and Canada only. On-Site Repair does not include the replacement or repair of product consumables or supplies.

Oki Data will, for a period of one (1) year from the date of original purchase, repair or replace (at Oki Data's option) on-site at the original purchaser's facility and without charge, any defective component(s) of the printer, provided that the warranty service is performed by an Oki Data authorized service provider. The printheads (LED imaging arrays) have a 5-year parts only warranty from date of original purchase. Following the first year of warranty coverage, the printheads will be replaced by an authorized Oki Data service provider at Oki Data's then current labor rates. Oki Data reserves the right to use new and/or refurbished parts in the warranty repair process.

To make request or claim for service under this *Limited Warranty* contact your local Oki Data authorized service center or Oki Data at 1-800-OKI-DATA (1-800-654-3282).

A written receipt for the product, showing the date of purchase, dealer's name, and both the model and serial numbers of this printer must accompany any request or claim for work to be performed under this *Limited Warranty*.

This *Limited Warranty* shall not apply if the product has been damaged due to abuse, misuse, misapplication, accident, or as a result of service or modification by any other than an authorized Oki Data service center.

THERE ARE NO EXPRESS WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE ON THE FACE HEREOF AND DESCRIBED ABOVE. NO WARRANTIES WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY

OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SHALL EXTEND BEYOND THE RESPECTIVE WARRANTY PERIOD DESCRIBED ABOVE. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you.

OKI DATA SHALL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE OR LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR LOSS ARISING FROM THE USE OF THIS PRODUCT. Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Additional information on obtaining service under this *Limited Warranty* is available by contacting the Oki Data dealer from whom the product was purchased, by contacting Oki Data directly at 1-800-OKI-DATA (U.S. and Canada, English only) or at 1-856-222-7496 (Spanish only), or by contacting one of the service locations listed below.

Oki Data Service Center Information

United States	**Canada**
Oki Data Americas, Inc. Tel: 1-800-654-3282 Fax: 1-856-222-5247	Oki Data Americas, Inc. Tel: 1-800-654-3282 Fax: 1-905-238-4427
Mexico	**Brazil**
Oki Data de Mexico, S.A. de C.V. Tel: (525) 263-8780 Fax: (525) 263-8785	Oki Data do Brasil, Ltda. Tel: 55 11-3444-3500 Fax: 55 11-3444-3501

This *Limited Warranty* applies to this printer. However, the procedure for obtaining service may vary outside the continental United States. Contact your Oki Data dealer for such warranty service information.

This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights which vary from state to state.

Options Limited Warranty: US & Canada

Oki Data Americas, Inc. (Oki Data) warrants this OPTION to be free from defect in material and workmanship and will remedy any such defect according to the terms of this *Limited Warranty*.

Oki Data will repair (or at its option, replace) at no charge, any defective part(s) of the OPTION for one (1) year from the date of purchase. This *Limited Warranty* extends to the original purchaser only.

To make request or claim for service under this *Limited Warranty* the original purchaser must return the Oki Data product, shipping prepaid, in the original shipping container or equivalent, to Oki Data or an authorized Oki Data service center and assume the risk of loss or damage in transit. A written receipt for the product, showing the date of purchase, dealer's name, and item purchased must accompany any request or claim for work to be performed under this *Limited Warranty*.

This *Limited Warranty* shall not apply if the product has been damaged due to abuse, misuse, misapplication, accident, or as a result of service or modification by any other than an authorized Oki Data service center.

THERE ARE NO EXPRESS WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE ON THE FACE HEREOF AND DESCRIBED ABOVE. NO WARRANTIES WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY

OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SHALL EXTEND BEYOND THE RESPECTIVE WARRANTY PERIOD DESCRIBED ABOVE OF ONE (1) YEAR. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you.

OKI DATA SHALL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE OR LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR LOSS ARISING FROM THE USE OF THIS PRODUCT. Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Additional information on obtaining service under this *Limited Warranty* is available by contacting the Oki Data dealer from whom the product was purchased, by contacting Oki Data directly at 1-800-OKI-DATA (U.S. and Canada, English only) or at 1-856-222-7496 (Spanish only), or by contacting one of the service locations listed below.

This *Limited Warranty* gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights which vary from state to state.

For the most up-to-date listing of Oki Data authorized Service Centers, call 1-800-OKI-DATA (1-800-654-3282).

Oki Data Service Centers

United States	**Canada**
Oki Data Americas, Inc. Tel: 1-800-654-3282 Fax: 1-856-222-5247	Oki Data Americas, Inc. Tel: 1-800-654-3282 Fax: 1-905-238-4427
Mexico	**Brazil**
Oki Data de Mexico, S.A. de C.V. Tel: (525) 263-8780 Fax: (525) 263-8785	Oki Data do Brasil, Ltda. Tel: 55 11-3444-3500 Fax: 55 11-3444-3501

Consumables Limited Warranty

Oki Data Americas, Inc. (Oki Data) warrants this Consumable item (hereinafter Consumable) to be free from defects in material and workmanship under normal and proper use, provided however, that it is properly stored and maintained in the original packaging. This *Limited Warranty* is subject to the conditions set forth herein and shall remain in effect for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of purchase by the end user.

Should a Consumable which has been properly stored and maintained in the original packaging be determined by Oki Data to be defective, it will be repaired or replaced, at Oki Data's option, at no charge to the end user.

To make claim under this *Limited Warranty*, the original purchaser must return this product to the place of original purchase or to Oki Data. Consumables returned to Oki Data are to be returned in the original package or equivalent, shipper to bear cost of shipping and risk of loss in transit and must be accompanied by a written receipt for the product, showing the date of purchase, dealer's name and item purchased.

THIS LIMITED WARRANTY IS THE SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE WARRANTY OFFERED ON THIS CONSUMABLE ITEM, AND OKI DATA OFFERS NO OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR USE.

Oki Data shall not be responsible or liable for any special, incidental or consequential damages or loss arising from the use of this product.

Additional information on obtaining service under this *Limited Warranty* is available by contacting the Oki Data dealer from whom the product was purchased, by contacting Oki Data directly at 1-800-OKI-DATA (U.S. and Canada, English only) or at 1-856-222-7496 (Spanish only), or by contacting one of the service locations listed below.

Oki Data Service Centers

United States	**Canada**
Oki Data Americas, Inc. Tel: 1-800-654-3282 Fax: 1-856-222-5247	Oki Data Americas, Inc. Tel: 1-800-654-3282 Fax: 1-905-238-4427
Mexico	**Brazil**
Oki Data de Mexico, S.A. de C.V. Tel: (525) 263-8780 Fax: (525) 263-8785	Oki Data do Brasil, Ltda. Tel: 55 11-3444-3500 Fax: 55 11-3444-3501

For the most comprehensive, up-to-date information on service center locations, call 1-800-OKI-DATA (1-800-654-3282).

This *Limited Warranty* gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights which vary from state to state.

Safety Information

Your OKI® printer has been carefully designed to give you years of safe, reliable performance. As with all electrical equipment, there are a few basic precautions you should take to avoid hurting yourself or damaging the printer.

- Carefully read the provided setup and operating instructions.
- Save all provided documentation for future reference.
- Read and follow all warning and instruction labels on the printer itself.
- Unplug the printer before you clean it. Use only a damp cloth; do not use liquid or aerosol cleaners.
- Place your printer on a firm, solid surface. If you put it on something unsteady, it may fall and be damaged. If you place it on a soft surface, such as a rug, sofa, or cushion, the vents may be blocked, causing the printer to overheat.
- Protect your printer from overheating. Make sure no obstructions block the openings of the printer. Do not put the printer on or near a heat source (such as a radiator or heat register). Keep the printer out of direct sunlight. Allow enough room around the printer for adequate ventilation and easy access to the paper trays. If you put the printer in any kind of enclosure, make sure the enclosure is properly ventilated.
- Do not use your printer near water. Do not spill liquid of any kind into it.
- Be certain that your power source matches the rating listed on the back of the printer. If you are not sure, check with your dealer or with your local power company.
- Your printer has a grounded, three-prong plug as a safety feature. This plug only fits into a grounded outlet. If the plug does not fit, the outlet may be an older, non-grounded type. Contact an electrician to have the outlet replaced. Do not use an adapter to defeat the grounding.

- Install the printer near an easily accessed power outlet.
- Avoid damaging the power cord. Do not put anything on it or place it where it will be walked on. If the cord becomes damaged or frayed, replace it immediately.
- If you are using an extension cord or power strip with the printer, make sure that the total of the amperes required by all the equipment on the extension is less than the extension's rating. The total ratings of all equipment plugged into the outlet should not exceed 15 amperes.
- Do not poke anything into the ventilation slots of the printer. You could get an electrical shock or cause hazardous electrical arcing, which could cause a fire.
- Aside from the routine maintenance described in the documentation, do not try to service the printer yourself. Removing the cover may expose you to shocks or other hazards.
- Do not make any adjustments other than those outlined in the documentation. You may cause damage that will require extensive repair work. The provided documentation explains how to get your printer serviced by qualified Oki Data technicians.

If anything happens that indicates that your printer is not working properly or has been damaged, unplug it immediately and follow the procedures in the provided documentation for having your printer serviced.

Here are some of the things to look for.

- The power cord or plug is frayed or damaged.
- Liquid has been spilled into the printer, or the printer has been exposed to water.
- The printer has been dropped, or the cabinet is damaged.
- The printer does not function normally when you are following the operating instructions.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Statements

Federal Communications Commission Declarations of Conformity for 120 Volt Models

1. Product Identification

   Product Name: C9200, C9400 and Duplex Option

   Model No.: N31060A, N31061A and N31090A

2. Statement

   This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

3. Responsible Party

   Oki Data Americas, Inc.
   2000 Bishops Gate Boulevard
   Mt. Laurel, NJ 08054-4620

   1-800-654-3282 (1-800-OKI-DATA)

Federal Communications Commission Radio Frequency

Interference Statement for 120-Volt Models

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- Plug the unit into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/television technician for help.

It is the responsibility of the user to obtain the required shielded cable in order to ensure compliance of this equipment with FCC regulations.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by Oki Data may void your authority to operate this device.

Federal Communications Commission Radio Frequency Interference Statement for 230/240-Volt Models and 120-Volt Models Equipped with Auxiliary Tray(s) and/or Network Print Server Option

WARNING: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

It is the responsibility of the user to obtain the required shielded cable in order to ensure compliance of this equipment with FCC regulations.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by Oki Data may void your authority to operate this device.

Industry Canada Radio Interference Statements

For 120-Volt Models

This Oki Data apparatus complies with the Class B limits for radio interference as specified in the Industry Canada Radio Interference Regulations.

For 230/240-Volt Models and 120-Volt Models with Auxiliary Paper Tray(s) and/or Network Print Server Option

This Oki Data apparatus complies with the Class A limits for radio interference as specified in the Industry Canada Radio Interference Regulations.

ENERGY STAR

As an ENERGY STAR® Partner, Oki Data has determined that this product meets the ENERGY STAR guidelines for energy efficiency.

Year 2000 Compliance

All products currently sold by Oki Data are Year 2000 Compliant. Each product contains information technology that accurately processes date and time data between the years 1999 and 2000, and carries no issue for the September 9, 1999 (9999) programming concern. These products, when used in combination with products purchased from other manufacturers, whose products properly exchange data and time information, will accurately process the date and time. All future products are committed to meeting the same Year 2000 compliance.

European Union Council of the European Communities Statement of Electromagnetic Conformance for 230/240-Volt Models

This product complies with the requirements of the council Directive 89/336/EEC on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to electromagnetic compatibility.

European Union Council of the European Communities Statement of Safety Conformance, 230/240V Models

This product is in conformity with Directive 73/23/EEC on the harmonization of the laws of Member States relating to electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits.

Drivers / Connections

Uninstalling the Printer Software

Windows 2000, Me, 98, 95 & NT 4.0

1. ***USB Drivers only***: turn off the printer before uninstalling the driver!
2. To remove the Color Swatch Utility and/or the OKI Storage Device Manager software:
   a. Click Start → Settings → Control Panel.
   b. Double-click Add/Remove Programs.
   c. To uninstall the Color Swatch Utility, select OKI C Series Software in the box, then click Add/Remove and click Yes to confirm the removal.
   d. To uninstall the OKI Storage Device Manager software, select OKI Storage Device Manager in the box, then click Add/Remove and click Yes to confirm the removal
3. When the removal process is finished, click OK.
4. Close the Control Panel window.
5. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
6. For each OKI C series printer icon: click the icon, then click File → Delete → Yes.
7. Close the Printers dialog box.

Macintosh

To uninstall the Macintosh PostScript driver, drag the desktop printer to the Trash icon.

Parallel Interface

Connecting the Parallel Port

1. Turn the computer and printer off.
2. Attach a standard IEEE-1284 parallel cable (not supplied) to the parallel port on the printer, securing it with the spring clips.

3. Attach the other end of the cable to the parallel port on the computer and secure it in place with the screws.

Parallel Cable Requirements

- **FCC:** To comply with FCC regulations, the cable must be shielded with twisted pair conductors, and must be UL and CSA approved.
- **Length:** Maximum length for standard bidirectional cable is 6 feet (1.8 meters). The standard parallel cables available at computer stores should work fine. For extended distances, higher quality IEEE 1284-compliant cables are available.
- **Connector:** Printer connector is IEEE 1284-B receptacle (36 pins, 0.085" center line).
- **Port:** Port supports bidirectional IEEE 1284 communications (compatibility, nibble, and ECP modes).

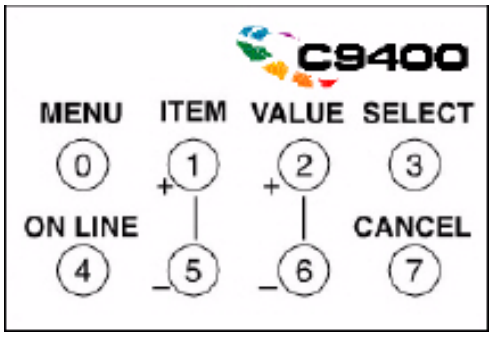
Standard Parallel Port Menu Settings

Item	Default Setting

PARALLEL	ENABLE
BI-DIRECTION	ENABLE
ECP	ENABLE
ACK WIDTH	NARROW
ACK/BUSY TIMING	ACK IN BUSY
I-PRIME	DISABLE

Changing Parallel Port Menu Settings

To change parallel port menu settings:



1. Press MENU repeatedly until PARALLEL MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM (+ or -) repeatedly until the parameter you wish to change appears on the display (e.g., BI-DIRECTION).
3. Press VALUE (+ or -) repeatedly until the setting you wish to engage appears on the display (e.g., DISABLE).
4. Press SELECT to engage that setting (an Asterisk will appear next to the new setting).
5. Press ON LINE to save the setting and exit the menu.

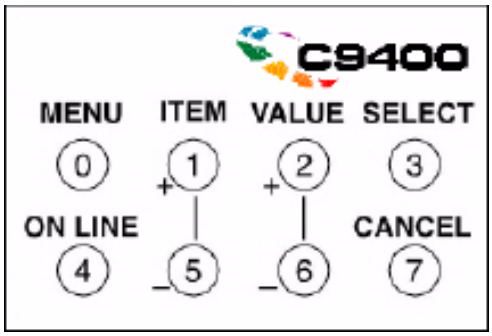
ECP Mode

The parallel port supports IEEE-1284 bidirectional mode and ECP mode. If your computer's parallel port is not compatible with one of these modes, the printer may not print at all or it may print corrupted data.

To correct for this, enter the printer's Parallel Menu and change the ECP setting to Disable.

Changing the ECP Menu Setting

To change ECP setting:



1. Press MENU repeatedly until PARALLEL MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM (+ or -) repeatedly until ECP appears on the display.
3. Press VALUE + to change the setting (DISABLE/ENABLE toggle back and forth on the display).
4. Press SELECT to engage the setting. *An asterisk will appear next to the new setting.*
5. Press ON LINE to save the setting and exit the printer menu.

Pin Assignments

Parallel Interface Pin Assignments: Compatible Mode

Pin	Signal Name	Direction	Compatible
1	Data Strobe	to printer	nStrobe
2-9	Data Bit n	to printer	Data 1 (LSB) to 8 (MSB)
10	Acknowledge	from printer	nAck
11	Busy	from printer	Busy
12	Paper End	from printer	Perror
13	Select	from printer	Select
14	Auto Feed	to printer	nAutoFd
15	[not used]	—	—
16	0V	—	Logic Ground
17	Chassis Ground	—	Chassis Ground
18	+5V	from printer	Peripheral Logic High
19	0V	—	Chassis Ground
20-27	0V	—	Signal Ground (nStrobe)
28	0V	—	Signal Ground (Data 1-8)
29	0V	—	Signal Ground (Perror, Select, nAck)

30	0V	—	Signal Ground (nAutoFd, nSelectIn, nInit)
31	Input Prime	to printer	nInit
32	Fault	from printer	nFault
33	0V	—	—
34	[NOT USED]	—	—
35	—	from printer	Pulled up to +5V through 3.3 Kohm
36	Sel In	to printer	nSelectIn

Parallel Interface Pin Assignments: ECP Mode

Pin	Signal Name	Direction	ECP
1	Data Strobe	to printer	HostClk
2-9	Data Bit n	to printer	Data 1 (LSB) to 8 (MSB)
10	Acknowledge	from printer	PeriphClk
11	Busy	from printer	PeriphAck
12	Paper End	from printer	nAckReverse
13	Select	from printer	Xflag
14	Auto Feed	to printer	HostAck
15	[not used]	—	—
16	0V	—	Logic Ground
17	Chassis Ground	—	Chassis Ground
18	+5V	from printer	Peripheral Logic High
19	0V	—	Chassis Ground
20-27	0V	—	Signal Ground (nStrobe)
28	0V	—	Signal Ground (Data 1-8)
29	0V	—	Signal Ground (Perror, Select, nAck)
30	0V	—	Signal Ground (nAutoFd, nSelectIn, nInit)
31	Input Prime	to printer	nReverseRequest
32	Fault	from printer	nPeriphRequest
33	0V	—	—

34	[NOT USED]	—	—
35	—	from printer	Pulled up to +5V through 3.3 Kohm
36	Sel In	to printer	1284 Active

Parallel Interface Pin Assignments: Nibble Mode

Pin	Signal Name	Direction	Nibble
1	Data Strobe	to printer	Host Clk
2-9	Data Bit n	to printer	Data 1 (LSB) to 8 (MSB)
10	Acknowledge	from printer	Ptrclk
11	Busy	from printer	PtrBusy
12	Paper End	from printer	AckDataReq
13	Select	from printer	Xflag
14	Auto Feed	to printer	HostBusy
15	[not used]	—	—
16	0V	—	Logic Ground
17	Chassis Ground	—	Chassis Ground
18	+5V	from printer	Peripheral Logic High
19	0V	—	Chassis Ground
20-27	0V	—	Signal Ground (nStrobe)
28	0V	—	Signal Ground (Data 1-8)
29	0V	—	Signal Ground (Perror, Select, nAck)
30	0V	—	Signal Ground (nAutoFd, nSelectIn, nInit)
31	Input Prime	to printer	nInit
32	Fault	from printer	nDataAvail
33	0V	—	—
34	[NOT USED]	—	—
35	—	from printer	Pulled up to +5V through 3.3 Kohm
36	Sel In	to printer	1284 Active

USB Interface

Connecting the USB Port

1. Turn the computer and printer off.
2. Connect the USB cable to the USB port on the computer.

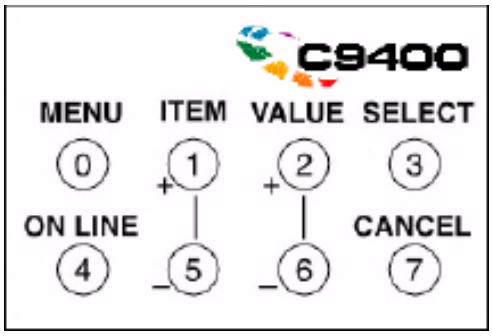
3. Connect the other end of the cable to the USB port on the printer.

Standard USB Port Menu Settings

Item	Default Setting
USB	ENABLE
SOFT RESET	DISABLE

Changing USB Port Menu Settings

To change the USB port menu settings:



1. Press MENU repeatedly until USB MENU appears on the display.
2. Press ITEM + repeatedly until the parameter you wish to change appears on the display (e.g., SOFT RESET).
3. Press VALUE + to change the setting on the display (e.g., ENABLE).
4. Press SELECT to engage that setting (an Asterisk will appear next to the new setting).
5. Press ON LINE to save the setting and exit the menu.

USB Cable Requirements

The USB cable used with the printer must conform to the following specifications:

- **Compliance:** Universal Serial Bus Revision 1.1, UL/CM/CSA approved
- **Plugs:** Type "B" plug for connection to printer, Type "A" for connection to computer.
- **Approvals:** UL, CM, CSA
- **Length:** Maximum 16.5 ft. (5 m)

Network Interface

Network Interface

A 10/100 Base-T network print server is included as standard equipment on the OKI® Models C9200n, C9200dxn and C9400dxn. For Model C9200, the network print server is an option that can be added at a later date.

For details on supported operating systems, network protocols, and other print server information, please refer to the on-line Network User's Guide for the OkiLAN® 6200e print server.

Network Cable Requirements

Windows Systems

Requires Ethernet® cable with two twisted wire pairs and an RJ45 plug at the printer end.

Macintosh Systems

Requires Ethernet cable with RJ45 connectors at either end. If the printer is directly connected to a network port, a crossover cable is required.

Connecting the Network Server

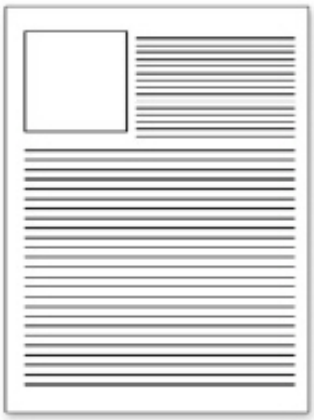
Note: You must supply your own Ethernet® cable for connection to the printer.

1. Turn the printer off.
2. Connect your Ethernet cable to the network port on the print server.

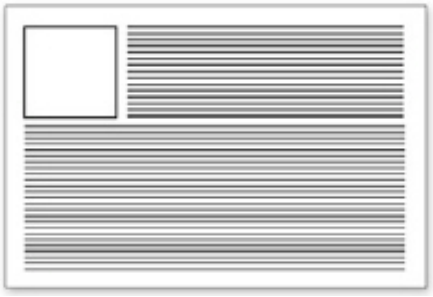
3. Connect the other end of the cable to the network port.
4. Turn the printer on.

Portrait versus Landscape

Portrait



Landscape



Index

1

10/100 Base-T network interface **438**

A

Accessories **379, 382, 388**
- auxiliary paper trays 401
- duplex unit 397
- high capacity feeder 406
- memory DIMMs 382
- order numbers 379
- print servers 388, 391
- print serverw 388
- purchasing 377

Additive versus subtractive **333**
Adjustments, color **334**
Administrative password, OKI Storage Device Manager **266**
Adobe PostScript emulation, setting **111**
Adobe Type Manager, Macintosh **422**
Arrays, LED **315**
ATTENTION light **105**
Automatic tray switching **73**
Auxiliary paper trays **401**
- changing media settings 84
- installing 401
- loading media 59
- print media 27

B

Balance, color **109**
Belt, transfer, replacing **320**
Bitmap fonts
- **PCL** 411

Black light **338**
Booklets, printing **165, 184, 204**
Buttons, control panel **101**

C

Cable requirements **432, 438, 439**
- network 439
- parallel port 432
- USB 438

CANCEL button **101**
Cartridges, toner
- life 308
- replacing 305

CE statements **430**
Cleaning LED arrays **315**
CMS **345**
Code page symbol sets **415**
Collating
- Macintosh 141, 148, 167, 186, 206

Windows 2000 148
Windows 98/95 186
Windows Me 167
Color 345
additive versus subtractive 333
adjustments 334
balance 109
color menu 115
color swatch utility 342
dithering 337
electromagnetic spectrum 338
gamut 339
glossary 328
halftones 337
management systems 345
models 340
perception 335
problems using 339
registration 336
setting 324
specifying 340
wheel 336
Color management 345
Windows ICM 343
Color menu 115
Colors 339
neutral 339
primary 339
secondary 339
Compatible mode pin assignments 434
Confidential documents 235
Configurations 363
Consumables 378
order numbers 378
warranty 426
Control panel 105
automatic tray switching 73
buttons 101
default exit path 80
display language 113
ECP setting 433
how to use 114
lights 105
media settings, changing 84, 85
messages
error 292
status 298
parallel port menu settings 433
printing demo pages 105
printing font lists 106
resetting to factory defaults 114
setting emulation 111
setting power save mode 110
turning duplex unit on 112
USB menu settings 438
Copyright 23
Custom page sizes
Macintosh 142
Windows 2000 150

Windows 98/95 188
Windows Me 169
Windows NT 4.0 208

D

Defaults 114
exit path 80
font 411
resetting 114
Delete forms 273
Demo page 105
Digital LED technology 365
Dimensions 364
DIMMS 382
installing 382
Disk drive, spooler 272
Disk maintenance menu 116
Display language 113
Display messages 292, 298
error 292
status 298
Dithering 337
Documents, confidential 235
Drivers 111
engaging the duplex unit 397
uninstalling 431
Drums, image
life 315
precautions 315
replacing 309
Duplex printing 144, 155, 174, 193, 215
Macintosh 145
Windows 2000 156
Windows 98/95 193
Windows Me 174
Windows NT 4.0 215
Duplex unit 397
engaging in menu 112
installing 397
specifications 27, 144, 155, 174, 193, 215

E

ECP mode 433
changing setting 433
pin assignments 435
Electrical specificatipns 364
Electromagnetic conformity statements 430
Electromagnetic spectrum 338
Emulations, setting a specific 111
Energy Star statement 430
Engaging the duplex unit in the driver 397
Error messages 292
EtherNet 388, 438
cable requirements 439
print servers 388
Exit paths, default, changing 80

F

Factory defaults, resetting **114**
Faint print **290**
FCC statements **428**
Federal Communications Commission statements **428**
Feed paths **65**
automatic switching 73
Feeder
high capacity 406
changing media settings 85
installing 406
File list
printing 108
Flash memory **363**
Font lists, printing **106**
Fonts
ATM for Macintosh 422
PCL 411, 413
PostScript 417, 418
selecting 411
Fonts downloader, Macintosh **422**
Forms **247**
delete 273
overlays 247
PCL 269
PostScript 267
Fuser unit, replacing **317**

G

Gamut **339**
Glossary **328**

H

Halftones **337**
Hard disk drive spooler **272**
Hardware problems **287**
HDD spooler **272**
High capacity feeder **406**
installing 406
loading print media 59
media settings 85
print media 28
How digital LED technology works **365**
HSL model **340**

I

IC statements **429**
ICM, Windows **343**
Image drums
life 315
precautions 315
replacing 309
Index weight settings **24**
Industry Canada statements **429**
Information menu **116**
Interfaces **438**
network 438
ISO symbol sets **415**

ITEM button **101**

L

Language, control panel **113**
LED **365**
arrays, cleaning 315
technology, how it works 365
Life **308, 315**
image drums 315
toner cartridges 308
Light, electromagnetic spectrum **338**
Lights, control panel **105**
Limited warranties
consumables 426
oprions 425
printer 424
Loading print media **59, 62**
auxiliary trays 59
high capacity feeder 59
MP tray 62
tray 1 59
Logos (overlays) **247**
Long edge printing **28**

M

Macintosh
Adobe Type Manager 422
collating 141, 148, 167, 186, 206
color management 346
custom page sizes 142
duplex printing 145
network cable requirements 439
print resolution 147
problem solving 300
uninstalling software 431
Macros, PCL **269**
Maintenance
fuser unit 317
image drums 309
menu 118
toner cartridges 305
transfer belt 320
Management systems, color **345**
Manual registration, color menu **115**
Media
auxiliary trays 27
high capacity feeder 28
loading 59, 62
menu 119
weight settings 24
Media settings
auxiliary trays 84
high capacity feeder 85
Memory DIMMs **382**
installing 382
Memory menu **121**
Memory SIMMs **382**
MENU button **101**
MenuMap, 116

printing 107
Menus
color menu 115
disk maintenance 116
how to use 114
information menu 116
maintenance 118
media 119
memory 121
network 123
parallel 125
PCL emulation 126
print 129
printing out current settings 107
resetting to factory defaults 114
system adjust 132
system configuration 135
usage 137
USB 140
Messages 292, 298
error 292
status 298
Metric weight settings 24
Models, color 340
Multi-Purpose tray
loading 62
print media 25

N

Network 438
cable requirements 439
interface 438
server, connecting 439
Network menu 123
Network servers 388
Neutral colors 339
Nibble mode pin assignments 436

O

Oki Storage Device Manager 264
general information 264
opening 265
PCL macros 269
PostScript forms 267
printing the file list 108
spooler 272
ON LINE button 101
Options 379, 382, 388
auxiliary paper trays 401
duplex unit 397
high capacity feeder 406
memory DIMMS 382
order numbers 379
print servers 388, 391
purchasing 377
warranty 425
Overlays 247

P

Paper
curls ... 287
feeder, high capacity ... 406
jams, frequent ... 287
multiple sheet feed ... 287
storing ... 32
Paper trays ... 401
auxiliary ... 401
installing auxiliary trays ... 401
Parallel menu ... 125
Parallel port
cable requirements ... 432
ECP mode ... 433
ECP setting ... 433
menu ... 125
menu settings ... 432
changing ... 433
pin assignments ... 434, 435, 436
Password, administrative ... 266
Paths ... 65
feed ... 65
PC symbol sets ... 415
PCL ... 126
emulation, setting ... 111
fonts
printing a list ... 106
resident bitmap ... 411
resident ... 411
scalable ... 411
symbol sets ... 415
macros (forms) ... 269
Perception, color ... 335
Ports ... 438
Ethernet ... 438
parallel ... 433
USB ... 437
PostNet font ... 411
PostScript
emulation, setting ... 111
fonts
proportional ... 418
resident ... 418
resident fixed ... 417
forms ... 267
typeface list ... 106
Power save mode, setting ... 110
Power specifications ... 364
Precautions, image drums ... 315
Primary Colors ... 339
Print ... 290
method ... 363
resolution ... 363
speed ... 363
Print media
high capacity feeder ... 28
loading ... 59, 62
multi-purpose tray ... 25

weight settings 24
Print memory specifications **363**
Print menu **129**
Print quality problems **290**
Print resolution **147, 159, 178, 198, 219**
Macintosh 147
Windows 2000 ..... 159, 178, 198, 219
Print servers **388**
6200e 388
cable requirements 439
connecting 439
installing 388, 391
interface 438
Printer configurations **363**
Printer menus
color 115
disk maintenance 116
how to use 114
information menu 116
maintenance 118
media 119
memory 121
network 123
parallel 125
PCL emulation 126
print menu 129
printing out current settings 107
system adjust 132
system configuration 135
usage 137
USB 140
Printer noises, troubleshooting **287**
Printer warranty **424**
Printing
booklets 165, 184, 204
current menu settings 107
demo pages 105
duplex 144, 155, 174, 193, 215
file list 108
font lists 106
long edge vs short edge 28
watermarks 441
Printing on both sides **144, 155, 174, 193, 215**
Problem solving **287**
color problems 339
error messages 292
hardware 287
Macintosh systems 300
print quality 290
Windows systems 301
Problems using color **339**
Proof & Print **224**
spooler 272
Proportional fonts **413, 418**
Purchasing supplies & accessories **377**

R

RAM specifications **363**
READY light **105**

Registration
color ... 336
setting ... 324
Repacking for shipment ... 372
Replacement ... 378
fuser ... 378
parts
order numbers ... 378
purchasing ... 377
transfer belt ... 378
Replacing ... 305
fuser unit ... 317
image drums ... 309
toner cartridges ... 305
transfer belt ... 320
Resetting factory defaults ... 114
Resident fonts ... 411
PCL ... 411, 413
PostScript ... 417, 418
Resolution ... 147, 159, 178, 198, 219
Macintosh ... 147
print ... 147, 159, 178, 198, 219
specifications ... 363
RGB model ... 340

S

Safety information ... 427
Scalable fonts, PCL ... 411, 413
Secondary colors ... 339
Secure documents ... 235
spooler ... 272
SELECT button ... 101
Selecting fonts ... 411
Service & Support
accessory order numbers ... 379
belt/fuser order numbers ... 378
consumables order numbers ... 378
repacking for shipment ... 372
Shipping the printer ... 372
Short edge printing ... 28
Signature printing ... 165, 184, 204
Size ... 364
Software, uninstalling ... 431
Specifications
dimensions ... 364
duplex unit ... 27
electrical ... 364
flash memory ... 363
general ... 363
interface ... 364
print media
auxiliary trays ... 27
high capacity feeder ... 28
multi-purpose tray ... 25
tray q ... 25
print method ... 363
print speed ... 363
RAM ... 363
resolution ... 363

weight ... 364
Specifying color ... 340
Speed, print ... 363
Spooler ... 272
Standby mode, setting ... 110
Statements ... 430
CE ... 430
copyright ... 23
energy star ... 430
FCC ... 428
IC ... 429
safety ... 427
warranties
consumables ... 426
options ... 425
printer ... 424
Y2000 ... 430
Status messages ... 298
Storing paper ... 32
Subtractive versus additive ... 333
Swatch, color ... 342
Symbol sets, PCL ... 415
System adjust menu ... 132
System configuration menu ... 135
Systems, color management ... 345

T

Time to print, setting ... 110
Toner cartridges
life ... 308
replacing ... 305
Trademarks ... 23
Transfer belt, replacing ... 320
Tray 1
loading media ... 59
media specifications ... 25
Tray switching, automatic ... 73
Trays, auxiliary paper ... 401
Troubleshooting
color problems ... 339
error messages ... 292
hardware ... 287
Macintosh systems ... 300
print quality ... 290
Windows systems ... 301
Turning duplex unit on ... 112
Typeface list
PostScript ... 106

U

Uninstalling software ... 431
US Bond weight settings ... 24
Usage menu ... 137
USB
cable requirements ... 438
connection ... 437
menu ... 140
menu settings ... 437, 438
changing ... 438

USPS PostNet font **411**
Utility
color swatch 342

V

VALUE button **101**
Visible ligh **338**
Voltage specifications **364**

W

Warranties
consumables 426
options 425
printer 424
Watermarks **441**
Windows 2000 162
Windows NT 4.0 222
Weight **364**
settings, media 24
Wheel, color **336**
White light **338**
Windows 2000
collating 148
color management 347
custom page sizes 150
duplex printing 156
n-up 158
overlays 247
print resolution 159, 178, 198, 219
Proof & Print 224
secure documents 235
watermarks 162
Windows 98/95
collating 186
color management 355
custom page sizes 188
duplex printing 193
n-up 196
overlays 254
Windows ICM **343**
Windows Me
booklets 165, 184, 204
collating 167
color management 351
custom page sizes 169
duplex printing 174
n-up 176
overla**ys** 249
Windows NT 4.0
collating 206
custom page sizes 208
duplex printing 215
n-up 218
Water**marks** 222

Y

Y2000 statement **430**